



UNIVERSITEIT VAN PRETORIA
UNIVERSITY OF PRETORIA
YUNIBESITHI YA PRETORIA

**Redefining the Church's Mission:
Towards a Contextual and Missional Ecclesiology
in Responding to Poverty in South Africa**

by

Christoffel Bernardus Prinsloo

Submitted in fulfilment of the requirements for the degree

Philosophiae Doctor

in the

FACULTY OF THEOLOGY AND RELIGION

CHURCH HISTORY AND CHURCH POLITY

at the

UNIVERSITY OF PRETORIA

Supervisor:

Prof W.A. Dreyer

September 2024

Acknowledgements

I want to express my deepest gratitude to my supervisor, Prof. Wim Dreyer. Your guidance, patience with me, and support have been instrumental throughout this journey.

To my wife, Lize, thank you for being my source of strength, encouragement, and love. Your patience and understanding have made the many late nights and long hours bearable. You have been the calm in this storm that seemed never to end. Thank you for believing in me even when I doubted myself. I am grateful to have you by my side.

I also wish to express my heartfelt thanks to my parents, Peet and Ria Prinsloo, for their support and encouragement. I am also grateful to my parents-in-law, who have embraced me as part of their family and offered their steadfast support every step of the way.

To my congregation at NHKA Onverwacht – your support has been remarkable. Thank you for allowing me the flexibility to balance my pastoral duties with my academic pursuits and for your generous financial support. Your belief in the value of this research and your encouragement along the way have been invaluable to me, reflecting a shared commitment to our community's growth and learning.

This journey has been challenging, but I could not have completed it without the support and encouragement of so many people. I offer my heartfelt thanks to everyone who has been part of this process.

Plagiarism declaration

I, Christoffel Bernardus Prinsloo, with student number u2727313, hereby declare that this thesis with the title *Redefining the Church's Mission: Towards a Contextual and Missional Ecclesiology in Responding to Poverty in South Africa* is my original work and has not previously been submitted by me for a degree at this or any other tertiary institution. All consulted sources of information – whether printed, by e-mail or on the internet – were properly acknowledged and referenced according to the plagiarism prevention policy of the University of Pretoria.



Signature

28 August 2024

Date

Ethics statement

The author, whose name appears on the title page of this thesis, has obtained the applicable research ethics approval for the research described in this work. The author declares that he/she has observed the ethical standards required in terms of the University of Pretoria's Code of Ethics for Researchers and the Policy guidelines for responsible research.

Summary

This research critically examines the transformative potential of adopting a contextual and missional ecclesiology to enhance the *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika's* (NHKA) engagement with poverty alleviation in South Africa. Against the country's severe socio-economic challenges, the study seeks to redefine the church's mission in addressing this pervasive issue more effectively.

Central to this investigation is the hypothesis that a shift towards missional ecclesiology – rooted in the Trinitarian mission of God - can significantly empower the NHKA to respond more effectively to poverty. This approach calls for moving beyond traditional ecclesiology models to embrace responsive, contextually informed practices that align with the *missio Dei*.

The research integrates historical reflections on the NHKA's involvement in poverty alleviation, theoretical explorations of missional ecclesiology, and practical considerations for the church's societal engagement. It aims to bridge the gap between ecclesiological theory and the practical realities of addressing socio-economic challenges in contemporary South Africa.

Key concepts such as missional ecclesiology, diaconal ministry, and contextual theology are foundational to understanding the proposed shift in the NHKA's approach to its mission. The study posits that by re-envisioning its mission and practices in light of these concepts, the NHKA—and other ecclesial bodies—can significantly enhance their impact on poverty alleviation.

Ultimately, this research contributes to the broader ecclesiology and social engagement discourse in South Africa. It highlights the church's

potential as a transformative force in society, emphasising the importance of theological reflection, historical awareness, and actionable strategies in driving its mission forward. This thesis advocates for a missional reorientation of the church's role in society, suggesting that deeper engagement with the gospel's transformative power can lead to more effective responses to the urgent challenge of poverty in South Africa.

List of key terms

Missional Ecclesiology

Poverty Alleviation

Diaconal Ministry

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA)

Social Justice

Church and Society

Theological Frameworks

Ecclesiastical Engagement

Public Theology

South Africa

Table of Contents

Acknowledgements	i
Plagiarism declaration	ii
Ethics statement.....	iii
Summary	iv
List of key terms	vi
Table of Contents	vii
Chapter 1 – Introduction	1
1.1 Title	1
1.2 Orientation – Background and context.....	1
1.2.1 The Context of Poverty	1
1.2.2 The context of change	4
1.2.3 The Context of Crisis	7
1.2.4 Ecclesiological Evolution: From Reformed Tradition to Missional Orientation.....	9
1.3 Brief Overview of Existing Literature	11
1.3.1 Ecclesiology and Missional Engagement	11
1.3.2 Poverty in South Africa	11
1.3.3 Church's Societal Role	12
1.3.4 Strategies for Poverty Alleviation.....	12
1.4 Limitations of Research.....	13
1.5 Primary Research Question	14
1.5.1 Secondary Research Questions	14
1.6 Hypothesis	15
1.6.1 Historical Perspective	16
1.6.2 NHKA Synodal Resolutions	18
1.6.3 Missional Ecclesiology as a Possibility	20
1.6.4 <i>Diakonia</i>	24
1.6.5 Theory and Praxis	26

1.7 Methodological Framework	28
1.7.1 Research Methodology	28
1.7.2 Research Strategy	29
1.8 Research Rationale	29
1.9 Research Significance	30
1.9.1 Theological and Ecclesiological Exploration	30
1.9.2 Practical Framework for the NHKA	30
1.9.3 Personal Reflection and Positionality	31
1.9.4 Model for Broader Ecclesiastical Engagement	32
1.10 Clarification of Concepts	33
1.10.1 Ecclesiology	33
1.10.2 Missional Ecclesiology	34
1.10.3 Poverty	35
1.10.4 Social Justice	35
1.10.5 Theological Frameworks	35
1.10.6 Ecclesiastical Engagement	36
1.10.7 NHKA (<i>Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika</i>)	36
1.10.8 Diaconal Ministry	36
1.10.9 Public Theology	36
1.10.10 Socio-economic Challenges	36
1.10.11 Trinitarian Foundation	36
1.10.12 Contextual Ecclesiology	36
1.11 Chapter Outline	37
1.12 Conclusion	39
Chapter 2 – Contextual Analysis of Poverty in South Africa	41
2.1 Introduction	41
2.2 Historical Context of Poverty in South Africa	43
2.2.1 Introduction	43
2.2.2 Pre-apartheid Era	45
2.2.2.1 Early Colonial Era in South Africa (1652 – 1867)	45
2.2.2.2 Mineral Revolution and Industrialisation (1867 – 1910)	49
2.2.2.3 Union of South Africa and Segregation (1910 – 1948)	54
2.2.3 Apartheid Era (1948 – 1994)	60

2.2.3.1 Introduction	60
2.2.3.1 Rise of Afrikaner Nationalism and the National Party	61
2.2.3.2 Implementation and Intensification of Apartheid Policies	62
2.2.3.3 Economic Impact of Apartheid	64
2.2.3.4 Forced Removals and the Homeland System	67
2.2.3.5 Migrant Labour System	69
2.2.3.6 Resistance Movements and Their Impact	71
2.2.3.7 Apartheid and International Economic Relations	76
2.2.3.8 Crisis of Apartheid in the 1980s	79
2.2.3.9 Transition to Democracy	82
2.2.3.10 Critical Analysis of Apartheid's Economic Legacy	85
2.2.3.11 Conclusion: The Enduring Legacy of Apartheid on Poverty	89
2.2.4 Post-Apartheid Era (1994 –)	90
2.2.4.1 Introduction	90
2.2.4.2 Initial Economic Policies and Strategies	92
2.2.4.3 Early Poverty Alleviation Efforts	95
2.2.4.4 Structural Challenges in the Transition Period	98
2.2.4.5 International Re-integration and its Effects	101
2.2.4.6 Demographic and Social Changes	103
2.2.4.7 Critical Analysis of Post-Apartheid Poverty Alleviation Efforts	106
2.2.4.8 Conclusion	109
2.3 Current Manifestations of Poverty	111
2.3.1 Introduction	111
2.3.2 Income Poverty	114
2.3.2.1 Demographic Distribution of Poverty	115
2.3.2.2 Regional Distribution of Poverty	116
2.3.2.3 Critical Analysis	117
2.3.3 Multidimensional Poverty	118
2.3.3.1 Introduction to Multidimensional Poverty in South Africa	118
2.3.3.2 Current Statistics and Trends	119
2.3.3.3 Key Dimensions of SAMPI	120
2.3.3.3.1 Education	120
2.3.3.3.2 Health	121
2.3.3.3.3 Living Standards	122

2.3.3.4 Critical Analysis of the Multidimensional Approach.....	122
2.3.3.4.1 Strengths and Limitations of SAMPI.....	122
2.3.3.4.2 Challenges in Translating insights into policy	123
2.3.3.4.3 Suggestions for Improvement.....	123
2.3.4 Inequality	123
2.3.5 Unemployment and Underemployment	126
2.3.5.1 Latest Unemployment Statistics.....	127
2.3.5.2 Youth Unemployment	128
2.3.5.3 Underemployment and the Working Poor	128
2.3.6 Access to Basic Services	130
2.3.6.1 Water	130
2.3.6.2 Sanitation	130
2.3.6.3 Electricity.....	131
2.3.6.4 Healthcare.....	131
2.3.6.5 Urban-rural Disparity.....	132
2.3.7 Conclusion.....	133
2.4 Causes of Poverty in Contemporary South Africa.....	135
2.4.1 Introduction.....	135
2.4.2 Economic Factors.....	136
2.4.3 Social Factors.....	139
2.4.4 Political Factors	142
2.4.5 Conclusion.....	145
2.5 Impact of Poverty on Different Demographics.....	147
2.5.1 Introduction.....	147
2.5.2 Child Poverty	148
2.5.2.1 Statistics and Trends	148
2.5.2.2 Long-term Consequences for Development.....	149
2.5.3 Gender Dimensions of Poverty.....	151
2.5.3.1 Feminisation of Poverty	151
2.5.3.2 Challenges Faced by Female-Headed Households.....	152
2.5.4 Racial Disparities in Poverty Rates.....	154
2.5.4.1 Current Statistics.....	154
2.5.4.2 Historical Context and Persistent Inequalities:	155
2.5.5 Poverty Among the Elderly	157

2.5.5.1 Unique Challenges Faced by Older Populations.....	158
2.5.5.2 Impact of Pension Systems.....	159
2.5.6 Conclusion.....	161
2.6 Government Efforts to Address Poverty.....	163
2.6.1 Introduction.....	163
2.6.2 Overview of Major Anti-Poverty Policies and Programmes	164
2.6.2.1 National Development Plan (NDP).....	164
2.6.2.2 Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)	166
2.6.3 Analysis of the Social Grant System.....	167
2.6.3.1 Types of Grants and Coverage	167
2.6.3.2 Impact and Criticisms.....	169
2.6.4 Effectiveness Assessment of Government Initiatives	170
2.6.4.1 Successes and Limitations.....	171
2.6.4.2 Challenges in Implementation.....	172
2.6.5 Conclusion.....	174
2.7 Future Projections and Challenges	176
2.7.1 Introduction.....	176
2.7.2 Projected Poverty Trends	177
2.7.2.1 Short-term Projections	177
2.7.2.2 Long-term Projections	178
2.7.2.3 Factors Influencing Future Poverty Rates	178
2.7.3 Emerging Challenges	180
2.7.3.1 Impact of Climate Change on Poverty	180
2.7.3.2 Technological Disruption and the Future of Work	181
2.7.4 Opportunities for Poverty Reduction.....	183
2.7.4.1 Potential Areas for Intervention.....	183
2.7.4.2 Role of Innovation and Technology in Poverty Alleviation	186
2.7.5 Conclusion.....	188
2.8 Conclusion: Synthesis and Transitional Summary	190

Chapter 3 – Historical Engagement of the NHKA with Poverty in South

Africa	192
3.1 Introduction	192
3.2 Post-Boer War Era (1902-1948)	193

3.2.1 Contextual Background	193
3.2.2 Early Ecclesiology and Church Concept.....	195
3.2.2.1 Ecclesiology and the Church's Role in Society	195
3.2.3 Diaconal Structures and Poverty Alleviation Initiatives	196
3.2.3.1 Historical Background of the Church Law and Provisions of 1904.....	196
3.2.3.2 Establishment of Church Councils and the Diaconate	196
3.2.3.3 Tasks and Operations of the Diaconate	197
3.2.3.4 Poverty Alleviation Programmes and Initiatives	198
3.2.3.5 The Nederduitsch Hervormde Sustersvereniging (NHSV)	199
3.2.3.6 Case Studies Illustrating the Church's Diaconal Work	199
3.2.4 Critical Reflection (1902-1948)	200
3.2.4.1 Strengths and Achievements	201
3.2.4.2 Limitations and Critiques.....	201
3.2.4.3 The Tension Between Mission and Identity.....	203
3.2.4.4 Lessons for Contemporary Ecclesiology	203
3.3 The NHKA During the Apartheid Era (1948–1994)	204
3.3.1 Contextual Background	204
3.3.2 Ecclesiology and Church Concept.....	205
3.3.3 Church Law and Provisions	206
3.3.4 Ministerial Practice and Poverty Alleviation	207
3.3.5 Critical Analysis and International Response	208
3.3.6 Gradual Change and Reconciliation Efforts.....	208
3.3.7 Critical Reflection (1948 – 1994)	209
3.3.7.1 Theological and Ecclesiological Foundations.....	209
3.3.7.2 Ministerial Practice and Diaconal Work.....	210
3.3.7.3 Ethical and Theological Critique.....	211
3.3.7.4 Legacy and Reconciliation	211
3.4 The NHKA in the Post-Apartheid Era (1994–Present)	212
3.4.1 Contextual Background	212
3.4.2 The Church Order of 1997.....	214
3.4.3 The Revised Church Order of 2007.....	215
3.4.4 The <i>Algemene Diakensvergadering</i> (ADV).....	217
3.4.5 The 2016 Revised Church Order and Resolution 1	219
3.4.6 The Impact of these Changes on Poverty Alleviation	221

3.4.7 Ecumenical Relations and the Journey from Isolation	223
3.4.8 The 68th General Assembly (2007) and Its Aftermath.....	225
3.4.9 Developments from 2007 to 2010.....	226
3.4.10 Continuing Challenges and Future Prospects	228
3.4.11.1 Ecclesiological Evolution and Its Implications	230
3.4.11.2 Diaconal Structures and Poverty Alleviation Initiatives	231
3.4.11.3 Reconciliation Efforts and Ecumenical Relations	232
3.4.11.4 Challenges in Implementation and Sustainability.....	233
3.4.11.5 Theological and Practical Tensions	234
3.4.11.6 Implications for Poverty Alleviation	234
3.5 Comparative Analysis of NHKA's Engagement with Poverty	235
3.5.1 Introduction.....	235
3.5.2 Comparison of Ecclesiology and Theological Foundations	236
3.5.3 Comparison of Diaconal Structures and Practices	237
3.5.4 Impact on Poverty Alleviation	239
3.5.5 Ecumenical Relations and Social Responsibility	240
3.5.6 Critical Reflections.....	241
3.5.7 Conclusion.....	242
3.6 A Comparative Analysis of Reformed Churches' Poverty Alleviation Efforts (1994–2019)	243
3.6.1 Introduction.....	243
3.6.2 Theological and Ecclesiological Foundations	244
3.6.3 Structural Approaches and Key Initiatives	245
3.6.3.1 <i>Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk (NGK)</i>	245
3.6.3.2 <i>Verenigende Gereformeerde Kerk in Suider-Afrika (URCSA)</i>	246
3.6.3.3 <i>Gereformeerde Kerke in Suid-Afrika (GKSA)</i>	246
3.6.3.4 <i>Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA)</i>	247
3.6.4 Challenges and Evolution.....	247
3.6.5 Ecumenical Cooperation	248
3.6.6 Critical Reflection.....	249
3.7 Conclusion	251
3.7.1 Historical Engagement Overview.....	251
3.7.2 Addressing the Research Questions	252
3.7.3 Persistent Themes and Tensions	253

3.7.4 Challenges and Opportunities in the Post-Apartheid Era	254
3.7.5 Transitioning to a Missional Ecclesiology	254
3.7.6 Final Thoughts.....	255
Chapter 4 – Theoretical Underpinnings of Missional Ecclesiology	257
4.1 Introduction	257
4.2 The Concept of Missional Ecclesiology.....	261
4.2.1 Defining Missional Ecclesiology.....	262
4.2.2 Theological Foundations of Missional Ecclesiology.....	264
4.2.3 Contrasting Missional Ecclesiology with Traditional Ecclesiology.....	268
4.3 Applying Missional Ecclesiology to the NHKA’s Context.....	270
4.3.1 Addressing Historical Limitations.....	271
4.3.2 Embracing Inclusivity and Social Engagement.....	273
4.3.3 Practical Implications for the NHKA’s Diaconal Structures	275
4.4 The Practice-Oriented Research Strategy	278
4.4.1 Overview of the Research Strategy	278
4.4.1.1 Problem Identification	279
4.4.1.2 Theological Reflection.....	279
4.4.1.3 Practical Implementation.....	280
4.4.1.5 Evaluation and Iteration	281
4.4.2 Aligning the Research Strategy with Missional Ecclesiology	282
4.4.2.1 Clarifying the Step within the Research Strategy	282
4.4.2.2 Integration of Theological and Theoretical Insights.....	284
4.4.2.3 Link to Broader Study	285
4.4.2.4 Critical Analysis.....	286
4.4.3 Practical Application within the NHKA	287
4.5 Key Theological and Practical Implications	289
4.5.1 Theological Implications	290
4.5.1.1 Revisiting the Identity of the NHKA	290
4.5.1.2 The Ecclesiological Shift	291
4.5.1.3 The Role of the Church in Society	291
4.5.1.4 Deepening Theological Reflection	292
4.5.2 Practical Implications for the NHKA’s Mission	292
4.5.2.1 Reorienting Diaconal Structures	292

4.5.2.2 Engaging with Broader Society	293
4.5.2.3 Empowering the Congregation.....	294
4.5.3 Challenges and Opportunities	294
4.5.3.1 Challenges of Implementation.....	294
4.5.3.2 Opportunities for Growth and Transformation	295
4.5.3.3 Critical Evaluation and Practicality	296
4.6 Conclusion	296

Chapter 5 – Evaluating and Transforming the NHKA’s Approach to

Poverty Alleviation	299
5.1 Introduction	299
5.2 Evaluation of the NHKA’s Diaconal Practices and Structures	300
5.2.1 Introduction.....	300
5.2.2 Methodology for Analysing the ADV Minutes	301
5.2.2.1 Introduction to the Methodology	301
5.2.2.2 Thematic Content Analysis	301
5.2.2.3 Data Collection.....	301
5.2.2.4 Limitations.....	302
5.2.2.5 Data Coding and Analysis Process.....	303
5.2.2.6 Emphasis on Key Themes	304
5.2.2.7 Critical Reflection on Methodology.....	305
5.2.3 Thematic Analysis of ADV Minutes (1998 – 2022)	306
5.2.3.1 Theme 1: Strategic Priorities Missional Alignment.....	307
5.2.3.1.1 Early Post-Apartheid Period (1998-2004).....	307
5.2.3.1.2 Transition Period (2007-2013).....	307
5.2.3.1.3 Missional Integration Period (2016-2022).....	308
5.2.3.1.4 Challenges in Strategic Implementation	308
5.2.3.2 Theme 2: Theological Foundations and Reflections	310
5.2.3.2.1 Introduction.....	310
5.2.3.2.2 Theological Integration and Missional Ecclesiology	311
5.2.3.2.3 Challenges in Theological Integration	313
5.2.3.2.4 Implications for Diaconal Practice	314
5.2.3.3 Theme 3: Effectiveness and Challenges of Diaconal Work	315
5.2.3.3.1 Introduction.....	315

5.2.3.3.3 Structural and Strategic Challenges	316
5.2.3.3.4 Effectiveness in Poverty-Related Initiatives.....	317
5.2.3.4 Theme 4: Social and Political Contexts and Impact	318
5.2.3.4.1 Introduction.....	318
5.2.3.4.2 Responding to Post-Apartheid Realities	318
5.2.3.4.3 Evolving Response to Societal Issues.....	320
5.2.3.4.4 Challenges in Contextual Engagement	321
5.2.3.5 Theme 5: Gaps and Areas for Improvement	322
5.2.3.5.1 Introduction.....	322
5.2.3.5.2 Identifying Persistent Gaps.....	322
5.2.3.5.3 Recommendations for Improvement	324
5.2.3.6 Conclusion for Thematic Analysis of ADV Minutes	326
5.3 Theological Reflection on the NHKA's Approach to Poverty	329
5.4.1 Introduction.....	329
5.3.2 Theological Foundations of the NHKA's Diaconal Work.....	329
5.3.3 The Shift Towards Missional Ecclesiology.....	331
5.3.4 Critical Reflection on the NHKA's Theological Approach to Poverty.....	332
5.3.5 The Role of Theological Reflection in Transforming Diaconal Work.....	334
5.4 Exploration of Structural Alternatives	338
5.4.1 Introduction.....	338
5.4.2 Analysis of Alternative Structures	339
5.4.2.1 <i>Sentrum vir Gemeentelike Bediening</i> (SGB).....	339
5.4.2.2 The SGB as an Alternative or Supplementary Structure	340
5.4.3 Strategic Recommendations.....	342
5.4.4 Implications and Challenges of Implementing the SGB Model	344
5.4.5 Conclusion.....	346
5.5 Facilitating Mindset and Cultural Shifts	347
5.5.1 Introduction.....	347
5.5.2 Cultivating Missional Leadership	348
5.5.2.1 Missional Leadership Formation Programme.....	348
5.5.2.2 Ongoing Leadership Development.....	349
5.5.3 Reorienting Theological Education	350
5.5.3.1 Curriculum Reform.....	351
5.5.3.2 Continuing Theological Education.....	351

5.5.4 Fostering Community Engagement	352
5.5.4.1 Asset-Based Community Development (ABCD)	352
5.5.4.2 Public Theology Forums	353
5.5.4.3 Missional-Diaconal Partnerships	353
5.5.5 Cultural Transformation Strategies	354
5.5.5.1 Narrative and Symbol Transformation	354
5.5.5.2 Structural and Systemic Alignment	355
5.5.5.3 Learning and Innovation Ecosystems	355
5.5.6 Strategic Recommendations.....	356
5.5.6.1 Establish a Missional Transformation Team	356
5.5.6.2 Implement a Phased Transformation Approach.....	357
Phase 1: Awareness and Education (Year 1-2)	357
Phase 2: Pilot Implementation (Year 3-4).....	357
Phase 3: Broad Implementation and Evaluation (Years 5-7).....	357
5.5.6.3 Develop a Missional Communication Strategy.....	357
5.5.6.4 Establish Ongoing Evaluation and Learning Processes.....	358
5.5.7 Conclusion.....	359
5.6 Consequences of Embracing Missional Ecclesiology	360
5.6.1 Introduction.....	360
5.6.2 Structural Implications	361
5.6.3 Theological Implications	363
5.6.4 Strategic Recommendations.....	365
5.6.5 Conclusion.....	367
5.7 Learning from and Applying Best Practices	369
5.7.1 Introduction.....	369
5.7.2 Case Studies and Examples	369
5.7.2.1 The Church of England's 'Fresh Expressions' Initiative.....	369
5.7.2.2 The Uniting Church in Australia's 'Congress' Model.....	371
5.7.2.3 The Christian Reformed Church in North America's Office of Social Justice	371
5.7.3 Application to the NHKA's Context	372
5.7.3.1 Contextual Appropriateness.....	373
5.7.3.2 Structural Integration.....	373
5.7.3.3 Capacity Building	374

5.7.4 Strategic Recommendations.....	374
5.7.4.1 Establish an Innovation Fund for Missional Engagement	374
5.7.4.2 Develop a Missional Advocacy Initiative	375
5.7.4.3 Create Empowerment Structures for Marginalised Communities.....	375
5.7.4.4 Implement a ' <i>Mixed Economy</i> ' Approach	376
5.7.4.5 Establish a Best Practices Learning Network.....	377
5.7.5 Conclusion.....	377
5.8 Conclusion and Strategic Recommendations	378
5.8.1 Summary of Critical Insights	378
5.8.2 Contribution to Research Questions.....	379
5.8.3 Strategic Recommendations.....	380
5.8.4 Call to Action	382
5.8.5 Looking Forward to Chapter 6	382
Chapter 6 – Conclusion and Recommendations	384
6.1 Introduction	384
6.2 Revisiting the Research Objectives and Questions.....	384
6.2.1 Restatement of the Research Objectives	384
6.2.2 Review of the Research Questions	385
6.2.2.1 Primary Research Question	386
6.2.2.2 Secondary Research Questions	386
6.2.3 Addressing the Research Questions	387
6.2.3.1 Primary Research Question	387
6.2.3.2 Secondary Research Question	388
6.3 Synthesis of Key Findings.....	389
6.3.1 Historical Context and Evolution of the NHKA's Approach to Poverty	389
6.3.2 Theological Foundations and the Shift Towards Missional Ecclesiology	390
6.3.3 Current Diaconal Practices and Their Effectiveness.....	391
6.3.4 Socio-Economic Realities and Their Impact on the NHKA's Mission.....	392
6.3.5 Opportunities and Challenges in Adopting Missional Ecclesiology.....	392
6.3.6 Integrative Analysis: Towards a Holistic Missional Approach	393
6.4 Implications of the Findings.....	393
6.4.1 Theoretical Implications.....	394

6.4.1.1 Advancements in Missional Ecclesiology	394
6.4.1.2 Reconceptualising Church-Society Relations	394
6.4.1.3 Interdisciplinary Approach to Ecclesiology	394
6.4.2 Practical Implications	395
6.4.2.1 Reorientation of Diaconal Ministry	395
6.4.2.2 Structural Reforms within the NHKA	395
6.4.2.3 Theological Education and Leadership Development	395
6.4.2.4 Ecumenical and Inter-sectoral Collaboration.....	396
6.4.3 Societal Implications.....	396
6.4.3.1 Enhancing the Church's Role in Social Transformation	396
6.4.3.2 Addressing Historical Legacies	396
6.4.3.3 Fostering Social Cohesion	396
6.4.4 Conclusion.....	397
6.5 Strategic Recommendations	397
6.5.1 Theological Reorientation and Education	397
6.5.1.1 Missional Theology Integration	397
6.5.1.2 Contextual Hermeneutics.....	398
6.5.2 Structural and Governance Reforms	398
6.5.2.1 Decentralisation of Decision-Making.....	398
6.5.2.2 Creation of Specialised Missional Units	399
6.5.3 Leadership Development and Capacity Building	400
6.5.3.1 Missional Leadership Training	400
6.5.3.2 Cross-Cultural Competence	401
6.5.4 Programmatic Initiatives	401
6.5.4.1 Asset-Based Community Development (ABCD)	401
6.5.4.2 Holistic Poverty Alleviation Programmes	401
6.5.5 Partnerships and Collaboration	402
6.5.5.1 Ecumenical Cooperation	402
6.5.5.2 Inter-Sectoral Partnerships	402
6.5.6 Monitoring, Evaluation, and Learning	403
6.5.6.1 Impact Assessment Framework.....	403
6.5.6.2 Knowledge Management and Sharing	403
6.5.7 Cultural Transformation	404
6.5.7.1 Narrative and Symbol Transformation	404

6.5.7.2 Congregational Renewal.....	404
6.5.8 Conclusion.....	404
6.6 Limitations of the Study.....	405
6.6.1 Methodological Limitations	405
6.6.2 Contextual Limitations	406
6.6.3 Theoretical Limitations.....	406
6.6.4 Practical and Resource Constraints	407
6.6.5 Researcher Positionality.....	407
6.6.6 Scope of Impact Assessment	408
6.6.7 Ethical Considerations.....	408
6.6.8 Conclusion.....	409
6.7 Future Research Directions	409
6.7.1 Comparative Ecclesiological Studies.....	409
6.7.1.1 Inter-denominational Comparisons	409
6.7.1.2 International Comparative Studies.....	410
6.7.2 Longitudinal Impact Studies	410
6.7.2.1 Long-term Efficacy of Missional Approaches	410
6.7.2.2 Organisational Transformation.....	410
6.7.3 Empirical Studies on Missional Praxis	410
6.7.3.1 Quantitative Impact Assessments.....	410
6.7.3.2 Qualitative Explorations of Lived Experiences	411
6.7.4 Theological and Missiological Developments	411
6.7.4.1 Contextual Theology	411
6.7.4.2 Missional Hermeneutics.....	411
6.7.5 Interdisciplinary Research	412
6.7.5.1 Integration with Development Studies.....	412
6.7.5.2 Sociological Perspectives	412
6.7.6 Policy and Governance Studies.....	412
6.7.6.1 Church Polity and Missional Engagement	412
6.7.6.2 Church-State Relations.....	412
6.7.7 Technology and Missional Engagement.....	413
6.7.7.1 Digital Missiology	413
6.7.7.2 Innovation in Poverty Alleviation	413
6.7.8 Ecumenical and Interfaith Dimensions	413

6.7.8.1 Ecumenical Collaboration	413
6.7.8.2 Interfaith Dialogue and Collaboration	413
6.7.9 Conclusion	414
6.8 Concluding Remarks	414
6.8.1 Synthesis of Key Insights	414
6.8.2 Transformative Potential of Missional Ecclesiology	415
6.8.3 Challenges and Opportunities	415
6.8.4 Broader Ecclesiological Implications	416
6.8.5 Contribution to Academic Discourse	416
6.8.6 Policy and Practical Implications	417
6.8.7 Future Trajectories	417
6.8.8 Final Reflections	417
References	419

Chapter 1 – Introduction

1.1 Title

Redefining the Church's Mission: Towards a Contextual and Missional Ecclesiology in Responding to Poverty in South Africa

1.2 Orientation – Background and context

1.2.1 The Context¹ of Poverty

Poverty in South Africa remains a persistent and complex challenge, impacting a significant portion of the population despite various national efforts to alleviate it. The stark contrasts between urban development and impoverished communities are visible across the country, illustrating a deep-rooted socio-economic divide. Poverty is more than just an economic condition; it encompasses social exclusion and a significant challenge to human dignity, necessitating a critical response from societal institutions, including the church.²

A comprehensive definition of poverty highlights it as a deprivation of choices and opportunities, a violation of human dignity, and an impediment to effective societal participation (United Nations 2021: 5).

This view underscores the multidimensional impact of poverty, which affects not only material well-being but also access to services and social integration.

¹ The word 'context', as used in this research, must be understood in terms of Public Theology. Context could be defined as the public space where the church functions, playing a significant role in the public sphere. The discipline of Public Theology argues for an active engagement of the church in the public sphere. It is, however, important to note that varying angles of approach and nuances exist in terms of the nature and implications of Public Theology. For more on these notions and various angles on the nature of this engagement, please see Koopman's 2007 article: *Public Theology in South Africa: A Trinitarian Approach* as well as Maluleke's 2011 article: *Reflections and Resources the Elusive Public of Public Theology: A response to William Storrar*.

² The word 'church' is capitalised only when used in the name of a specific church or denomination. It is not capitalised when it stands alone or is used to denote the worldwide church or the church of a particular country.

The legacies of colonialism and apartheid have undeniably left indelible marks on South Africa, contributing to the entrenched inequalities that perpetuate poverty. However, it is crucial to acknowledge that poverty in South Africa cannot be attributed solely to apartheid. The roots of poverty extend further back in history and are compounded by factors such as rapid population growth. Between 1948 and 2018, the population increased from 15 million to 55 million, exerting significant pressure on economic resources and infrastructure (Seekings & Nattrass, 2015: 55).

Moreover, post-apartheid, the challenges of poverty have been exacerbated by economic policies, including the inability of the ANC government to sustain an economic growth rate above 3% over the past 15 years, leading to persistently high unemployment rates and deepening socio-economic divides (Seekings & Nattrass, 2015: 95-97; World Bank, 2024). These multifaceted factors underscore the complexity of poverty in South Africa, which is not only a legacy of apartheid but also a consequence of broader historical, demographic, and political dynamics (Seekings & Nattrass, 2015: 47).

Recent statistics indicate that poverty remains widespread. According to Statistics South Africa (2020: 12), the poverty headcount ratio at the national upper poverty line was 42.4% in 2019, suggesting that nearly half of the South African population lives in poverty. Furthermore, the Gini coefficient, a measure of income inequality, stood at 0.63 in 2019, one of the highest globally, underscoring the severe income disparity (World Bank 2021: 4). This high level of inequality means that wealth is concentrated in the hands of a few, while the majority of the population remains impoverished.

Unemployment is a critical driver of poverty in South Africa, with the official unemployment rate reaching 34.4% in the second quarter of 2021, the highest since the quarterly labour force survey began in 2008 (Statistics South Africa 2021: 3). Education levels and access to economic opportunities also play significant roles in perpetuating poverty. The

COVID-19 pandemic has exacerbated these issues, severely impacting economic activities and increasing vulnerability among the already disadvantaged populations.

The dichotomy between rural and urban poverty in South Africa presents a complex challenge for policymakers and social institutions alike. Recent studies indicate that rural poverty remains persistently high while urban areas have experienced some economic growth. According to Statistics South Africa (2021:15), the poverty headcount ratio in rural areas stood at 65.4% in 2020, compared to 25.2% in urban areas.

This stark disparity is further exacerbated by limited access to essential services and economic opportunities in rural regions (Sulla and Zikhali, 2018:31). The COVID-19 pandemic has intensified these pre-existing inequalities, with the World Bank (2022:8) reporting that an additional 2 million South Africans fell into poverty in 2020 alone. Urban informal settlements, in particular, faced severe challenges during lockdowns, with job losses disproportionately affecting low-skilled workers in the informal sector (Arndt et al., 2020:5). Furthermore, the pandemic exposed and amplified the digital divide between rural and urban areas, as remote work and online education became essential, potentially deepening long-term rural-urban disparities (Oyedemi, 2020:12). This multifaceted nature of poverty, with its distinct rural and urban manifestations and the compounding effects of the pandemic, underscores the need for nuanced, context-specific approaches in ecclesiological responses to poverty alleviation.

Corruption and governance issues further complicate efforts to address poverty effectively. The 2021 Corruption Perceptions Index indicates ongoing challenges in public sector governance, affecting trust and the efficient allocation of resources intended for development and poverty alleviation (Transparency International 2021: 2).

Given its moral and ethical standing in society, the church's role in addressing poverty is crucial. Forster (2015: 1) argues that the church in South Africa must act as a bearer of hope, engaging actively with socio-economic challenges through a missional ecclesiology. He suggests that a nuanced understanding of Christian hope, which holds the present reality in tension with a desired future, can empower the church to transform society (Forster 2015: 2-3). This approach necessitates a shift towards active engagement with societal issues, particularly poverty, aligning with the principles of social justice and community support.

This research does not aim to study poverty exhaustively but to examine how contextual and missional ecclesiology can provide a meaningful response. By integrating theological reflection with practical action, the church can play a pivotal role in addressing the multi-dimensional challenges of poverty, offering material support and promoting social inclusion and dignity.

1.2.2 The context of change

The socio-political landscape of South Africa has undergone significant transformations since the end of apartheid in 1994. These changes have been characterised by efforts to dismantle the institutionalised racial segregation and inequality entrenched during the apartheid era and to establish a more inclusive and equitable society. However, the transition has been complex and fraught with challenges, impacting various aspects of life in South Africa (Marais 2011: 3).

As a theoretical concept, change refers to the process through which something becomes different, involving a shift from one state to another. This process can be influenced by social, economic, political, and cultural forces. In the context of South Africa, change is multifaceted and involves both transformation and resistance, reflecting the dynamic interplay between historical legacies and contemporary realities (Kotter 1996: 12).

One of the most profound changes in post-apartheid South Africa has been the shift from an authoritarian regime to a democratic governance system. The African National Congress (ANC), which has been the ruling party since the first democratic elections in 1994, has implemented numerous policies aimed at redressing past injustices and promoting socio-economic development (Southall 2014: 7). However, the ANC's focus on redistribution, often at the expense of economic growth, has been a key factor in the ongoing economic stagnation, exacerbated by structural issues such as labour market rigidity and low productivity (Herbst & Mills 2015: 34-36; OECD 2022: 45-47). Moreover, policy mismanagement and corruption have further deepened inequalities, undermining the very goals of inclusive growth (Johnson 2009: 215; Gqubule 2019). Despite efforts to address the legacy of apartheid, these challenges highlight the need for a more balanced and strategic approach to economic governance.

Economic transformation has been a central focus of the post-apartheid government, with policies such as Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) and affirmative action aimed at promoting the financial participation of previously disadvantaged groups (Jack & Harris, 2007: 45). While these policies have had some success in creating a black middle class, they have also been criticised for benefitting a small elite while the majority remain in poverty (Tangri & Southall 2008: 702). Additionally, issues such as high unemployment, especially among the youth, and economic mismanagement have hindered broader economic progress (Marais 2011: 28).

The social landscape has also experienced significant shifts. There have been substantial improvements in access to education and healthcare, with policies aimed at expanding these essential services to previously marginalised communities (Coovadia et al. 2009: 828). However, the quality and outcomes of these services remain uneven, with rural and impoverished areas still facing significant challenges (Van Rensburg 2014: 238).

South Africa's demographic profile has also been changing, with increased urbanisation and migration patterns reshaping the population distribution. Urban areas have seen rapid growth, leading to the expansion of informal settlements and increased demand for housing and services (Turok 2012: 500). This urbanisation presents both opportunities and challenges as cities become hubs of economic activity but also sites of significant social strain (Pieterse 2009: 153).

The HIV/AIDS epidemic has had a profound impact on South African society. Despite significant efforts to combat the disease, it continues to affect millions of South Africans, with wide-ranging social and economic consequences (UNAIDS 2020: 22). The epidemic has exacerbated existing vulnerabilities and placed additional pressures on the healthcare system and social services (Shisana et al. 2014: 11).

Amid these changes, the role of the church and other religious institutions has evolved. Historically, many churches played a pivotal role in the struggle against apartheid, advocating for justice and human rights (Chikane 2013: 51). In the post-apartheid era, the church continues to be an important moral and social voice, addressing contemporary issues such as poverty, inequality, and social justice (Forster 2015: 5).

However, secularisation trends and new religious movements have challenged the church's influence. Additionally, instances of corruption and scandals within some religious institutions have affected their credibility and moral authority (Balcomb 2014: 76). Despite these challenges, the church's potential to contribute to social transformation remains significant, mainly through a missional ecclesiology that emphasises active engagement with societal issues (Goheen 2018: 45; Stetzer 2016: 22). Understanding these dynamics is crucial for developing a relevant and effective ecclesiological response to the problems facing South African society.

1.2.3 The Context of Crisis

The rapid pace of change in South Africa has resulted in a pervasive sense of anxiety and crisis. This is not unique to South Africa; throughout history, periods of rapid transformation have often led to feelings of instability and uncertainty. As Niemandt (2007: 25) notes, "Where the other major changes in worldviews took place over centuries, the current change took place in a few decades." The accelerated nature of these changes has made it difficult to maintain clarity about the future, as expressed by Roxburgh and Romanuk (2006: 159): *"It is not a matter of small adjustments in a stable system. We are in a period that makes it impossible to have much clarity about the future and how it will be shaped."*

The church, in particular, faces significant challenges adapting to these rapid changes. Historically, the church has always had to navigate periods of crisis and transformation. David Bosch (1991: 181) emphasises in *Transforming Mission* that paradigm shifts have occurred in every era. Since the beginning of Christianity, the church has struggled not only to interpret the Christian faith in a relevant manner but also to be church in a relevant manner.

One by-product of rapid change is the emergence of epistemological and existential crises. Hans Küng (1978: 481) points out that the church has continually confronted the world with the gospel, even in times of crisis. The crises the church faces are often the result of a misperception of its identity or an inability to actualise the mandate of God. Ecclesiology, the theological discipline concerning the church, helps understand its nature and challenges (McGrath 2001: 476). McGrath (2001: 477) articulates the importance of ecclesiology for anyone engaged in pastoral ministry, highlighting its relevance in providing a theoretical justification for an institution that has undergone development and change over centuries, set against an evolving social and political context.

A historical perspective on crisis reveals that significant ecclesiological shifts often occur during times of upheaval. The 16th-century Reformation is a prime example. Despite the crises of their time, reformers like Luther, Calvin, and Zwingli revolutionised church practice. They established new meanings of being church that served as alternatives to the Roman Catholic Church (Kärkkäinen 2002: 50-51)—this period exemplified a massive paradigm shift in ecclesiology and ministry.

In times of crisis, ecclesiology must return to the essence and vocation of the church. Van Gelder (2000: 23) emphasises that "failure to understand the nature of the church can lead to several problems. Defining the church functionally - in terms of what it does - can shift our perspective away from understanding the church as a unique community of God's people." Van Gelder (2007: 17) further elaborates, "*The church is the church does what it is, and the church organises what it does.*" The order of these concepts is crucial.

Reflecting on the crisis of the church's identity and mission, it is imperative to consider the Trinitarian foundation of its call to service. The diaconate, rooted in the *missio Dei* of the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit, invites the church to respond not merely to socio-economic shifts but to more profound divine unrest instigated by the resurrected Christ and the active Holy Spirit (Knoetze 2023: 6). This theological underpinning challenges the church to transcend its existential crisis by embracing a missional ecclesiology responsive to society's immediate needs and deeply rooted in the essence of God's mission (Goheen 2018: 45; Stetzer 2016: 22).

The church's challenges in contemporary South Africa are not isolated incidents but part of a broader pattern of crises impacting its identity and mission. As Niemandt (2013a: 9) emphasises, missional transformation is crucial for the church to embrace its calling to be a transformative agent in society. Nel (2015: 12) highlights the role of practical theology in equipping the church to respond effectively to crises, focusing on community development and social justice.

1.2.4 Ecclesiological Evolution: From Reformed Tradition to Missional Orientation

The *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika* (NHKA), rooted in the Dutch Reformed tradition, finds itself at a critical juncture, indicative of a church in transition. This is a reflection not just of the NHKA but of many South African churches grappling with the rapid sociopolitical changes within the country and intrinsic challenges such as declining memberships. Since the dawn of the new millennium, it has become increasingly clear that addressing these challenges necessitates more than superficial adjustments; a fundamental shift in ecclesiology is imperative.

Historically, the NHKA's ecclesial practice and ministry were heavily influenced by a Reformed ecclesiology that emphasised a presbyterial-synodal system of church governance, focusing on the roles and responsibilities of ordained ministers, elders, and deacons. This structure, deeply entrenched in the 1997 Church Order, facilitated a form of church life that was structured and systematic but somewhat rigid in responding to the fluid and complex nature of societal issues like poverty.

The need for systemic change became apparent, propelled by the understanding that ecclesiology—our conception of the church and its mission—shapes church polity and, consequently, congregational praxis and ministry. The drive for a more missional ecclesiology within the NHKA and broader South African Reformed churches necessitated deep reflection and substantial theological and structural reform.

The transformation journey, marked by adopting new liturgical formularies, greater liturgical diversity, new mission strategies, and extensive ecumenical collaboration, was rooted in the belief that *ecclesia semper reformanda* (the church is always to be reformed). This belief supported the idea that tradition could undergo reform without losing its essential spirit and ethos, aligning with the rallying cry for a movement from self-

centredness to God-centredness, from congregation to the kingdom of God, and from a maintenance model of church to a missional lifestyle.

Significantly, the 68th General Assembly (2007) and the subsequent 71st General Assembly (2016) played pivotal roles in articulating and operationalising this ecclesiological shift. The 2016 revised Church Order, in particular, underscored the priesthood of all believers and redefined the NHKA's vision as "Being church in the footsteps of Christ." This new ecclesiological stance emphasises the responsibility of all church members to live as disciples of Jesus Christ, advocating for a church that is not just in the world but actively engaging with it in a missional manner.

This transition from a traditional Reformed ecclesiology to a missional orientation signifies a profound rethinking of the church's identity and purpose. It reflects a broader theological and practical reorientation towards understanding the church as a dynamic, responsive community called to witness God's love in a rapidly changing society. The NHKA's journey underscores the complexities and challenges of such a transformation and highlights the potential for renewal and greater societal engagement.

The NHKA's journey through ecclesiological evolution is of significant importance. The trinitarian foundation of *Diakonia*³, as illustrated by

³ "*Diakonia*" is capitalised throughout this thesis to emphasise its theological significance within the framework of missional ecclesiology. As Bosch (1991:511-518) articulates, *Diakonia* is a critical dimension of the church's mission, alongside kerygma (proclamation) and koinonia (fellowship). Bosch presents *Diakonia* as integral to the *missio Dei*, encompassing a broad spectrum of activities such as justice, healing, reconciliation, and service. This multifaceted understanding of *Diakonia* underscores the church's holistic engagement with the world, reflecting its responsibility to participate in God's mission of transformation. Bosch's argument positions *Diakonia* not merely as an adjunct function but as central to the church's identity and purpose in the world. Kärkkäinen (2002:207) further supports this understanding by grounding *Diakonia* in Trinitarian theology. He describes *Diakonia* as the church's embodiment of its role as a servant community, mirroring the relational and communal nature of the triune God. For Kärkkäinen, *Diakonia* is not just about acts of charity; it is an expression of the church's participation in the divine mission, reflecting God's love, justice, and mercy in a broken world. Together, these perspectives highlight *Diakonia* as a vital element of both the church's mission and its theological identity, bridging the gap between ecclesiological theory and practical engagement with societal issues.

Knoetze (2023), serves as a critical theological framework in this evolution. It signifies a movement towards understanding the church's diaconal ministry not as an adjunct to its existence but as a reflection of the triune God's character and mission. This perspective reinforces the shift towards a missional ecclesiology that encompasses a holistic engagement with societal issues, including poverty, affirming that the church's mission is intrinsically linked to the nature of God as a missionary God.

As this research unfolds, the implications of this ecclesiological evolution for the NHKA's engagement with poverty and social justice will be further explored. This will provide a critical lens through which to examine the potential and limits of missional ecclesiology in addressing the pressing needs of South African society.

1.3 Brief Overview of Existing Literature

This section surveys the critical discussions and research findings that support this study's position. It highlights the intersection of ecclesiology, societal engagement, and poverty alleviation within the South African context and identifies gaps this research aims to fill.

1.3.1 Ecclesiology and Missional Engagement

Studies on missional ecclesiology in South Africa emphasise the church's critical role in addressing societal issues like poverty (Baron & Pali, 2021). This aligns with global discussions on the church's mission in a rapidly changing world, underscoring the urgent need for deeper understanding within South Africa's diverse contexts. Knoetze (2023) contributes to this conversation by highlighting *Diakonia's* trinitarian foundation in Afrika-speaking churches, pointing to a theological depth in the church's societal engagement.

1.3.2 Poverty in South Africa

Studies on the extent and impact of poverty in South Africa paint a stark picture, with significant portions of the population living below international

and national poverty lines (Matuku & Kaseke, 2014). While these analyses provide a crucial quantitative understanding of poverty, the engagement of ecclesiological perspectives with these socio-economic realities is less prevalent. This gap suggests an opportunity for research that bridges theological reflection and socio-economic analysis to foster more effective church-led initiatives against poverty.

1.3.3 Church's Societal Role

As Scott et al. (2019) explored, the church's role in post-apartheid South Africa and the economic dimensions of contemporary Pentecostalism (Kgatlé, 2020) indicate a complex landscape of faith-based social engagement. These studies highlight the church's potential in addressing poverty and inequality through prayer, community involvement, and economic initiatives. However, they also point to the necessity of a nuanced ecclesiological framework that can adapt to and effectively address the multifaceted nature of poverty.

1.3.4 Strategies for Poverty Alleviation

Research into strategies for poverty alleviation in South Africa focuses on various socio-economic interventions, from promoting entrepreneurship to enhancing financial inclusion (Fatoki, 2014; Du Toit & Nkomo, 2014). While these studies offer important insights into potential poverty reduction mechanisms, the role of ecclesiology in shaping, supporting, or leading these efforts is often overlooked. This research intends to bridge that divide, examining how a missional ecclesiological approach can inform and enhance poverty alleviation strategies.

In summary, while existing literature offers foundational insights into ecclesiological engagement with societal issues and the challenge of poverty in South Africa, there is a distinct opportunity for this research to bridge the gap between ecclesiological theory and practical poverty alleviation efforts. Drawing on insights from the broader ecclesiological discourse and specific contributions like those of Knoetze, this study explores how contextual and missional ecclesiology can enhance the

church's response to poverty, focusing on the NHKA. This approach seeks to contribute to a more nuanced understanding of how theological principles can inform practical actions in the face of South Africa's socio-economic challenges.

1.4 Limitations of Research

Due to its vast scope, poverty in general and the response of South African churches to poverty cannot be discussed. Consequently, this research focuses specifically on the *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA)* as a '*case study*', examining how its historical identity, theological development, and practical engagement with poverty inform its broader mission. By situating the NHKA at the centre of this research, the study aims to explore how this denomination's ecclesiological evolution can contribute to broader theological and socio-economic discourse.

While focusing on the NHKA as a case study allows for an in-depth analysis of a specific ecclesial context, it is essential to acknowledge this approach's limitations.

First, the findings may not be directly generalisable to other denominations or ecclesial bodies, given the unique historical, theological, and cultural context of the NHKA.

Second, while providing a strong theoretical foundation, the reliance on existing literature and historical analysis may not capture the most current on-the-ground realities of poverty and church engagement. The researcher's active involvement in the NHKA partially mitigates this limitation, but it remains a consideration.

Third, the study's focus on ecclesiology and poverty within South Africa may limit its applicability to other socio-economic or geographical settings.

Despite these limitations, the depth of analysis afforded by this focused approach provides valuable insights that can inform broader discussions on ecclesiology and social engagement.

1.5 Primary Research Question

1. **Transformation Potential:** How can a shift towards a missional ecclesiology enhance the NHKA's engagement with poverty alleviation in South Africa?

1.5.1 Secondary Research Questions

2. **Socio-Economic Impact:** How does the socio-economic context of poverty in South Africa influence the NHKA's mission and diaconal ministry?
3. **Historical Context:** What are the historical and current ecclesiological understandings within the NHKA regarding the church's role in poverty alleviation?
4. **Theological Foundations:** What theological and practical foundations underpin missional ecclesiology, and how are they applicable to the NHKA's context?
5. **Ministry Optimisation:** How can diaconal ministry within the NHKA be optimised or transformed to better respond to the needs of the impoverished in South Africa?
6. **Integration Challenges:** What are the potential challenges and opportunities associated with integrating a missional ecclesiology into the NHKA's operational and theological framework?

7. **Model Potential:** How can the NHKA's engagement with poverty through a missional ecclesiology serve as a model for other churches in South Africa and beyond?

1.6 Hypothesis

This research's point of departure is Alan Hirsch's well-known statement: *"If the system story does not change, nothing changes"* (Hirsch 2006:53)⁴ This leads to the hypothesis that a shift in ecclesiology is necessary for the NHKA to address poverty fundamentally.

The hypothesis of this research is fortified by Knoetze's (2023) theological exploration of *Diakonia* within the Afrikaans-speaking churches, which underscores that the essence and mission of the church are derived from its participation in the triune God's mission. This trinitarian perspective implies that for the NHKA to fundamentally address the issue of poverty, a transformation in ecclesiology that aligns with God's holistic mission is imperative. Such an ecclesiological shift would not only respond to the socio-economic challenges. However, it would also reflect the church's deep theological commitment to mirroring the character and mission of the triune God in its ministry.

To test this hypothesis, the study will employ a multi-faceted approach. This will include a historical analysis of the NHKA's ecclesiological development and past engagement with poverty issues, drawing on church archives and historical scholarship (Dreyer 2016b). A critical examination of missional ecclesiology and its potential application within the NHKA context will be undertaken, engaging with seminal texts in the field (Bosch 1991; Van Gelder 2007). Case studies of the NHKA's current poverty alleviation efforts will be analysed to assess the impact of existing ecclesiological approaches. Furthermore, a comparative analysis with other denominations that have adopted missional ecclesiologies will be conducted to evaluate outcomes regarding poverty alleviation efforts

⁴ Hirsch (2006:53) understands a systems story as *'the set of core beliefs which result from the multiplicity of conversations and which maintains the unity of culture'*.

(Niemandt 2019). This comprehensive approach aims to provide robust empirical and theoretical grounds for assessing the potential impact of an ecclesiological shift on the NHKA's engagement with poverty alleviation in South Africa.

1.6.1 Historical Perspective

The ecclesiology of the NHKA, seen from a historical perspective, had been determined by several influential factors. The first influence is ethnicity. The NHKA had a long history of theological justification of apartheid and Afrikaner nationalism. The result was an ethnic church or *Volkskerk*^{5 6} for Afrikaners.

As time went by, the NHKA gradually moved to a position of rejecting apartheid and its theological justification of apartheid in 2010 (see Wolff 2006; Venter 1999; Dreyer 2013a), as well as scrapping all articles in the *Church Order* about race and ethnicity. This paved the way for a massive

⁵ *Volkskerk* when used here refers to a church closely connected to a specific ethnic or national group, in this case, the Afrikaner people. The NHKA's identity as a *Volkskerk* played a crucial role in shaping its mission and activities, particularly in its efforts to preserve and promote the cultural and religious values of the Afrikaner community. Buitendag and Van Wyk (2011:3) provide an overview of the NHKA's history as a *Volkskerk*, citing numerous sources demonstrating how this concept has been central to the church's identity and functioning throughout its history. They note that this *Volkskerk* identity, along with the church's theological justification of it and for separate development (apartheid), led to the church's break with ecumenical bodies. See also Dreyer (2006) for an in-depth examination of the NHKA as a *Volkskerk* and its implications for the church's mission and identity.

⁶ The term *Volkskerk* carries nuanced meanings across contexts. In South Africa, it often refers to churches tied to Afrikaner nationalism, such as the NHKA, which historically identified as a *Volkskerk* ministering to Afrikaans-speaking people, rooted in 19th-century Afrikaner liberty and nationalism, and later justified theologically (Dreyer, 2006). Similarly, the *Volkskerk van Afrika* (1922) emerged as an independent Reformed denomination in response to dissatisfaction with white missionary control over black congregations (Katts, 2015). Beyond South Africa, *Volkskerk* has broader implications. In Scandinavia, the *folkekirke* refers to national Lutheran churches like the Church of Sweden, acting as cultural symbols while retaining autonomy in secular societies (Sundback, 2008). Abraham Kuyper distinguished between the church as organism (its societal presence) and institution (its organisational structure), arguing that the former underpins the latter (Kuyper, 2013; 2015). Similarly, in Germany, *Volkskirchen* emerged as state-affiliated churches, while Scandinavian folk churches balanced cultural identity with independence. Gerben Heitink's practical theology highlights how churches mediate faith in diverse contexts, advocating for tradition-informed, empirically grounded praxis (Heitink, 1999). Thus, *Volkskerk* spans meanings from ethnic-nationalist to broader cultural and theological identities, offering comparative insights into the NHKA's mission.

paradigm shift to a contextually relevant ecclesiology. Dreyer (2011a:13) emphasises that the slogan “*ecclesia reformata, semper reformanda*” is paramount and that the NHKA must rediscover its ecclesiological roots. The ongoing reformation of the church is subject to an accurate, accountable and new understanding of being a church, especially if the church wants to be relevant in an ever-changing world.

A second influence on the ecclesiology of the NHKA is the presbyterial-synodal form of church governance (see Pont 1995:771-891). The presbyterial-synodal ecclesiology and church governance became structurally entrenched in the NHKA *Church Order* (NHKA 1997). Subsequently, every revision of the *Church Order* seems to emphasise the offices and worship service intensely. It manifests in the work of the minister who preaches, the elders who keep the order and the deacons who are responsible for the diaconal ministry. Again, this creates a situation where the NHKA focuses on Sunday worship and the maintenance of the local congregation. Diaconal ministry is primarily limited to helping members of the congregation who need support. The presbyterial-synodal ecclesiology and church governance tend to be introverted and limit the missional character of the church.

A third significant influence on the ecclesiology of the NHKA is the *notae ecclesiae* of the *Belgic Confession*. Reformed ecclesiology is still based on a 16th-century reality of people legally required to be church members, baptise their children and attend Sunday worship. It reflects a situation of power, where the ministers and elders were respected as custodians of God’s kingdom. However, 21st-century church members are often absent from Sunday worship and do not celebrate Holy Communion regularly but are very rarely disciplined. Again, the reformed *notae ecclesiae* result in an introverted church and limit the missional character of the church.

The challenge facing reformed churches at the beginning of the 21st century is facilitating a reformation/transformation of the system story. The

system dynamics⁷ of the Genevan church and the reformed churches of the 16th century have become outdated. If the church is understood as a complex system of relationships, emotions, ideas and structures (as it should), it is pretty clear that we face fundamental systemic challenges. The system story of the 16th century fundamentally differs from that of the postmodern 21st century. The challenge will be to translate reformed ecclesiology into the language of missional ecclesiology and to transform the third mark of the church (discipline) into discipleship by the proper understanding of the priesthood of all believers.

A fourth significant influence on the transformation of the NHKA ecclesiology is practical. NHKA members have decreased by 30% in the last thirty years (Dreyer 2011a:99). Congregations face significant challenges in terms of financial survival and ministry. These challenges are often perceived as a crisis, leading to critical reflection. The existential crisis churches face has resulted in much effort and research in ecclesiology.

Historical analysis concludes that a fundamental shift in ecclesiology is necessary to assist the church in reimagining a new future, a new way of being church, and being open to new possibilities regarding ministry, witness, and engaging social challenges such as poverty. The church must see itself differently but also see the world and the plight of humanity differently.

1.6.2 NHKA Synodal Resolutions

Systemic change can only achieve substantial and lasting transformation if the system story changes. Therefore, it became clear to the NHKA that a shift in ecclesiology is required if the church is to reform. Since 1995, the NHKA has entered a wide-reaching and fundamental discourse on ecclesiology and the transformation of the NHKA. Initially, it was unclear

⁷ 'System dynamics' is a theory designed to understand the non-linear behaviour of complex systems over time.

what such a shift in ecclesiology would entail, but the growing prominence of missional ecclesiology within South African reformed churches (Dreyer 2020:5) influenced the NHKA. However, it needed further development and some sense of its practical implications (Dreyer 2020a:5). Various General Assemblies attended to the question of ecclesiology.

During the General Church Assembly of 2007, an important decision was made that the *Church Order* of the NHKA must be rewritten again based on missional ecclesiology and a strong emphasis on the missional calling of the NHKA (NHKA 2007:273). Dreyer (2020a:5) sums this ecclesiological movement up as continued reformation away from:

- self-centredness to God-centredness
- the congregation to the kingdom of God
- civil religion to genuine Christian faith
- linear thinking to systemic thinking
- institutional culture to a ministry-based culture
- programmes and actions for people and relationships
- members who are consumers to members who are co-workers in ministry (the priesthood of believers)
- a 'maintenance' model of church to a missional lifestyle.

The reformulation of relevant ecclesiology again received attention during the 71st General Assembly of the NHKA (2016). Resolution 1 aimed to articulate an ecclesiology for the NHKA under the heading '*Being church in the future*'.

Dreyer (2020a:6) summarises Resolution I, addressing the nature and mission of the church under the following points:

- The nature of the church is not determined by the challenges of our time but by God's nature.
- The church is an eschatological community, living between the first and second coming of the Lord Jesus Christ.
- The church is *creatura Verbi*; it exists in the Word that became flesh through the proclamation of the living Word.

- The church lives organically as the people of God, the household of the Father, the body of Christ and the temple of the Holy Spirit.
- The NHKA is a visible manifestation of the one, holy and universal church. The church lives in a community (*koinonia*) with God and all people.
- The church is missional. It is called to proclaim the gospel to the world. In other words, a mission is not just one activity among many. Instead, the church is missional by its very nature, corresponding to God's nature (*missio Dei*).
- Diversity in unity is essential, both in ministry and liturgy.

These resolutions adopted by the various General Assemblies were small steps in developing a new understanding of the church. However, this ongoing process still lacks reference to the NHKA's social justice and poverty responsibility.

1.6.3 Missional Ecclesiology as a Possibility

Dreyer (2020b:262) states that the theological concept of *missio Dei* has offered the possibility of rethinking the church in a new and theologically responsible way, especially if the church truly wants to be “*a church in the footsteps of Christ.*”

One must distinguish between ‘*missio Dei*’ as a theological concept and the actual ‘*missio Dei*’, i.e. God’s acts in creation. In this contribution, the term ‘*missio Dei*’ is primarily used as a theological concept. *Since World War II, missio Dei has become one of the most influential and vital theological concepts.* It influenced how the church and mission are understood. It is one of the buzzwords in ecumenical theology. It redefined a Christian perspective on social justice and the church's societal role. It also assisted many churches in rethinking their identity and calling. Bosch (1991: 390) describes the importance of *missio Dei* as follows:

Since Willingen, the understanding of mission as missio Dei has been embraced by virtually all Christian persuasions – first by conciliar Protestantism, but subsequently also by other ecclesial groupings, such as the Eastern Orthodox and many evangelicals. It was also endorsed in Catholic mission theology, notably in some of the documents of the Second Vatican Council. (Bosch, 1991: 390)

Within a missional ecclesiology, emphasis is placed on the role of the general priesthood of all believers, especially in terms of ministry. It implies a mode of existence where the apostolate is integral to a congregation's thinking, life, and work. It indicates an internal matter deeply related to the spirituality of members and the congregation but culminates in service worldwide.

Therefore, a church with a solid apostolic consciousness is always, in essence, a church with a missional ecclesiology (Bosch 1991:389 – 393). A missional ecclesiology is about more than a church with a missionary function; a missional ecclesiology is about the essence and calling of the Church.

Kraemer (1960:126) says the church is missional and does not mean the same as the church's mission task or mission assignment. Hooker (2008:1) gives a good explanation of what missional ecclesiology entails:

Missional ecclesiology demands more of the church than deciding which community service projects to undertake or setting congregational priorities for the coming year. Missional ecclesiology is a way of understanding the church. It begins with the Missio Dei — God's own "self-sending" in Christ by the Spirit to redeem and transform creation. In a missional ecclesiology, the Church is not a building or an institution but a community of witnesses, called into being and equipped by God and sent into the world to testify to and

participate in Christ's work. The Church does not have missions; instead, the mission of God creates the Church. The Church serves God's call to mission through its work in three broadly defined categories: the proclamation of the Word of God, the administration of the sacraments of Baptism and the Lord's Supper, and the nurture of the covenant community of disciples. It undertakes this mission without regard for its agenda or survival. (Hooker 2008:1-2)

Bosch (1991:372) points out that the essence and calling of the church is missional; it is the church at work rather than the work of the church. This means that the church is sent to the world and must always focus on the world in words and deeds (Moltmann 1977:339).

Müller (2008:54) points to the shift from an ecclesio-centric approach to mission, where mission is only an aspect of being a church, to a Theocentric approach to mission, where the Church is defined in terms of its Biblical nature, its identity and its essences:

...in a more foundational way, the missional church is described as a people of God, created by the Spirit to live as a unique, distinct missional community, serving as an agent of and rooted in the Missio Dei in every time and place. (Muller 2008:54)

Guder (1998:81) also points to this shift away from an ecclesiocentric view of mission where the mission is only an activity of the church and is about church planting and expansion. Consequently, Müller (2008:54) states that mission is not an essential function of the church but that mission is inherently the fundamental nature of the church. Bosch has shown that there can be no return to a limited, ecclesiocentric view of mission (Bosch, 1991:393).

The *missio Dei* is the necessary starting point in missional ecclesiology. The essence and calling of the church flow from the *missio Dei*, as with which Hooker's explanation begins. Karl Barth already understood mission as an activity of God himself in 1932 (Bosch, 1991:389; Kritzinger & Saayman, 1994:41). "*Mission is not primarily an activity of the church, but an attribute of God*" (Bosch, 1991:390).

Three remarks regarding mission as God's mission are essential. God is a Trinitarian God; this Trinitarian God wants to save and transform the world; the essence and calling of the church comes from this Trinitarian God. "*Seeing the Triune God as the primary acting subject changes the way we think about both the church and the world*" (Van Gelder, 2007:18). Bosch (1991:390) explains that mission comes from God's nature; it is not primarily about ecclesiology or soteriology, but must therefore be understood in the context of the Trinity. "*Mission, as stated by the International Missionary Council (IMC), has a Trinitarian base*" (Kritzinger & Saayman, 1994: 40).

Mission is primarily and ultimately the work of the Trinity for the sake of the world (see Bosch, 1991:392; Hooker, 2008:2; Van Gelder, 2007:18). God the Father who sends the Son and God the Father and the Son who sends the Holy Spirit. From it flows the calling and essence of the church, the Trinity that sends the church into the world. The understanding of mission as the activity of God, the *missio Dei*, does not exclude the *missio ecclesiae*; on the contrary, "*mission, one might argue, is the reason for the existence of the Church*" (Kritzinger & Saayman, 1994:41-42).

Van Ruler (1952: 32) states that the apostolate is the church's foundation and paradigm; the ecclesia is considered missional. Therefore, the church exists for the world, not for the sake of the church itself, because of the deepest intention and scope of God's self-revelation and saving actions with the world in totality (Kraemer, 1960: 124).

This calling of the Church finds its content in the mercy God has shown us through the Person and work of His son, Jesus Christ (Rossouw 1991:487). He concretises in Person and works in the heart of the Father (Nel 1994:232). Through His life and ministry, Jesus Christ converted the mercy of the Father into bread, healing, salvation from danger, forgiveness, and reconciliation with God. God is seen as a missional God and as the creator and redeemer of the earth, the one who calls His people to participate in what He is already doing.

1.6.4 *Diakonia*

Since Jesus's time, helping needy people has been fundamental to the Christian faith. Over time, the ministry to the sick and the poor evolved into the office of the deacon. The diaconate evolved particularly during the Reformation and has remained a fundamental part of reformed ecclesiology since the 16th century.

The NHKA always understood the diaconate as a God-given command and calling to which every member has a responsibility (Botha 1993:47). Luke 6:36 states (NIV 2002): *“Be merciful, just as your Father is merciful.”* In the local congregation, the deacons, in particular, have the task of organising, leading, and managing this ministry. This is how the office of the deacon is traditionally understood and embodied in the praxis of the congregation. In the past, it has become the sole responsibility of the deacons and not every member's calling.

Schutte (2003:247) builds on the understanding that the church does not exist apart from the world and, therefore, has a responsibility before God to the world. In the world, the church must proclaim its message and celebrate its salvation in Christ; otherwise, it loses the world. Furthermore, a church that has lost its grip and eye for the world has lost everything. Therefore, he pleads that the church makes the paradigm shift that must occur so that the need is noticed and addressed inside and outside the congregation. He, therefore, wants to encourage the congregation to be a missional congregation, actively participating in the diaconate.

According to the Nicene Creed (Burn, 1909), this eye that the church should have for the world is one of its essential characteristics. Apart from the church's unity, holiness, and generality, the church is still apostolic, according to Nicaea. Various theologians have focused on these markers in investigating the Church's identity. Among them are Küng (1976:263–359); Moltmann (1977:337–361); Du Plooy (1982:121–184); Van Engen (1991:25–179); Scudieri (1997:66–77); Link (1999:239–262) and Dulles & Granfield (1999:14–28). Because the Church's apostolicity is part of her being, it is also part of all her work. This apostolic consciousness forms the foundation of her ecclesiology.

The concept of *Diakonia* is central to the World Council of Churches (WCC) mission and is an integral expression of Christian love in action. According to the WCC, *Diakonia* involves responding to social struggles, engaging in development activities, and addressing environmental concerns, thus reflecting the church's commitment to social justice and community engagement (World Council of Churches, 2017: 25). This understanding of *Diakonia* emphasises a holistic approach, encouraging churches to participate actively in the lives of their communities as a form of witness and service (Nordstokke, 2009: 14).

Diakonia is not limited to charitable actions but is seen as a transformative practice that includes advocacy for justice and sustainable development, reflecting a commitment to faith in action (World Council of Churches, 2017: 25). The WCC articulates this vision by stating that:

"Diakonia as the expression of Christian love and sharing is inclusive; it includes social struggles and development activities as well as environmental concerns, as a witness in action" (World Council of Churches, 2017: 25).

The church must constantly ask itself about its involvement in the world: *"Does the church still address the mature and modern man? Does the*

church in its activities adequately connect with the world of the secularised person?" (Peters 2000: 25).

Furthermore, about the South African context, does the NHKA have the ability to understand its calling to be a missional church relevant to the changing landscape of the South African context, especially regarding the church's diaconate and the ever-growing problem of poverty?

Knoetze (2023) adds a significant theological dimension to this discussion by exploring the trinitarian foundation of the diaconate, emphasising that the church's diaconal ministry should reflect the *missio Dei* of the triune God—Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. This foundational perspective underlines that the diaconate is not merely an adjunct to the church's ministry but is central to its participation in God's holistic mission to the world. Knoetze's (2023) research suggests that a deep theological commitment to *Diakonia* as part of the church's essence can inspire and direct the NHKA's diaconal ministry towards addressing poverty and inequality more effectively. By integrating this trinitarian understanding, the NHKA can re-envision its diaconal ministry as a reflection of God's merciful *dikaioσύνη*, the serving *Diakonia* of the Son, and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit, thereby ensuring that its engagement with poverty is not only an act of charity but a fulfilment of its divine mandate.

1.6.5 Theory and Praxis

Despite recent synodal resolutions and changes to the church order emphasising the shift to a missional ecclesiology, the church's congregational praxis and ministry remain unchanged and continue reinforcing a stuckness in congregations. This prevents new stimuli from bringing new life. Congregations, church councils and members are generally slow to change and are not enthusiastic about reaching out to people and communities outside the church (cf. Dreyer 2016:191). Sometimes, members are even hostile to such initiatives and feel they threaten their familiar church space and values.

Thus, it is clear that the church is still essentially institutional and characterised by an inward orientation and a zeal to maintain the *status quo*, even though the church order emphasises a missional ecclesiology and gives freedom to implement and develop new congregational praxis and ministry.

Decisions made on a macro-level, like those made during the General Church Assembly, do not automatically translate into micro-level changes (to congregational praxis and ministry); therefore, they must be managed and implemented.

Renewal, transformation, and church reform are not superficial and are not cosmetic changes but require a transformation of thinking and radical renewal at all levels of a church. It requires specific knowledge and skills to guide such a complex process, leading to tension and conflict (cf. Dreyer 2016:191 – 196 on change management). That is why many congregations prefer not to begin with it. They want to keep the peace. In reality, such a choice usually leads to stagnation and decay. Therefore, any attempt to reform the religious praxis remains a gamble and must be constantly adjusted.

For churches with an institutional approach to being a church, reform is a complex process due to a natural resistance to change and the inability to establish new religious practices (Heitink 2007:355).

Maintenance requires so much energy that there is little enthusiasm for outward orientation. It boils down to the fact that the church's culture must be changed, which is no easy task. Instead, it is necessary to pursue a deep search for God's will. It is about deep listening and constant reflection on what God is doing - in congregants, congregations, circles of friends and communities. The NHKA probably needs conversion here because the emphasis was on what the church wanted for too long, and circumstances now force the church to ask for what God wants.

Dreyer (2016:192) emphasises that we do not disregard Barth's warning that church reform does not, in the first place, depend on human activities or good governance. Church reform is obedience to God, but at the same time, God renews and reforms the church and people's thinking through the decisive action of His Word and Spirit. It does not mean that congregants have no responsibility. God's actions do not exclude human actions; on the contrary - it asks that congregants, in essence, every believer, deal with it with great responsibility.

1.7 Methodological Framework

1.7.1 Research Methodology

This research is situated within the ambit of Historical Theology, explicitly focusing on Ecclesiology and Public Theology as delineated by the Department of Systematic and Historical Theology at the University of Pretoria. Following the framework described by Dreyer and Pillay (2017), this study will navigate through the intersecting disciplines of Ecclesiology, the History of Christianity, the History of Christian Theology, the History of Christian Missions, the History of Christian Doctrine, Church History, Church and Society (Public Theology), and Church Polity.

The primary focus will be Ecclesiology and Public Theology, which aim to dissect the church's nature and mission in the face of societal challenges.

Ecclesiology has to do with the nature *and* mission of the church, but as Van Gelder (2007:19) pointed out (see above), the sequence is essential. The point of departure must be the nature or essence of the church. First, the ontological question does not imply a top-down approach to ecclesiology. Fundamental questions should always be asked with our ears close to the ground, including the church's challenges at any time and context. If we accept McGrath's understanding of ecclesiology (2001:476) as a working definition (see above), it is clear that ecclesiology should not be limited to a subsection of systematic theology. McGrath speaks of ecclesiology and ministry, the practical challenges the church is facing and how the church needs to adapt to a changing environment. This

involves more than a systematic exposition of the *notae ecclesiae* or a philosophical discussion of the church (Dreyer 2017:4).

1.7.2 Research Strategy

Drawing upon the Research Strategy for Missional Transformation formulated in 2018 by academics from various universities (Niemandt *et al.*, 2018:1), this study endeavours to foster a deep engagement with missional challenges, facilitating a discourse on ecclesiological transformation and innovation within the NHKA. This approach is instrumental in promoting a nuanced understanding of how ecclesiological paradigms can be innovatively applied to address poverty and social injustices within the South African context.

Furthermore, the methodological approach that W.A. Dreyer (2016) characterised as '*practical ecclesiology*' offers a multidisciplinary lens through which the interplay between ecclesiological theory and praxis is examined.

This methodology is pivotal in exploring the NHKA's ecclesiological evolution and its practical implications for poverty alleviation. By integrating theoretical exploration with an analysis of ecclesial practices, this research aims to uncover actionable insights that could guide the NHKA towards a more effective engagement with societal needs.

In summary, this methodological framework leverages a comprehensive literary study, eschewing primary data collection methods like interviews for an in-depth analysis of existing literature. It positions the research at the confluence of ecclesiological theory and practical application. It aspires to contribute to academic discourse and the praxis of the NHKA and similar ecclesiastical bodies in addressing poverty within the South African socio-economic landscape.

1.8 Research Rationale

This research springs from a deep-seated concern for societal needs and a personal exploration of the South African church landscape. As a minister in the NHKA, I have had a front-row seat to how the church grapples with societal issues, especially poverty, which has been eye-opening. The reality of poverty in South Africa is more than just numbers; it is about real people's struggles and the urgent need for action, particularly from societal pillars like the church.

The NHKA has a rich history and deep theological roots, putting it uniquely positioned to tackle the poverty issue. However, how effectively the church uses its theology and identity to fight poverty often reveals what it thinks its mission and societal role should be. This study is driven by the idea that a missional ecclesiology, which is all about seeing the church's role as actively participating in God's mission, could be a game-changer in addressing poverty. Being a minister in the NHKA has given me a unique perspective on the challenges and opportunities of aligning the church's mission with the needs of South Africa's most marginalised and impoverished people.

1.9 Research Significance

The significance of this research is multifaceted, bridging ecclesiological theory, practical ministry, and personal vocation:

1.9.1 Theological and Ecclesiological Exploration

This research contributes to ecclesiological scholarship by exploring how a shift towards missional ecclesiology can inform and transform the church's engagement with poverty. It critically reflects on ecclesiological assumptions and their practical implications, grounded in my experience and observations within the NHKA.

1.9.2 Practical Framework for the NHKA

From a practical ministry perspective, this study provides the NHKA – my ecclesiastical home – with a comprehensive analysis of its current practices and potential pathways for deeper engagement with poverty. It aims to offer actionable recommendations that resonate with the church's theological commitments and my firsthand understanding of its capabilities and challenges.

1.9.3 Personal Reflection and Positionality

Integrating personal history and ministerial experience enriches the research, grounding it in a lived reality that underscores the urgency and relevance of the study. My journey as a minister of the NHKA offers a unique vantage point, blending academic inquiry with pastoral concern and highlighting the importance of theological integrity in addressing societal challenges.

Initiating my ministry within the NHKA at 25, the profound socio-economic disparities encountered offered a challenge and a call for deeper ecclesiological reflection. Originating from a background of privilege, which afforded me educational opportunities many in South Africa do not have, I was positioned to view these disparities not just as societal issues but as ecclesiological imperatives for the church's mission in the world. The transition from academic studies focused on the essence of being the church to grappling with these realities in practice marked the beginning of a critical journey into understanding the church's role amidst poverty and inequality.

My academic pathway, which led to MDiv and MTh degrees focusing on ecclesiology, provided a theoretical foundation challenged and enriched by ministerial experiences. Although my earlier research did not directly address the intersection of ecclesiology and poverty, the difficulties of ministry in a context marked by increasing hardship—exacerbated by the COVID-19 pandemic—necessitated a shift towards integrating ecclesiological inquiry with social action. The pandemic, while a global crisis, offered a localised lens on the escalating needs within our

community, prompting an intensification of our congregational efforts to provide food and clothing more frequently.

These ministerial and communal engagements, set against my backdrop of privilege, have spurred a reflective process on the practical implications of ecclesiology in addressing societal needs. The establishment and evolution of a food and clothing bank within our congregation, initially a response to observed needs, became a critical site of ecclesiological praxis, challenging and deepening our understanding of what it means to be the church in a world of need.

Now, at 36, reflecting on a decade of ministry and research, I find myself at a juncture where the theoretical and the practical converge. This research is driven by a desire to contribute to the scholarly discourse on ecclesiology and explore actionable pathways through which the church, particularly within the NHKA, can respond more effectively to the challenges of poverty and inequality in a post-pandemic world.

By weaving personal experiences with academic inquiry, this study aims to provide theoretically robust and practically relevant insights. It seeks to advance an understanding of ecclesiology that is responsive to the pressing social issues of our time, informed by a decade of ministerial engagement and reflective practice. The journey from privilege to praxis embodies a quest for an ecclesiological orientation that aligns with the church's mission in the world, marking a pathway for ecclesiological renewal and societal engagement that resonates beyond the confines of academic research.

1.9.4 Model for Broader Ecclesiastical Engagement

Beyond the NHKA, this research aspires to serve as a model for other churches in South Africa, demonstrating how theological reflection and ecclesiological renewal can empower the church to address poverty effectively. It underscores the role of personal conviction and ecclesiastical positionality in fostering meaningful societal engagement.

This study stands at the intersection of theory, practice, and personal vocation, seeking to contribute to a deeper understanding and more effective implementation of the church's mission in society. It reflects a commitment to leveraging ecclesiological insights for social transformation, inspired by a personal journey of faith and ministry within the NHKA.

1.10 Clarification of Concepts

In pursuing a nuanced understanding of how ecclesiology can influence the church's response to poverty, it is essential to define and contextualise the primary terms that underpin this research. This section aims to provide clear definitions and explanations for critical concepts, ensuring a consistent and comprehensive framework for analysis.

1.10.1 Ecclesiology

Ecclesiology, as defined by Dreyer (2016:25 – 27) with reference to McGrath (2001) and Mannion and Mudge (2010), is the area of Christian theology that deals with the doctrine of the church. It seeks to provide a theoretical justification for the church as an institution that has undergone significant development and change across centuries, set against a backdrop of evolving social and political contexts. McGrath (2001:476) emphasises ecclesiology's importance for anyone engaged in pastoral ministry, highlighting its pervasive influence on ministry practices and church life.

The term '*ecclesiology*' comes from the Greek '*ekklesia*', meaning '*church*', and encompasses questions about the nature and identity of the church, its theological foundation, its institutional character, its role as a body of believers, and its adaptation for survival amidst changes.

Ecclesiology, as seen by McGrath (2001:476), is concerned with several core aspects:

- The theological basis and theoretical justification for the church ('ecclesiology', 'theology', 'theoretical justification').
- The concept and doctrine of the church as an institution and a body of believers ('doctrine of the church', 'institution', 'body').
- The implications for pastoral ministry, including the church's development, adaptation, and survival ('pastoral ministry', 'development', 'change', 'survival').

Furthermore, Dreyer (2016:27) expands the discussion by delineating between ecclesiology, the scientific study of the church (*ekklesiologie*); the concept of the church as expressed in confessions and church order (*kerkbegrip*); and the practice of being the church in daily life and ministry (*kerkwees*). These dimensions of the church are dynamically interrelated, where ecclesiology informs the church concept, shaping the church's practice of ministry and daily existence.

Ecclesiology is framed as the critical theological reflection on the church's essence and calling based on Scripture within a specific historical context. The church concept refers to the formulated doctrine of the church's nature as expressed in confessions and church orders, and it influences the self-understanding and identity of a faith community. Being the church (*kerkwees*) relates to the concrete expression and practice of church life within a historical context, encompassing the congregation's life before God (*coram Deo*) and ecclesiastical practices.

In summary, according to Dreyer (2016:25 - 27), ecclesiology is both a theological discipline and a practical inquiry into the church's nature, purpose, and practice, informed by scripture and shaped by historical and contextual realities. It underscores the dynamic interaction between theological concepts and church practice, aiming to facilitate ecclesiastical processes and dialogues that bridge theory and practice.

1.10.2 Missional Ecclesiology

A missional ecclesiology is a theological perspective that sees the church's essence and purpose as inherently mission-oriented, originating from and participating in the *missio Dei* (God's mission). This approach emphasises the church's role as a community of witnesses, called into being and equipped by God, sent into the world to testify to and participate in Christ's work. The church is thus not defined by its institutional structure or programmes but by its participation in God's mission to redeem and transform creation (Dreyer 2016).

1.10.3 Poverty

As understood in theological discussions, poverty is not merely a state of economic deprivation but also encompasses social, spiritual, and relational aspects that deny individuals and communities access to basic human needs, dignity, and development opportunities (Myers, 2011:3; Ndzi, 2024:1). This multifaceted nature of poverty is a pressing issue demanding immediate attention and action, reflecting the moral imperative central to Christian ethics (Pillay, 2017:11; Mathole, 2005:4).

1.10.4 Social Justice

In the context of Christian theology, social justice is not just a concept. It is a call to action, a mission that the church is uniquely positioned to undertake. It refers to creating a society or world where equality, fairness, and justice prevail in all aspects of human life. It involves addressing systemic inequalities and striving for the equitable distribution of resources, opportunities, and rights, reflecting God's concern for the marginalised and oppressed.

1.10.5 Theological Frameworks

Theological frameworks refer to the structured theological perspectives that guide the understanding, interpretation, and application of Christian faith and doctrine. These frameworks shape how the church views its mission, engages with social issues like poverty, and discerns its societal role.

1.10.6 Ecclesiastical Engagement

Ecclesiastical engagement refers to the church's active involvement in the broader community and world through mission, service, and witness. It encompasses the church's efforts to address social, economic, and spiritual needs, reflecting its missional ecclesiology.

1.10.7 NHKA (*Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika*)

NHKA refers to a specific denomination within the South African context, part of the broader Reformed tradition. It is one denomination among others considered in this study, representing a particular ecclesial community with its own historical, theological, and missional identity.

1.10.8 Diaconal Ministry

Diaconal ministry involves the church's service to those in need, reflecting Jesus' call to care for the poor, the sick, the marginalised, and the oppressed. It expresses the church's mission to demonstrate God's love and compassion through practical acts of kindness and support.

1.10.9 Public Theology

This term refers to the intersection of theology and public life, highlighting how the church engages with societal issues, including poverty, from a theological perspective.

1.10.10 Socio-economic Challenges

A broad term that covers the various economic, social, and political factors contributing to poverty in South Africa, serving as a backdrop for the church's mission and ministry.

1.10.11 Trinitarian Foundation

This term underscores the theological basis of missional ecclesiology and diaconal ministry, emphasising the role of the Triune God (Father, Son, Holy Spirit) in the church's mission and service.

1.10.12 Contextual Ecclesiology

Refers to adapting and applying ecclesiological concepts in response to specific cultural, societal, and historical contexts.

1.11 Chapter Outline

This research is organised into six main chapters, each designed to explore the role of ecclesiology in the church's engagement with poverty, focusing on the NHKA. The structure is as follows:

Chapter 1: Introduction

The first chapter sets the stage by presenting the central theme: exploring the potential of contextual and missional ecclesiology in addressing poverty in South Africa, specifically focusing on the NHKA. It outlines the research background, significance, objectives, and critical questions driving the study. This chapter also provides an overview of the research methodology, theoretical framework, and the structure of the subsequent chapters. It introduces critical concepts and definitions that will be explored throughout the research, establishing a foundation for the following detailed analysis.

Chapter 2: Contextual Analysis of Poverty in South Africa

This chapter provides a comprehensive contextual analysis of poverty in South Africa. It examines the historical roots, current manifestations, and multifaceted factors contributing to poverty's entrenchment. The contextual analysis covers socio-economic dynamics without delving into the specific responses of the NHKA, thereby laying the groundwork for understanding the broader context within which the NHKA operated and approached poverty alleviation in the past and the contemporary challenges it faces today. This chapter sets the stage for exploring the NHKA's historical engagement with poverty and poverty alleviation.

Chapter 3: Historical Engagement of the Church with Poverty

This chapter explores the NHKA's historical engagement with poverty, tracing key events and theological shifts that have influenced and shaped its response. It examines how the church's ecclesiology and historical

identity as a *Volkskerk* influenced its diaconal ministry and approach to poverty alleviation. This historical analysis provides essential context for understanding the NHKA's current approach to poverty alleviation, highlighting lessons learned and missed opportunities. The chapter offers insights into how historical contexts inform current practices and the potential for missional transformation. It also sets up the discussion of theoretical perspectives in the subsequent chapter.

Chapter 4: Theoretical Underpinnings of Missional Ecclesiology

Chapter 4 delves into the theoretical framework that underpins missional ecclesiology, a central concept for rethinking the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation. Building on the historical analysis provided in Chapter 3, this chapter explores the origins, development, and critical components of missional ecclesiology, contrasting it with other ecclesiological models. The aim is to assess the relevance and potential of missional ecclesiology within the context of the NHKA's diaconal mission. By addressing the critiques and challenges associated with adopting this framework, Chapter 4 establishes the theoretical foundation needed to reshape the church's engagement with socio-economic challenges, particularly poverty, in contemporary South Africa.

Chapter 5: Evaluating and Transforming the NHKA's Approach to Poverty Alleviation

Chapter 5 applies the principles of missional ecclesiology, established in Chapter 4, to a critical evaluation of the NHKA's current diaconal practices, particularly with poverty alleviation. This chapter synthesises findings from previous chapters to conduct a focused analysis of the NHKA's recent activities, as documented in the *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) minutes from 1998 to 2022. It evaluates these efforts' theological soundness and practical effectiveness, considering how well they align with missional ecclesiology. The chapter is structured to examine the NHKA's diaconal structures, explore potential alternatives, and propose strategic recommendations for a transformative and holistic approach to

poverty alleviation that aligns with the church's theological identity and societal mission.

Chapter 6: Conclusions and Recommendations

This chapter synthesises the research findings, concluding that adopting a missional ecclesiology can enhance the NHKA's engagement with poverty. It offers strategic recommendations for the NHKA and similar churches, emphasising the importance of diaconal ministry and ecclesiological renewal in addressing poverty. The chapter also suggests directions for future research, highlighting broader implications for ecclesiology and poverty alleviation in the South African context and beyond.

1.12 Conclusion

In conclusion, this research initiates a critical inquiry into the transformative potential of contextual and missional ecclesiology for the church's engagement with the pervasive challenge of poverty in South Africa. It posits that a deliberate reorientation of the church's mission, aligning with the socio-economic realities and the profound inequalities characterising the South African context, is imperative for a more effective ecclesiastical response to poverty.

Through a detailed exploration of the NHKA as a case study, this research aims to highlight the complexities and possibilities inherent in ecclesiological evolution towards a missional paradigm and its consequent impact on poverty alleviation.

The foundational premise of this research is the understanding that ecclesiology—far from being a mere theoretical construct—has practical implications for the church's role and response to societal issues. By advocating for a shift towards missional ecclesiology, this study seeks to engage critically with the theological underpinnings and historical precedents that have shaped the church's mission, examining how these can be recalibrated to address the difficulties of poverty within a contemporary South African context.

This introduction has established a framework for a comprehensive examination that integrates theological, historical, and practical dimensions. It aims to scrutinise the efficacy of a missional ecclesiological approach in mobilising the church towards a more proactive and responsive engagement with societal needs. It underscores the necessity of ecclesiological renewal, propelled by the missional imperative to participate in God's redemptive mission in the world.

The subsequent chapters will build upon this foundation, critically evaluating the church's historical and current engagements with poverty, the theoretical underpinnings of missional ecclesiology, and the practical implications of such an ecclesiological shift within the NHKA. This exploration intends to contribute substantially to academic discourse while providing actionable insights for practically implementing the church's mission in society.

By advocating for contextual and missional ecclesiology, this research endeavours to chart a course towards ecclesiastical renewal that addresses the urgent issue of poverty and envisions a future where the church is actively involved in God's transformative work. This research seeks to inspire a reimagined ecclesial mission that contributes to realising a more equitable and compassionate society, demonstrating the church's capacity to respond dynamically to the challenges and opportunities presented by the South African socio-economic landscape.

Chapter 2 – Contextual Analysis of Poverty in South Africa

2.1 Introduction

Understanding the persistence of poverty in South Africa is not just a matter of academic interest but a pressing need for addressing the socio-economic challenges that affect a significant portion of the population (Aliber, 2003:473; Seekings, 2007:12). Despite more than two decades of democratic governance, poverty remains pervasive and complex (Bhorat et al., 2014:47-51; Sulla & Zikhali, 2018:55).

Poverty is often framed as a purely economic issue, but theological discussions offer a broader and more nuanced understanding. Theologically, poverty is not merely a state of economic deprivation but also encompasses social, spiritual, and relational aspects that deny individuals and communities access to basic human needs, dignity, and development opportunities (Myers, 2011:3; Ndzi, 2024:1). This perspective underscores the moral imperative central to Christian ethics, where addressing poverty becomes not just a practical challenge but a theological obligation (Pillay, 2017:11; Mathole, 2005:4).

This chapter aims to provide a comprehensive contextual analysis of poverty in South Africa, examining its historical roots, current manifestations, and the multifaceted factors contributing to its entrenchment (Leibbrandt et al., 2010:9; Visagie & Turok, 2021:3).

Understanding the historical trajectory of poverty is essential to uncover the structural inequalities that persist today, many of which were institutionalised during colonialism and apartheid. This historical context establishes the socio-economic backdrop within which the NHKA has operated and provides critical insights into the church's engagement with poverty over time. By revealing the systemic nature of poverty and its enduring consequences, the historical overview lays a foundation for

exploring the potential of missional ecclesiology to address these challenges.

The historical context of poverty in South Africa reveals a trajectory closely linked to the country's colonial and apartheid past (Terreblanche, 2002:26; Nattrass & Seekings, 2011:547). Structural inequalities established during apartheid continue to shape economic opportunities and outcomes, perpetuating poverty patterns into the post-apartheid period (Seekings & Nattrass, 2005:6; Bhorat & Kanbur, 2006:4). These entrenched inequalities underscore the importance of understanding how historical legacies inform contemporary poverty dynamics and the church's response.

While poverty in South Africa is often measured in economic terms, it is also characterised by multidimensional deprivations in education, health, housing, and access to essential services (Alkire et al., 2017:377; Frame et al., 2016:814). These broader dimensions underscore the need for a holistic approach to poverty alleviation, particularly one informed by theological insights into the relational and moral aspects of poverty. The persistence of poverty can be attributed to a complex interplay of structural inequalities, labour market dynamics, and social exclusion (Leibbrandt et al., 2016:18; Von Fintel, 2018:3; Burger et al., 2017:105). Rural areas and former homelands, in particular, experience significantly higher poverty rates than urban centres, further reflecting spatial disparities rooted in South Africa's historical context (Noble et al., 2014:192; Sulla & Zikhali, 2018:45).

Labour market challenges, including high unemployment rates and mismatched skills, exacerbate poverty and inequality (Bhorat et al., 2016:12; Ranchhod & Finn, 2016:301). Additionally, health crises such as the HIV/AIDS epidemic and the COVID-19 pandemic have worsened poverty levels, deepening vulnerabilities among already marginalised groups (Poku, 2005:89; Arndt et al., 2020a:2).

Government interventions, such as the expansion of social grants and other poverty alleviation programmes, have had a measurable impact but remain insufficient to address the root causes of poverty (Devereux, 2011:414; Seekings, 2020a:3; Woolard et al., 2011:359; Philip, 2013:7). These measures are often critiqued for creating dependency while failing to foster long-term socio-economic transformation (Surender et al., 2010:205).

By integrating these insights with theological perspectives, this chapter establishes a comprehensive understanding of poverty in South Africa. The historical analysis presented here is critical for uncovering the systemic challenges the NHKA has faced and for evaluating how missional ecclesiology might inform a transformative approach to addressing poverty. This contextual foundation is crucial for the subsequent analysis in Chapter 3, which examines the NHKA's historical and theological engagement with poverty.

2.2 Historical Context of Poverty in South Africa

2.2.1 Introduction

The historical context of poverty in South Africa is a complex tapestry woven from colonial exploitation, systemic racial discrimination, and socio-economic policies that have perpetuated inequality over centuries (Bundy, 1979: 29; Terreblanche, 2002: 14). Understanding this historical backdrop is crucial for comprehending the current landscape of poverty and the challenges faced in addressing it (Bhorat & Kanbur, 2006: 1; Seekings & Nattrass, 2005: 2).

This section examines the evolution of poverty through three distinct periods: pre-apartheid, apartheid, and post-apartheid. Each era has contributed significantly to the current socio-economic landscape, creating layers of disadvantage that continue to shape poverty patterns in contemporary South Africa (Worden, 2011: 3; Marais, 2011: 7).

The pre-apartheid era laid the foundation for economic disparity through colonial practices of land dispossession and the marginalisation of Indigenous populations (Keegan, 1996: 284; Plaatje, 1916: 21). The discovery of minerals in the late 19th century further entrenched these inequalities as the mining industry relied heavily on cheap, migrant labour, disrupting traditional social structures and exacerbating rural poverty (Wolpe, 1972: 425; Feinstein, 2005: 109).

The apartheid regime (1948-1994) systematically enforced and expanded these inequalities through racially discriminatory policies, creating enduring patterns of spatial and economic segregation (Posel, 1991: 1; Louw, 2004: 27). Implementing the Group Areas Act and the creation of 'homelands' resulted in forced removals and the concentration of poverty in specific geographical areas (Platzky & Walker, 1985: 10; Beinart, 2001: 203).

Despite expectations of rapid transformation, the post-apartheid period has struggled to dismantle these entrenched inequalities, with poverty remaining a pervasive issue (Seekings & Nattrass, 2015: 115; Marais, 2011: 194). While significant policy interventions have been aimed at poverty alleviation, progress has been uneven, and some argue that neoliberal economic policies have perpetuated certain aspects of inequality (Bond, 2000: 39; Habib & Padayachee, 2000: 245).

This historical analysis is essential for several reasons. First, it underscores the deep-rooted nature of poverty in South Africa, highlighting why quick-fix solutions have proven inadequate (Wilson & Ramphela, 1989: 4; May 2000: 2). Second, it provides context for understanding the country's persistent spatial and racial dimensions of poverty (Noble et al., 2014: 2; Leibbrandt et al., 2010: 9).

The subsequent subsections will explore in greater depth how these historical forces have shaped the economic landscape, social structures, and policy approaches to poverty alleviation. This analysis will provide a

critical foundation for understanding the complexities faced by various stakeholders, including policymakers and social institutions, in addressing poverty in South Africa (Swartz et al., 2012: 29; Seekings, 2007: 1).

2.2.2 Pre-apartheid Era

2.2.2.1 Early Colonial Era in South Africa (1652 – 1867)

The early colonial period in South Africa established foundational structures of systemic poverty through racialised economic practices and the dispossession of indigenous peoples (Elphick & Giliomee, 1989: 3; Worden, 2011: 10). This era, spanning from the establishment of a refreshment station by the Dutch East India Company at the Cape in 1652 to the discovery of diamonds in 1867, was characterised by slavery, land expropriation, and the creation of a racially stratified society (Ross, 1999: 23; Keegan, 1996: 16).

The introduction of slavery in 1658 was pivotal in entrenching racial hierarchies and economic exploitation (Shell, 1994: 6). By 1795, enslaved people accounted for 25,754 of the Cape Colony's population of 61,947, representing 41.6% of the total population (Armstrong & Worden, 1989: 109). This reliance on forced labour created a racialised underclass. It stunted the development of a wage labour market, contributing to enduring patterns of poverty and inequality (Worden, 1985: 31). The slave economy at the Cape was marked by high mortality rates and frequent resistance, as documented by Worden (1985: 117-120) in his analysis of slave revolts and rebellions.

Land dispossession was another critical factor in the creation of structural poverty during this period (Bundy, 1979: 29). By 1778, Dutch colonists had claimed approximately 100,000 square kilometres of land, roughly equivalent to present-day South Korea (Guelke, 1989: 66). This large-scale land alienation not only deprived African communities of their means of subsistence but also compelled them into wage labour under unfavourable conditions, laying the groundwork for entrenched poverty (Keegan, 1996: 16). The process of land dispossession was often violent

and disrupted indigenous social and economic systems. As Peires (1981: 56) argues, the frontier wars in the Eastern Cape were driven by economic control as much as territorial expansion.

The emergence of the Afrikaner community during this period significantly shaped South Africa's socio-economic landscape (Giliomee, 2003: 41). By 1795, approximately 15,000 free burghers ('vry burghers'), mostly Afrikaners, resided in the Cape Colony, compared to about 20,000 Khoikhoi and 25,000 enslaved people (Elphick & Giliomee, 1989: 522). Their economic practices, particularly their reliance on slave labour and, later, indentured Indigenous labourers, had a profound impact on reinforcing racialised economic structures (Ross, 1993: 32).

The concept of 'poor whites'⁸ began to emerge during this period, complicating simplistic notions of racial privilege. Newton-King (1999: 124-126) provides evidence of impoverished white settlers on the eastern frontier, highlighting the complex intersections of race and class in colonial society. This complexity would later contribute to developing Afrikaner nationalism and its economic policies (Giliomee, 2003: 315).

The Great Trek (1835-1846) further dispossessed indigenous lands and subjugated African communities. Approximately 12,000 to 14,000 Voortrekkers participated in this migration (Thompson, 2001: 87-88), leading to the establishment of Boer republics that implemented policies of racial segregation and economic exclusion. In the Transvaal, the 1858 constitution explicitly denied equality between "white people and the native race" (Etherington, 2001: 243). Giliomee (2003: 161) argues that the Great Trek should be understood as a migration and a form of

⁸This study adopts the racial terminology as defined by Seekings and Nattrass (2005: ix). "African" refers to those classified as 'native,' *Bantu*, or 'black' under apartheid. 'White' denotes those classified as European or white. 'Indian' refers to people from the Indian subcontinent, sometimes classified as 'Asiatic.' 'Coloured' designates those who didn't fit other categories, including descendants of the Khoi and San, 'Malay' slaves, and mixed-race individuals. 'Black' is used collectively for African, coloured, and Indian people. The use of these terms acknowledges their historical context and does not endorse the racial classifications of the apartheid era."

colonisation that reshaped the interior's economic and political landscape, significantly impacting indigenous lands and African communities.

The British takeover of the Cape in 1806 significantly altered the colony's economic structure (Keegan, 1996: 35). The abolition of the slave trade in 1807 and emancipation in 1834 shifted the economy towards wage labour but were formerly enslaved, and Indigenous people continued to face economic marginalisation (Worden, 1994: 74). When slavery was abolished in the Cape Colony in 1834, approximately 39,021 enslaved people were freed (Worden, 1994: 75). However, the four-year apprenticeship period and lack of land redistribution meant many formerly enslaved people remained economically dependent (Dooling, 2007: 98).

The transition from slavery to wage labour in the Eastern Cape was marked by continued exploitation and racial discrimination, with formerly enslaved people often trapped in cycles of debt and poverty. This transition period laid the groundwork for future labour practices in South Africa's industrialising economy (Keegan, 1996: 99). The introduction of liberal economic policies under British rule had contradictory effects. Promoting economic growth in some sectors also led to increased inequality (Ross, 1999: 34). Trapido (1980: 341) argues that the alliance between Cape merchants and the British colonial government created a "merchant capital" form that exacerbated economic disparities and further marginalised indigenous communities.

It is crucial to recognise the economic stratification within Afrikaner society itself. By the 1850s, 30% of Afrikaners in the Cape Colony were landless 'bywoners' (Giliomee, 2003: 184). This internal economic divide would later contribute to the "poor white problem" in the early 20th century. The experiences of poor Afrikaners challenge simplistic narratives of white privilege in colonial South Africa and highlight the complexity of racial and class dynamics (Bottomley, 2012: 14).

African communities were not passive victims during this period. There were instances of resistance and adaptation, including the emergence of an African peasantry in some areas (Bundy, 1979: 65). For example, African crop production in the Eastern Cape increased significantly in the mid-19th century, with maize exports from the region rising from 5,000 bags in 1856 to 115,000 bags in 1859 (Bundy, 1979: 67). However, these efforts were increasingly undermined by colonial policies and economic pressures. Beinart's (1982: 15-18) study of the Mpondo chiefdom, which maintained economic independence well into the 19th century through strategic engagement with colonial markets, showed African communities' resilience and adaptability in colonial encroachment.

By the end of this period, the stage was set for the entrenched poverty and inequality that would characterise South Africa for generations. The 1865 census in the Cape Colony revealed stark disparities: while the white population owned 95% of the land, they constituted only 21.4% of the total population (Worden, 2011: 40). These figures underscore the profound economic imbalances established during the early colonial era, which would form the foundation for future patterns of poverty and inequality in South Africa.

The early colonial period in South Africa was characterised by a complex interplay of racial, economic, and social factors that laid the groundwork for long-term structural poverty and inequality (Terreblanche, 2002: 6). While it's tempting to view this period through a simple binary of white oppressors and black victims, the reality was far more nuanced (Beinart, 1994: 4). The experiences of poor whites, the emergence of an African peasantry, and the complex dynamics of frontier societies all point to a more complicated picture.

However, despite these complexities, the overall trajectory of this period was one of increasing racial stratification and economic disparity (Worden, 2011: 74). The policies and practices implemented during this time—from slavery to land dispossession to discriminatory labour laws—created a framework of institutionalised inequality that would prove remarkably

resilient in the face of future attempts at reform (Terreblanche, 2002: 14). Moreover, the ideological justifications for these practices, rooted in notions of racial superiority and the 'civilising mission,' would have long-lasting effects on South African society (Keegan, 1996: 284). They shaped economic structures and influenced social relations and political ideologies well into the 20th century.

Understanding this period is crucial for grappling with contemporary issues of poverty and inequality in South Africa (Bhorat & Kanbur, 2006: 1). Many of the challenges facing the country today—from land reform to labour relations to social cohesion—have their roots in the economic and social structures established during this early colonial period (Seekings & Nattrass, 2005: 2). Therefore, any attempt to address these issues must be grounded in a nuanced understanding of this historical context.

2.2.2.2 Mineral Revolution and Industrialisation (1867 – 1910)

The discovery of diamonds in Kimberley in 1867 and gold on the Witwatersrand in 1886 marked the beginning of the Mineral Revolution, which profoundly transformed South Africa's economic and social landscape (Worden, 2011: 38). This era signified a pivotal shift from an agrarian-based economy to one centred on mineral extraction and industrial development, fundamentally altering patterns of poverty and wealth distribution (Feinstein, 2005: 100).

The scale of mineral discoveries was staggering. By 1887, the Kimberley mines had produced 14.5 million carats of diamonds, valued at £24.5 million (Worger, 1987: 15). Similarly, gold production on the Witwatersrand grew exponentially, from 8,000 ounces in 1886 to over 3 million ounces by 1898 (Webb, 1981: 19). This mineral wealth catalysed rapid economic growth, with South Africa's GDP expanding at an average annual rate of 4.5% between 1870 and 1909 (Feinstein, 2005: 102).

The rapid growth of the mining industry catalysed widespread industrialisation and urbanisation. Beinart (2001: 30) notes that mineral

discoveries revolutionised transportation by developing railway networks, energising agriculture and facilitating labour movement. This infrastructural development, while boosting economic growth, also facilitated the expansion of capitalist production relations into rural areas, disrupting traditional economies and social structures. Meredith (2007: 318) argues that this "mineral-railway revolution" was central to South Africa's integration into the global capitalist economy and the creation of new forms of economic inequality.

The railway network expanded dramatically, from just 70 km of track in 1860 to over 10,000 km by 1910 (Beinart, 2001: 31). This expansion facilitated mineral exports. It opened new areas for white settlement and commercial agriculture, often at the expense of African land rights. The encroachment on African lands for white agricultural expansion further marginalised indigenous populations, intensifying poverty and socio-economic inequality (Bundy, 1979: 110).

The mining industry's demand for cheap, unskilled labour led to establishing a migrant labour system with far-reaching consequences for poverty in South Africa. Jeeves and Crush (1995: 4) argue that this system formed the foundation of the entire mining industry. By 1899, there were approximately 100,000 African miners on the Witwatersrand, most of whom were migrants (van der Horst, 1942: 145). The compound system, which housed migrant workers, not only facilitated labour control but also entrenched racial segregation and economic exploitation. Moodie (1994: 78-80) provides a detailed analysis of how the compound system maximised labour productivity while minimising costs, effectively subsidising the mining industry's profits by exploiting African workers.

The impact of this labour system on rural poverty was significant. As men left their homes for extended periods, rural economies were deprived of labour, leading to the deterioration of agricultural productivity. Beinart (1982: 5) observes that the reserves increasingly functioned as suppliers of migrant labour to the 'white' economy while providing subsistence, or

part-subsistence, to the families of the migrants. This dynamic created a cycle of rural impoverishment and increased dependence on wage labour. Wolpe (1972: 432) famously argued that this 'cheap labour power' system was essential to developing capitalism in South Africa, allowing for the super-exploitation of African workers.

The scale of this labour migration was immense. By 1904, over 60% of adult African men in the Transkei were absent as migrant workers (Beinart, 1982: 3). This profoundly affected rural economies and social structures. For instance, in some areas of the Eastern Cape, agricultural production declined by up to 50% between 1875 and 1903 due to labour shortages (Bundy, 1979: 111).

The Mineral Revolution also intensified existing tensions between Afrikaners and English-speaking whites. Marks and Trapido (1979: 52) highlight how mineral discoveries revolutionised white politics. The influx of uitlanders (foreigners), primarily English-speaking, into the Boer republics, notably the Transvaal, created political and cultural friction. By 1890, there were approximately 25,000 uitlanders on the Witwatersrand, compared to only 30,000 Boers in the entire Transvaal (Thompson, 2001: 115). The Afrikaners, fearing the loss of their political autonomy and cultural identity, implemented policies to restrict uitlander political rights, leading to increased British imperial interference.

These tensions, exacerbated by economic interests and imperial ambitions, ultimately culminated in the South African War (1899-1902). The enormous wealth generated by the gold mines made the Transvaal a coveted prize for British imperialists. Meredith (2007: 456) argues that the war was fundamentally about control over the gold mining industry and its profits, highlighting the central role of mineral wealth in shaping South Africa's political landscape. By 1899, the Transvaal produced 27% of the world's gold output (Feinstein, 2005: 104).

The war had devastating economic consequences, particularly for rural Africans and Boers. Approximately 26,000 Afrikaner women and children died in British concentration camps due to disease and malnutrition (Giliomee, 2003: 255). The "scorched earth" policy destroyed Boer farms and livestock, leading to widespread poverty among the Afrikaner population. Approximately 30,000 Boer farms were burned, and 3.5 million sheep were killed (Nasson, 1999: 223). African communities also suffered significant losses, as their land and resources were plundered, and many were forcibly conscripted into labour for the British forces. Warwick (1983: 4-5) emphasises that African experiences of the war were diverse and complex, with some communities seeing opportunities for resistance against colonial rule while others suffered severe economic dislocation.

The effects of the war were far-reaching, exacerbating poverty among Afrikaners and Africans. For Afrikaners, the destruction of farms and livestock led to economic ruin, forcing many into urban areas in search of work, where they faced competition with black workers for low-paying jobs. The war's aftermath deepened socio-economic divisions and intensified the "poor white problem," with an estimated 100,000 to 150,000 "poor whites" by 1910 (Giliomee, 2003: 323).

The Treaty of Vereeniging, signed in 1902, marked the end of the war and the annexation of the Boer republics by the British Empire. In the post-war period, the reconstruction policies implemented by the British, particularly those of Alfred Milner, aimed at modernising the economy but also entrenched racial segregation. Marks and Trapido (1979: 61) argue that Milner's reconstruction represented the first coherent attempt to create a unified state in South Africa where the interests of mining capital would be paramount. These policies laid the groundwork for the system of racial segregation that would be formalised under apartheid.

The war also worsened poverty among African communities, as many were displaced from their land and subjected to forced labour. African economic structures were further undermined, and poverty was

exacerbated by discriminatory policies and practices restricting access to resources and financial opportunities. The disruption of traditional economies and social structures contributed to long-term impoverishment and dependency on the white-controlled economy (Beinart, 2001: 75).

The Mineral Revolution and subsequent industrialisation thus played a crucial role in shaping patterns of poverty in South Africa. While they stimulated economic growth and development, they also created and entrenched new forms of financial exploitation and racial inequality. The migrant labour system, urban poverty, racial and economic stratification, and the disruption of rural economies all contributed to a complex landscape of poverty that would persist well into the 20th century and beyond.

Critically, the economic structures established during this period created an "enclave" development, where mineral wealth and industrialisation benefits were unevenly distributed along racial lines. Terreblanche (2002: 239) argues that this development pattern laid the foundations for South Africa's enduring problems of inequality and underdevelopment. The concentration of capital in the hands of a minor, predominantly white elite, coupled with the systematic exclusion of the majority of the population from economic opportunities, created a deeply unequal society that would prove resistant to change. By 1910, whites, who constituted less than 20% of the population, owned 87% of the land (Feinstein, 2005: 43).

Moreover, the Mineral Revolution profoundly affected gender relations and women's economic status. Walker (1990: 168) highlights how the migrant labour system disrupted traditional family structures, often leaving women in rural areas to bear the burden of agricultural production and child-rearing. This gendered dimension of poverty, frequently overlooked in broader economic analyses, played a significant role in shaping patterns of inequality and underdevelopment in rural areas. For example, by 1936, in some areas of the Transkei, up to 50% of households were effectively headed by women due to male absence (Beinart, 1982: 104).

The period of the Mineral Revolution and Industrialisation (1867-1910) was pivotal in shaping the economic and social structures that would define South Africa for generations to come. While it brought unprecedented economic growth and development, it also sowed the seeds of deep-seated inequality and poverty that continue to challenge the country today. Understanding this period is crucial for comprehending the historical roots of contemporary poverty in South Africa and the challenges faced in addressing it (Worden, 2011: 45; Bhorat and Kanbur, 2006: 3).

2.2.2.3 Union of South Africa and Segregation (1910 – 1948)

The formation of the Union of South Africa in 1910 marked a critical yet deeply problematic juncture in the country's history. While it consolidated British imperial interests and Afrikaner political aspirations, it simultaneously marginalised the African majority, setting the stage for decades of institutionalised inequality (Thompson, 2001: 153; Worden, 2011: 85). This political restructuring, with its intensified racial segregation and economic exploitation, profoundly shaped patterns of poverty and inequality for generations to come, leaving a lasting and damaging impact on the country's social fabric (Beinart, 2001: 78; Terreblanche, 2002: 239). The Union of South Africa, far from being a unifying force, perpetuated and exacerbated these inequalities, underscoring the urgent need for redress that continues today (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 55; Marais, 2011: 8).

In the immediate post-Union period, South Africa witnessed the implementation of early segregationist legislation that would form the foundation of the later, more comprehensive apartheid policies. One of the first significant laws was the Mines and Works Act of 1911, which institutionalised the colour bar that reserved skilled jobs for whites and restricted Africans to unskilled labour positions (Feinstein, 2005: 74). This act was instrumental in cementing racial hierarchies within the workplace, reinforcing economic disparities that would persist for decades.

According to Feinstein (2005: 75), the act resulted in a wage ratio of 11:1 between white and African miners by 1911, highlighting the systemic racism embedded in the legislation. Wilson (1972: 73) further illustrates this inequality, noting that by 1918, white miners earned an average of £20 per month, while African miners earned only £3. Such disparities underscored the exploitative nature of the labour market during this period (Johnstone, 1976: 54; Lipton, 1986: 119).

Another pivotal piece of legislation was the Natives Land Act of 1913, which severely limited African land ownership to designated 'native reserves,' constituting only 7% of the country's land. This was later increased to a still inadequate 13% under the 1936 Native Trust and Land Act (Beinart and Delius, 2014: 668). The act had devastating consequences for the African population, effectively dispossessing millions of their ancestral lands and confining them to overcrowded and impoverished reserves. By 1936, over 50% of the African population was forced into these reserves, which could only support 30% of the population (Bundy, 1979: 242). Plaatje (1916: 21 – 23) estimates that between 1913 and 1936, approximately 3.5 million Africans were directly affected by land dispossession and forced removals, highlighting the extensive scale of this state-sanctioned injustice.

The Boer Rebellion of 1914, also known as the Maritz Rebellion, was sparked by deep-seated resentment among certain Afrikaner factions towards British rule and South Africa's decision to join World War I on the side of the Allies against Germany (Giliomee, 2003: 380). Many Afrikaners felt a lingering bitterness from the Anglo-Boer War and perceived British imperialism as a continuing threat to their culture and autonomy. Approximately 11,000 Afrikaner rebels, including former Boer generals, participated in the rebellion, which the Union government ultimately suppressed (Davenport and Saunders, 2000: 283).

The rebellion underscored the complexities of South Africa's racial and political landscape. It contributed to the growing political mobilisation of Afrikaners, with National Party membership increasing from 30,000 in 1915 to 120,000 by 1920 (O'Meara, 1983: 34). This surge in Afrikaner nationalism foreshadowed the exclusionary policies that would later dominate South African politics (Moodie, 1975: 76; Giliomee, 2003: 382). World War I brought significant economic changes to South Africa, accelerating industrialisation and urbanisation while exacerbating racial and class tensions. Feinstein (2005: 113) notes that manufacturing output increased by 50% between 1915 and 1920, benefiting white workers and capitalists while further marginalising the African workforce.

The average annual income of white workers rose to £264 by 1917, compared to just £34 for African workers (Wilson, 1972: 103), highlighting the glaring economic disparities that persisted. Bozzoli (1981: 42) adds that the number of Africans employed in manufacturing nearly doubled from 35,000 in 1915 to 68,000 in 1920. Yet, they remained confined to unskilled positions, further entrenching racial and economic disparities and perpetuating a cycle of poverty and disadvantage.

The 1922 Rand Rebellion, also known as the mine workers' strike, exemplified the complex interplay of class and race in South Africa's socio-economic landscape (Krikler, 2005: 1). Primarily involving white mine workers, the strike was triggered by plans to cut wages and replace white workers with cheaper African labour to reduce mining costs. The white miners, fearing job losses and reduced wages, revolted, and the strike escalated into a violent rebellion. The rebellion manifested economic grievances and racial animosities as white workers sought to protect their privileged position within the labour market (Yudelman, 1983: 124).

The South African government's response was harsh, with martial law declared and the military deployed to suppress the uprising, resulting in the deaths of over 200 people (Krikler, 2005: 267). In the aftermath, the government reinforced the colour bar through the Industrial Conciliation

Act of 1924, formalising racial discrimination in the workplace by reserving specific jobs for white workers (Davies, 1979: 167).

The 'poor white problem' emerged as a significant concern during this period, highlighting the complexities of race and class in South African society. The Carnegie Commission of Inquiry into the Poor White Question in South Africa, published in 1932, reported that approximately 300,000 whites (about 17% of the white population) were living in poverty (Seekings, 2008: 520). While this was indeed a social issue worthy of attention, the state's response revealed its deeply ingrained racial biases. Seekings (2008: 522) notes that the Commission's findings led to a 30% increase in state welfare spending for whites between 1932 and 1939, while African welfare was neglected mainly, a clear indication of the government's prioritisation of white interests at the expense of the African majority. The Commission's recommendations, including job reservation policies and improved education for whites, would have far-reaching consequences for South Africa's economic and social policies, further entrenching racial inequalities (Dubow, 2014: 18).

The Carnegie Commission's report highlighted the dire economic and social conditions poor whites faced, stressing the need for state intervention. According to Willoughby-Herard (2007: 482), the Commission identified poor education, inadequate housing, and low wages as critical factors contributing to white poverty. The state's response, however, was tellingly biased. Instead of addressing poverty as a national issue affecting all races, it implemented job reservation policies, reserving certain skilled occupations for whites and further entrenching racial inequalities in the labour market (Seekings, 2008: 525). This approach not only failed to address the root causes of poverty but also exacerbated racial tensions and economic disparities (Beinart, 2001: 120). Between 1910 and 1948, South Africa witnessed a significant rise in Afrikaner economic and political power, marked by concerted efforts to address the 'poor white problem' and assert Afrikaner interests within the Union. While this upliftment of the Afrikaner community might be seen as

positive from their perspective, it came at the cost of further marginalising the African majority.

By 1948, Afrikaner-controlled companies accounted for 11% of the total market capitalisation on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange, a significant leap from just 1% in 1917 (O'Meara, 1983: 132). Giliomee (2003: 439) notes that between 1938 and 1948, the number of Afrikaners in white-collar occupations increased by 74%, reflecting the growing economic empowerment of the Afrikaner community. However, this economic ascendancy was built on a foundation of racial exclusion and exploitation, perpetuating a system of inequality that would haunt South Africa for decades to come (Terreblanche, 2002: 299).

Simultaneously, African political organisations and resistance movements emerged and grew, demonstrating the resilience and determination of the oppressed majority. The formation of the South African Native National Congress (later renamed the African National Congress) in 1912 marked a significant milestone in the struggle against racial oppression (Lodge, 1983: 1). The ANC's membership grew from approximately 4,000 in 1920 to over 25,000 by 1945, indicating a growing consciousness and mobilisation among the African population (Walshe, 1987: 200). Feit (1975: 57) argues that African trade union membership increased tenfold between 1930 and 1945, from approximately 10,000 to 100,000, indicating growing worker mobilisation. Despite facing severe repression, these movements laid the groundwork for the long struggle against apartheid that would follow (Beinart, 2001: 103).

The Industrial and Commercial Workers Union (ICU) became a significant force for African worker mobilisation in the 1920s. The union's membership peaked at around 100,000 in 1927, making it the most prominent black organisation in African history up to that point (Bradford, 1987: 1). However, Wickins (1978: 145) and Bradford (1987: 2) note that by 1930, internal conflicts and state repression had reduced ICU

membership to less than 20,000, highlighting the challenges faced by African labour movements in the face of a hostile state apparatus.

Women also played a significant role in resistance movements, challenging racial and gender oppression. The Bantu Women's League, a precursor to the ANC Women's League, was founded in 1918 and campaigned against passing laws and other discriminatory practices affecting African women (Walker, 1991: 33). Their activism demonstrated the intersection of gender and racial oppression, galvanising broader support for the anti-apartheid struggle and highlighting the multifaceted nature of oppression in South African society (Gasa, 2007: 129).

The failure to address the fundamental inequalities created by segregation policies during this period would have lasting and devastating consequences for patterns of poverty and inequality in South Africa. By 1970, the Gini coefficient had reached 0.63, one of the highest in the world, a stark indicator of the extreme disparities entrenched through decades of discriminatory policies (Wilson and Ramphela, 1989: 18). Terreblanche and Nattrass (1990: 8) estimate that by 1948, the per capita income of whites was approximately 11 times that of Africans, a disparity that would continue to widen under apartheid. This extreme economic inequality, rooted in the policies of this period, continues to plague South African society, undermining efforts at social cohesion and economic development (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 6).

The period between 1910 and 1948 laid the foundations for the apartheid system that would follow, creating a deeply divided and unequal society. Terreblanche and Nattrass (1990: 6) argue that by 1948, South Africa had already developed into a 'Janus-faced' society, with a relatively prosperous white minority existing alongside an impoverished black majority. This dual economy, they contend, was not merely a result of market forces but of deliberate state policy designed to benefit the white minority at the expense of the African majority (Wolpe, 1972: 432; Lipton, 1986: 2).

The systematic entrenchment of racial segregation and economic exploitation characterised the period from 1910 to 1948 in South African history. The policies and practices established during this time laid the groundwork for the apartheid system, creating deep-seated inequalities that continue to challenge South African society today (Beinart, 2001: 130; Worden, 2011: 95). The Union of South Africa, far from being a unifying force, served to consolidate white power and further marginalise the African majority (Thompson, 2001: 160). The various legislative acts passed during this period, from the Mines and Works Act to the Natives Land Act, systematically stripped Africans of their rights and economic opportunities (Feinstein, 2005: 153). The state's response to the 'poor white problem', contrasted with its neglect of African poverty, highlights the deeply entrenched racial biases in governance (Seekings, 2008: 527).

While this period saw the rise of Afrikaner economic and political power, it came at the cost of further oppressing the African majority (O'Meara, 1983: 255). The growth of African political organisations and resistance movements during this time demonstrates the resilience and determination of the oppressed majority in the face of increasing repression (Lodge, 1983: 10; Walshe, 1987: 300).

2.2.3 Apartheid Era (1948 – 1994)

2.2.3.1 Introduction

The Apartheid era in South Africa, spanning from 1948 to 1994, marks a significant and transformative period characterised by institutionalised racial segregation and discrimination (Thompson, 2014: 187; Clark and Worger, 2016: 48). The Apartheid regime, implemented by the National Party, aimed to maintain white supremacy and control over the socio-economic and political spheres of the country, profoundly impacting the lives of millions of South Africans (Beinart and Dubow, 1995: 3; Maylam, 2001: 182).

This period saw the rise of Afrikaner nationalism, which played a crucial role in shaping the political landscape and justifying the following oppressive policies (O'Meara, 1996: 78; Giliomee, 2003: 447). The National Party's policies of racial separation and economic disenfranchisement created a dual economy, systematically marginalised black South Africans, and entrenched deep-rooted inequalities that continue to affect the nation's socio-economic fabric (Terreblanche, 2002: 371; Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 16).

Understanding the Apartheid era's historical context, policies, and impacts is essential for comprehensively analysing South Africa's current socio-economic challenges and the ongoing struggle for equality and justice (Marais, 2011: 7; Worden, 2011: 137).

2.2.3.1 Rise of Afrikaner Nationalism and the National Party

The rise of Afrikaner nationalism in the early 20th century was driven by socio-economic challenges and a burgeoning cultural revival that fostered a distinct sense of identity and purpose among Afrikaners (Giliomee, 2003: 355; O'Meara, 1983: 71). Central to this movement was the "poor white problem," which highlighted the socio-economic plight of many Afrikaners in the aftermath of the Anglo-Boer War (Morrell, 1992: 6; Bottomley, 2012: 73). This problem became a critical issue for Afrikaner leaders, as it threatened the cohesion and identity of the Afrikaner community, prompting calls for economic and social reform (Dubow, 1992: 209; Giliomee, 2003: 357).

The 'poor white problem' led to establishing various institutions to uplift the Afrikaner community economically and socially. The Afrikaner Broederbond, a secretive and influential organisation, was pivotal in promoting Afrikaner unity and advancing a nationalist agenda to address socio-economic disparities through state intervention and policy reform (O'Meara, 1977: 164; Giliomee, 2003: 421). Alongside this, a cultural revival emphasised the uniqueness of Afrikaner heritage and language,

further solidifying Afrikaner identity (Hofmeyr, 1987: 95; Giliomee, 2003: 369).

Economic mobilisation was a crucial aspect of Afrikaner nationalism, forming key institutions such as the *Reddingsdaadbond* (RDB) and the *Federale Volksbelegging* (FVB). Established in 1939, the RDB aimed to address poverty among Afrikaners by fostering economic self-reliance through initiatives that encouraged savings and investments within the Afrikaner community (O'Meara, 1983: 138; Giliomee, 2003: 438). The *Federale Volksbelegging*, founded in 1953, was instrumental in mobilising Afrikaner capital for investment in Afrikaner-owned businesses, thereby strengthening the economic position of Afrikaners in critical sectors of the economy (O'Meara, 1983: 203; Verhoef, 2008: 698).

These initiatives were vital in creating a financial foundation that supported the political aspirations of the Afrikaner nationalist movement. The ascent of the National Party to power in 1948 marked a significant turning point in South Africa's political landscape. The party capitalised on Afrikaner nationalist sentiments to secure electoral victory, presenting itself as the defender of Afrikaner interests and promising to elevate the status of Afrikaners within South African society (Giliomee, 2003: 487; Maylam, 2001: 179). The National Party's platform was rooted in the ideology of apartheid, which sought to institutionalise racial segregation and ensure the socio-economic dominance of the white minority (Posel, 1991: 50; Clark and Worger, 2016: 35). The party's success was underpinned by its ability to appeal to Afrikaner identity and interests, addressing the "poor white problem" and harnessing the institutions and networks established by Afrikaner nationalists, such as the Broederbond and the FVB, to consolidate its support base and implement apartheid policies (O'Meara, 1996: 41; Giliomee, 2003: 489).

2.2.3.2 Implementation and Intensification of Apartheid Policies

The implementation and intensification of apartheid policies from 1948 onwards marked a critical phase in South Africa's history. This period saw the introduction of vital legislative measures designed to institutionalise racial division and uphold Afrikaner dominance across all facets of South African life (Posel, 1991: 1; Beinart and Dubow, 1995: 10).

One of the central pillars of apartheid policy was the Population Registration Act of 1950, which established a national registry classifying individuals by race. This act provided the legal framework for racial classification, underpinning all subsequent apartheid legislation (Posel, 2001: 51; Bowker and Star, 1999: 195). Racial classifications' arbitrary and pseudo-scientific nature was a source of considerable injustice and social disruption, leading to family separations and community disintegration (Posel, 2001: 62; Bowker and Star, 1999: 198).

The Group Areas Act of 1950 was another cornerstone of apartheid legislation, enforcing spatial segregation by designating specific areas for occupation by different racial groups. This act led to the forced removal of millions of non-white South Africans from their homes, resulting in the destruction of communities and the disruption of social networks (Western, 1981: 69; Surplus People Project, 1985: 5). The economic and social costs of these removals were immense, as they uprooted individuals from sources of employment and economic opportunity, further entrenching poverty and inequality (Platzky and Walker, 1985: 10; Desmond, 1971: 37).

Education was a key focus for apartheid policymakers, as demonstrated by the Bantu Education Act of 1953. This legislation aimed to control and limit the education of black South Africans, ensuring they received an inferior education designed to prepare them for a life of servitude and manual labour (Christie and Collins, 1982: 59; Kallaway, 1984: 89). The deliberate underfunding of black education resulted in significant disparities in educational quality and access, contributing to the persistent

skills gap and economic inequality that continue to affect South Africa today (Fiske and Ladd, 2004: 52; Spaull, 2013: 5).

The ideological justifications for apartheid policies were deeply rooted in Afrikaner nationalism, which sought to preserve Afrikaner cultural identity and maintain white supremacy in South Africa. This ideology was articulated through a narrative of racial superiority and the perceived need to protect white South Africans from the perceived threat posed by the black majority (Moodie, 1975: 247; Dubow, 2014: 15). Afrikaner economic institutions, such as the *Reddingsdaadbond* and *Federale Volksbelegging*, played a crucial role in supporting these policies by promoting economic self-sufficiency and empowerment among Afrikaners (O'Meara, 1983: 138; Verhoef, 2008: 698). These institutions helped consolidate Afrikaner economic power and provided a financial foundation for the apartheid state, reinforcing the socio-economic barriers that separated racial groups.

The impact of apartheid policies on racial segregation and economic opportunities was profound and far-reaching. By institutionalising racial discrimination, apartheid created a rigid hierarchy that allocated resources and opportunities based on race, with devastating consequences for non-white South Africans (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 18; Terreblanche, 2002: 371). This system entrenched poverty and inequality and stifled economic growth by denying the majority of the population access to education, employment, and entrepreneurial opportunities (Feinstein, 2005: 159; Nattrass and Seekings, 2011: 547).

2.2.3.3 Economic Impact of Apartheid

The economic impact of apartheid in South Africa was profound and multifaceted, manifesting through labour market distortions, unequal investment in education, the creation and reinforcement of a dual economy, and differential impacts on racial groups (Feinstein, 2005: 159; Terreblanche, 2002: 371). This section critically examines these aspects to understand how apartheid policies entrenched poverty and inequality.

The apartheid regime instituted labour market distortions through job reservation and the colour bar, which were central to maintaining white economic dominance. The Mines and Works Act of 1911, amended in 1926, established a colour bar that reserved skilled jobs for white workers, effectively barring black South Africans from higher-paying occupations (Lipton, 1986: 18; Trapido, 1971: 311). This legislation entrenched racial hierarchies in the labour market, ensuring that black workers remained in low-wage, unskilled positions. According to Seekings and Nattrass (2005: 88), these policies contributed to a significant wage gap between white and black workers, with white workers earning, on average, eight times more than their black counterparts by the 1970s. The structural unemployment that resulted from these labour market distortions not only limited economic mobility for black South Africans but also reinforced their economic marginalisation.

In conjunction with job reservation policies, apartheid saw a deliberate underinvestment in education and skills development for non-white populations. The Bantu Education Act of 1953 was a cornerstone of this discriminatory policy, aiming to provide an inferior education system for black South Africans that would prepare them only for menial labour (Christie and Collins, 1982: 59; Kallaway, 1984: 89). By 1976, the government spent ten times more on education per white student than on each black student (Marais, 2011: 38). This educational disparity had long-term implications, as it limited the ability of black South Africans to acquire the skills necessary to compete in a modern economy. The inferior education system not only perpetuated the cycle of poverty among black communities but also maintained the racial hierarchy that underpinned apartheid (Fiske and Ladd, 2004: 52).

The apartheid regime also created and reinforced a dual economy characterised by a developed, predominantly white urban sector and an underdeveloped, primarily black rural industry. This dual economy was a direct consequence of policies such as the Group Areas Act of 1950, which forcibly removed black South Africans from urban areas and

restricted them to homelands or townships (Beinart, 2001: 153). These areas were economically marginalised and lacked basic infrastructure, which stifled economic development and entrenched poverty (Surplus People Project, 1985: 5). As Bundy (1979: 242) notes, this spatial segregation ensured that black South Africans were excluded from the economic opportunities available in urban areas, perpetuating a cycle of poverty and underdevelopment.

The economic impact of apartheid was not uniform across racial groups, further exacerbating inequalities. While white South Africans benefitted from preferential access to jobs, education, and economic opportunities, black, coloured, and Indian populations were systematically disadvantaged. According to Seekings and Nattrass (2005: 168) and Lipton (1986: 22), by the late 1980s, the unemployment rate for black South Africans was over 30%, compared to just 5% for whites. This disparity in economic outcomes was a direct result of apartheid policies that favoured whites and marginalised other racial groups.

Furthermore, the economic policies of apartheid had significant social implications, contributing to the fracturing of black family structures and communities. The migrant labour system, which required black men to work in urban areas while leaving their families in rural homelands, disrupted family cohesion and social stability (Ramphele, 1993: 5; Wilson, 1972: 175). This system not only exploited black labour but also entrenched social dislocation and economic dependency, further perpetuating the cycle of poverty.

Understanding these dynamics is crucial for addressing the historical roots of poverty and developing strategies for economic and social transformation in the post-apartheid era.

2.2.3.4 Forced Removals and the Homeland System

The apartheid era in South Africa was marked by the implementation of a draconian system of forced removals and the establishment of Bantustans, or "homelands," which were instrumental in maintaining racial segregation and economic inequality (Platzky and Walker, 1985: 10). These policies led to the large-scale displacement of communities, exacerbated rural poverty, and contributed to urbanisation pressures and socio-economic fragmentation (Beinart, 2001: 153; Desmond, 1971: 37).

One of the most devastating impacts of apartheid was the forced removal of black South Africans from urban areas to designated homelands. The Group Areas Act of 1950, along with the Native Laws Amendment Act of 1952, provided the legal framework for these removals (Mabin, 1992: 419; Unterhalter, 1987: 65). These acts resulted in the forced displacement of approximately 3.5 million people between 1960 and 1983 (Platzky and Walker, 1985: 9; Surplus People Project, 1985: 5). The psychological and socio-economic trauma of these removals cannot be overstated, as families were uprooted from their homes and relocated to often underdeveloped and impoverished areas (Murray, 1987: 311). The forced removals disrupted community networks, severed ties to ancestral lands, and created a legacy of social dislocation that persists today.

The economic implications of the Bantustans were equally severe. Designed to serve as ethnic homelands for black South Africans, these territories were economically nonviable from their inception. Covering only 13% of South Africa's land, the homelands were expected to support nearly half the country's population (Butler et al., 1977: 1; Southall, 1982: 34). The apartheid government envisioned the homelands as self-governing states but lacked the resources and infrastructure necessary for economic development (Beinart, 2001: 212). As a result, the homelands became reservoirs of cheap labour for the South African economy, with millions of black South Africans forced to migrate to urban areas in search of work (Wolpe, 1972: 425). This labour migration perpetuated a cycle of

poverty and dependency, as remittances from migrant workers became a primary source of income for many families (Murray, 1981: 102).

The forced removals and the homeland system also profoundly affected rural poverty and urbanisation. The rural homelands, characterised by high population density and limited arable land, could not sustain their populations, leading to chronic poverty and food insecurity (Wilson and Ramphela, 1989: 204). According to Simkins (1981: 31), the agricultural productivity of the homelands was significantly lower than that of white-owned farms, a disparity that reflected the unequal distribution of resources and support. This rural impoverishment drove many black South Africans to urban areas, where they often settled in informal settlements on the peripheries of cities (Mabin, 1990: 308; Seekings, 1991: 291). By the late 1980s, it was estimated that up to 60% of black urban residents lived in informal housing with inadequate access to services and infrastructure (Seekings, 1991: 292).

The social and economic fragmentation caused by apartheid policies extended beyond the immediate effects of displacement and poverty. The homeland system reinforced ethnic divisions among black South Africans, premised on separate development for different ethnic groups (Maylam, 1995: 27; Posel, 1991: 227). This fragmentation was not only geographic but also cultural and political, as the apartheid regime sought to weaken the opposition by dividing black South Africans along ethnic lines (Mamdani, 1996: 79). The legacy of these divisions persists in contemporary South Africa, where issues of ethnic identity and political representation continue to pose challenges to nation-building and social cohesion.

Critically, the forced removals and the homeland system highlight the fundamentally exploitative nature of apartheid. These policies were not merely about racial segregation but were designed to sustain a system of economic exploitation that privileged white South Africans at the expense of the black majority (Wolpe, 1972: 432). The socio-economic

fragmentation they caused has had lasting implications for South Africa's development, contributing to the deep inequalities that continue to shape the country's social and economic landscape.

2.2.3.5 Migrant Labour System

The migrant labour system was a critical component of the apartheid economy, profoundly impacting the social and economic structure of South Africa. This system was rooted in colonial practices that the apartheid regime intensified, and it was central to the exploitation of black labour. By examining the effects on family structures, rural economies, the exploitation of black workers, and the long-term implications on social and economic development, we can better understand how the migrant labour system reinforced apartheid's oppressive structures.

The migrant labour system had devastating effects on family structures among black South Africans. Under apartheid, men were often forced to leave their homes for extended periods to work in urban areas and mines, while women and children remained in rural homelands. This separation led to a breakdown of traditional family units, contributing to social instability and weakening community bonds (Murray, 1981: 102; Ramphela, 1993: 5). The absence of male figures in households meant that women had to assume roles traditionally held by men, challenging cultural norms and placing additional burdens on women to sustain the family economically and socially (Bozzoli, 1991: 237; Walker, 1990: 168). Moreover, the economic implications for rural areas were significant.

Homelands were deliberately underdeveloped and overcrowded, providing limited opportunities for economic advancement (Southall, 1982: 34; Wilson, 1972: 175). The reliance on remittances from migrant workers created a dependent economy that lacked diversification and resilience. As Wolpe (1972: 425) argues, the system was designed to ensure a steady supply of cheap labour to urban centres while maintaining the economic marginalisation of rural areas. This financial model resulted in a cycle of poverty that persisted across generations, as families relied on

meagre wages from the urban areas and could not invest in agricultural or business ventures in their home regions (Murray, 1981: 102; Simkins, 1981: 31).

The exploitation of black workers under the migrant labour system was systematic and brutal. Black workers were subjected to harsh working conditions, low wages, and limited rights compared to their white counterparts (Crush et al., 1991: 2; Webster, 1985: 7). The contract labour system, which bound workers to specific employers for fixed terms, denied them the opportunity to change jobs or negotiate better conditions (Lipton, 1986: 18). This exploitation was a cornerstone of apartheid's economic policies, ensuring that industries, particularly mining, could operate profitably by minimising labour costs (Crush, 1994: 309).

The discriminatory laws and practices entrenched in the system further reinforced racial hierarchies. Black workers were denied access to skilled positions and opportunities for advancement, reinforcing the apartheid ideology of racial superiority (Crankshaw, 1997: 9). This systematic exclusion from economic opportunities ensured that the benefits of economic growth were unevenly distributed, with white South Africans enjoying the lion's share of prosperity while black South Africans remained economically disenfranchised (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 88).

The long-term effects of the migrant labour system on South Africa's social fabric and economic development are profound. Socially, the system entrenched a legacy of disrupted family structures and weakened community cohesion, which have persisted into the post-apartheid era (Ramphela, 1993: 5). The social consequences of long-term familial separation and the resulting psychological impacts have contributed to ongoing challenges in rebuilding social capital and fostering cohesive communities (Bozzoli, 1991: 237).

Economically, the system reinforced the dual economy characteristic of apartheid South Africa, where a modern, industrialised economy existed

alongside a marginalised, subsistence-based rural economy (Wolpe, 1972: 432). This duality continues to shape economic disparities in the country, as access to opportunities remains unevenly distributed. The legacy of migrant labour has also contributed to the persistence of poverty and inequality, as many black South Africans remain trapped in low-wage, unskilled employment with limited prospects for advancement (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 168).

2.2.3.6 Resistance Movements and Their Impact

The resistance movements against apartheid in South Africa had profound and quantifiable economic consequences that reverberated throughout the country. Widespread protests, strikes, and acts of civil disobedience disrupted critical sectors of the economy, leading to decreased productivity and heightened instability (Nattrass, 1996: 5; Terreblanche, 2002: 326). Industries such as mining and manufacturing, central to South Africa's economy, experienced frequent disruptions due to labour strikes and boycotts, significantly affecting output and profitability (Innes, 1984: 158).

The 1976 Soweto Uprising marked a significant turning point, drawing international attention and sparking further unrest throughout the country (Bonner and Segal, 1998: 35). This event triggered a sharp decline in investor confidence. Lipton (1985: 362) provides specific data on the immediate market reaction, noting that the Johannesburg Stock Exchange fell by 5% in the wake of the uprising. By August of the same year, the market had plummeted 22% from its May level, underscoring the severe economic repercussions of political instability. The financial impact of the uprising was not merely short-term. Padayachee (1991: 88) presents detailed figures showing that between 1985 and 1989, South Africa experienced a net capital outflow of R26 billion. This substantial capital flight can be directly attributed to the growing political unrest and the resultant erosion of investor confidence in the South African economy.

This uprising highlighted the systemic inequalities inherent in the apartheid system. It significantly escalated state security expenditure as the government attempted to quell the unrest (Price, 1991: 130). The economic costs of maintaining control over an increasingly restive population heavily burdened the national budget, limiting the government's ability to invest in other areas and exacerbating the country's economic challenges (Rantete, 1998: 61).

Labour unrest, a vital component of the resistance movement, also had significant and quantifiable economic impacts. Webster (1988: 179-180) provides specific data on the escalation of industrial action, reporting that between 1979 and 1987, the number of workdays lost due to strikes increased dramatically from 86,000 to over 5.8 million. This surge in industrial action not only disrupted production but also signalled the growing power of black workers in challenging the economic foundations of apartheid.

The costs associated with maintaining the apartheid system in the face of growing resistance were substantial and quantifiable. Lowenberg (1997: 62-63) presents a detailed analysis of the economic burden of apartheid, noting that by 1989, defence spending had risen to 4.7% of GDP, a marked increase from 2.4% in 1975. This diversion of resources from productive economic activities to security measures significantly impacted economic growth and development.

The international community played a critical role in the resistance movement through sanctions and disinvestment campaigns, which had substantial and measurable economic impacts. The Comprehensive Anti-Apartheid Act, passed by the US Congress in 1986, was particularly significant. Mangaliso (1997: 228-229) provides specific data on its impact, estimating that this act led to more than 200 U.S. firms withdrawing from South Africa, resulting in a loss of approximately \$1 billion in direct investment.

Levy (1999: 415-417) offers a detailed quantitative analysis of the economic impact of sanctions, estimating that they reduced South Africa's annual GDP growth by 1.5% between 1986 and 1993. This figure represents a significant economic contraction directly attributable to international pressure.

Jones and Müller (1992: 296) provide specific data on capital flight, noting that net foreign capital inflow fell from R5.1 billion in 1982 to -R14.2 billion in 1985. This stark reversal in capital flows illustrates the severe economic consequences of political instability and international sanctions.

Sanctions particularly hard hit the manufacturing sector. Bhorat et al. (2014: 7-9) present detailed sectoral data, showing that manufacturing output growth declined from an average of 3.6% per annum in the 1970s to just 1.2% in the 1980s. They attribute this decline primarily to sanctions, restricting access to technology and export markets.

While less economically disruptive than the broader anti-apartheid movement, the resistance to apartheid from within the Afrikaner community played a crucial role in eroding its ideological foundations. Giliomee (2003: 619-620) provides specific examples of this internal resistance, noting that by the late 1980s, a significant portion of the Afrikaner business community had come to view apartheid as economically unsustainable.

Although less visible than broader national movements, resistance from the Afrikaner community was crucial to the anti-apartheid struggle. While the majority of Afrikaners supported apartheid policies, a growing number began to question the system's ethical and moral foundations. Prominent figures such as Frederik van Zyl Slabbert and Beyers Naudé openly opposed apartheid and advocated for reform and reconciliation (Sparks, 1994: 273). Their efforts helped challenge the prevailing narrative within the Afrikaner community and inspired others to join the resistance movement (O'Meara, 1996: 202).

The Progressive Federal Party (PFP) formation in 1977 marked a significant political shift within the Afrikaner community. The PFP, led by van Zyl Slabbert, sought to promote non-racialism and democratic governance, providing a platform for Afrikaners opposed to apartheid to voice their dissent (Giliomee, 2003: 615). This internal resistance highlighted the growing divisions within the Afrikaner community and underscored the increasing recognition of the need for change (Louw, 2004: 96).

A pivotal moment in this internal resistance came in 1985 when a delegation of prominent Afrikaners met with ANC representatives in Lusaka, Zambia. O'Meara (1996: 368) offers a detailed account of this meeting, arguing that it signalled a growing realisation among some Afrikaners that negotiation and reform were necessary for South Africa's economic survival. The delegation included influential figures such as Wimpie de Klerk, brother of future president F.W. de Klerk, underscoring the high-level nature of this internal dissent.

The resistance movement also found support from progressive elements within Afrikaner churches, particularly the Dutch Reformed Church (DRC) and the *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika* (NHKA). Within the DRC, Beyers Naudé emerged as a prominent figure in the resistance against apartheid. De Gruchy (1979: 102-103) explains Naudé's actions, including founding the Christian Institute in 1963, an ecumenical organisation that opposed apartheid on theological grounds.

Kuperus (1999: 137-138) offers specific details on the DRC's shifting stance on apartheid, noting that in 1986, the DRC General Synod adopted the document "Church and Society," which explicitly rejected the theological justification of apartheid. This marked a significant turning point in the church's official position.

The NHKA's position evolved more slowly. Dreyer (2013a) provides specific dates, noting that it was only in 2010 that the NHKA officially rejected apartheid in principle. However, this late official rejection belies a more extended history of internal resistance and critique within the church.

The earliest signs of opposition to apartheid within the NHKA can be traced back to A. van Selms and A.S. Geyser's critiques of the church's stance on apartheid (Dreyer, 2013a: 1). The resistance initiated by van Selms and Geyser was not an isolated incident but rather the beginning of a tradition of critique within the NHKA. This critical stance was continued and developed by a subsequent generation of theologians, including J.A. Loader, J. Buitendag, and A.G. van Aarde. These scholars maintained and expanded upon the theological arguments against apartheid, creating a continuous thread of resistance within the church despite its official position.

This ongoing internal critique, spanning several decades and generations of theologians, illustrates the complex and evolving nature of the NHKA's engagement with apartheid. While the church's official position remained supportive of apartheid until 2010, a persistent undercurrent of theological opposition played a crucial role in eventually shifting the church's stance.

The experiences of these dissenting voices within the NHKA provide valuable insight into the challenges and complexities of resistance within Afrikaner institutions during the apartheid era. Their stories highlight the personal and professional risks associated with opposing the prevailing ideology and the gradual nature of institutional change.

The combined pressures of internal resistance movements and international sanctions forced significant shifts in domestic economic policies. Terreblanche (2002: 310-312) provides a detailed analysis of the government's initial response, which included increased security spending and attempts to achieve economic self-sufficiency. However, this

approach proved unsustainable and ultimately contributed to the financial crisis of the 1980s.

Nattrass and Ardington (1990: 36) offer specific economic data, noting that by the late 1980s, the costs of maintaining apartheid had become prohibitively high, both in terms of direct expenditure and lost economic opportunities. This financial pressure played a crucial role in forcing policy changes that ultimately contributed to dismantling apartheid.

Posel (1991: 265) provides specific examples of policy shifts, such as the government's gradual relaxation of influx control measures in the 1980s, which can be directly linked to the economic pressures created by resistance movements and sanctions.

2.2.3.7 Apartheid and International Economic Relations

The apartheid era in South Africa was characterised by intense international condemnation and economic isolation (Levy, 1999: 415), primarily resulting from the systemic racial discrimination institutionalised by the South African government (Thompson, 2001: 221). This section explores the multifaceted economic impact of sanctions, the country's isolation from global markets, and the innovative yet often futile attempts by the apartheid regime to circumvent these punitive measures.

The implementation of economic sanctions against South Africa marked a critical turning point in the global response to apartheid. Sanctions were designed to exert financial pressure on the apartheid government, compelling it to dismantle its racially discriminatory policies. The most significant of these measures came from the Comprehensive Anti-Apartheid Act passed by the United States Congress in 1986. This legislation prohibited new investments and loans to South Africa and severely restricted imports and exports (Crawford and Klotz, 1999: 82).

In addition, the United Nations General Assembly adopted Resolution 1761 in 1962, which called for voluntary sanctions against South Africa,

eventually leading to mandatory measures under Security Council Resolution 418 in 1977, banning arms sales to the country (Klotz, 1995: 73). These international sanctions significantly hindered South Africa's economic growth, as they restricted access to global markets, capital, and technology (Lowenberg and Kaempfer, 1998: 178; Jones and Müller, 1992: 298).

Sanctions against South Africa had a profound and quantifiable impact on its economy. One of the most immediate effects was reduced foreign direct investment (FDI) and capital flight. According to Innes (1984: 167), net foreign capital inflow fell dramatically from R5.1 billion in 1982 to a net outflow of R14.2 billion in 1985, illustrating the severe economic consequences of international sanctions. The withdrawal of major multinational corporations, including General Motors, IBM, and Barclays Bank, further exacerbated this capital flight (Rodman, 1994: 315). As a result, South Africa experienced a sharp decline in industrial output and economic growth, with GDP growth rates plummeting from an average of 4.6% per annum in the 1960s to a mere 1.2% in the 1980s (Feinstein, 2005: 224).

The impact of sanctions extended beyond capital flows, severely affecting South Africa's manufacturing sector. As Bell and Madula (2001: 12) and Levy (1999: 419) note, manufacturing output growth declined significantly from an average of 3.6% per annum in the 1970s to just 1.2% in the 1980s. This decline can be attributed to the loss of export markets, reduced access to advanced technologies, and decreased competitiveness on the global stage (Hirsch, 2005: 68). The textile, automotive, and electronics industries were particularly hard hit, leading to widespread job losses and economic stagnation (Padayachee, 1989: 119; Gelb, 1991: 24).

Isolation from global markets further exacerbated South Africa's economic challenges during the apartheid era (Nattrass and Seekings, 2010: 34). The country's exclusion from international trade agreements and financial institutions limited its ability to access essential goods and services,

increasing production costs and reducing the quality of domestic products (Hanlon and Omond, 1987: 210). The imposition of trade embargoes by significant trading partners, including the European Economic Community (EEC) and Commonwealth countries, further restricted South Africa's access to international markets, leading to a decline in exports and a worsening balance of payments crisis (Lipton, 1988: 52; Orkin, 1989: 97). The cumulative effect of these measures was a shrinking economy, rising unemployment, and increasing social unrest (Lundahl, 1992: 287).

In response to this international economic isolation, the apartheid regime undertook various attempts to circumvent sanctions and maintain financial viability. One such strategy was establishing clandestine trade networks and front companies to bypass trade restrictions and continue importing essential goods and technologies (Crawford, 1999: 115). The government also sought to bolster domestic industries through import substitution policies and state-led investment in strategic sectors such as defence, energy, and transportation (Fine and Rustonjee, 1996: 176). However, these efforts often resulted in inefficiencies, corruption, and further economic distortions as state-owned enterprises increasingly relied on government subsidies and protectionism (Gelb, 1991: 26; Dollery, 2003: 4).

Moreover, the apartheid regime sought to strengthen economic ties with countries willing to overlook its human rights abuses in exchange for strategic and financial benefits. South Africa developed robust trade relationships with countries such as Taiwan, Israel, and Iran, often engaging in barter trade and other informal arrangements to circumvent sanctions (Beit-Hallahmi, 1988: 117). While these efforts provided some relief from economic isolation, they were insufficient to offset the broader impact of international sanctions and market isolation (Hamann et al., 2008: 21).

Despite the apartheid regime's attempts to circumvent sanctions, the cumulative effect of economic isolation and international pressure

contributed significantly to the eventual dismantling of apartheid (Levy, 1999: 420). The financial strain imposed by sanctions, internal resistance, and growing international condemnation forced the South African government to reconsider its policies and negotiate for a democratic transition (Worden, 2011: 137). In this context, the economic impact of apartheid's international relations is a testament to the power of global solidarity and collective action in addressing human rights abuses and promoting social justice (Klotz, 1995: 245).

2.2.3.8 Crisis of Apartheid in the 1980s

The 1980s were a pivotal decade in South Africa's history, marked by a deepening economic crisis that played a crucial role in the eventual dismantling of apartheid. This period was characterised by economic stagnation, inflation, rising unemployment and inequality, and a severe debt crisis. Each of these factors had far-reaching implications for the apartheid state and contributed to its eventual collapse.

During the 1980s, South Africa's economy experienced significant stagnation, with low growth rates and persistent inflation. The average annual GDP growth rate fell from 4.6% in the 1960s and 1970s to just 1.5% in the 1980s (Feinstein, 2005: 224). This decline can be attributed to various factors, including the global economic downturn, declining commodity prices, and international sanctions imposed on South Africa due to apartheid policies (Nattrass, 1991: 654).

The mining sector, a cornerstone of the South African economy, was particularly hard hit by the decline in global demand for gold and other minerals. Gold prices fell from a peak of \$850 per ounce in 1980 to below \$300 by 1985, reducing export revenues and increasing pressure on the country's balance of payments (Jones and Müller, 1992: 301). The manufacturing sector also suffered from stagnation, declining productivity and competitiveness due to outdated technology and a lack of investment (Kaplinsky, 1994: 78; Moll, 1991: 283).

Inflation further compounded the economic challenges faced by South Africa during this period. The country experienced double-digit inflation rates throughout the 1980s, peaking at 18.7% in 1986 (Dollery, 2003: 7). This high inflation eroded real incomes and savings, disproportionately affecting the poorest segments of the population (Lipton, 1986: 405). The government's attempts to control inflation through monetary tightening and fiscal austerity measures further dampened economic growth and exacerbated social tensions (Padayachee, 1989: 120; Gelb, 1991: 25).

The economic stagnation and inflation of the 1980s were accompanied by rising unemployment and inequality, which intensified the socio-economic challenges faced by the apartheid state. The official unemployment rate increased from 9.5% in 1980 to 18.2% in 1990, with the actual rate likely much higher due to the exclusion of large segments of the black population from official statistics (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 166).

The rising unemployment disproportionately affected black South Africans, who were already subject to discriminatory labour policies and limited economic opportunities (Lipton, 1986: 378; Nattrass and Seekings, 2010: 32). The apartheid regime's job reservation policies, which reserved specific skilled jobs for white workers, further entrenched racial inequalities in the labour market (Crankshaw, 1997: 9). As a result, black workers were often relegated to low-paying, unskilled jobs with little job security, exacerbating poverty and inequality (Hindson, 1987: 73; Wolpe, 1988: 60).

Inequality in South Africa during the 1980s was among the highest in the world, with the Gini coefficient, a measure of income inequality, remaining above 0.60 throughout the decade (McGrath and Whiteford, 1994: 73). The economic policies of the apartheid regime, which favoured the white minority at the expense of the black majority, were a significant driver of this inequality (Nattrass and Seekings, 2010: 32). The combination of rising unemployment and inequality contributed to increased social unrest

and political instability as the disenfranchised majority sought to challenge the oppressive policies of the apartheid state (Price, 1991: 188).

The economic challenges of the 1980s culminated in a severe debt crisis, further undermining the apartheid regime's stability. South Africa's external debt increased dramatically from \$16 billion in 1980 to \$24 billion by 1985, as the government relied on foreign loans to finance its budget deficit and maintain economic stability (Padayachee, 1989: 119). This growing debt burden, declining export revenues, and rising interest rates led to a crisis of confidence among international creditors (Gelb, 1991: 26).

In August 1985, a pivotal moment in the debt crisis occurred when central international banks, led by Chase Manhattan, announced a freeze on new loans to South Africa and demanded the repayment of outstanding debts (Ovenden and Cole, 1989: 48). This move was prompted by the growing political unrest and economic instability in the country, as well as mounting pressure from anti-apartheid activists and governments worldwide (Hirsch, 2005: 70; Bond, 2003: 37).

The debt crisis forced the South African government to declare a moratorium on its foreign debt repayments and enter negotiations with its creditors (Padayachee, 1988: 221). The resulting debt rescheduling agreements imposed strict conditions on the country's economic policies, including fiscal austerity measures and structural reforms (Gelb, 1991: 27). These measures further constrained the government's ability to address the social and economic challenges facing the country, exacerbating poverty and inequality and contributing to the growing resistance to apartheid (Marais, 2011: 45).

The debt crisis had far-reaching implications for the apartheid state, highlighting its economy's vulnerability to external pressures and the limitations of its economic policies (Dollery, 2003: 8; Feinstein, 2005: 227). The crisis underscored the need for fundamental political and economic

reforms, contributing to the growing momentum for change and the eventual transition to a democratic South Africa (Worden, 2011: 139).

2.2.3.9 Transition to Democracy

The transition to democracy in South Africa during the late apartheid period was marked by significant economic challenges, complex negotiations, and inherited economic structures that have continued to impact poverty levels in the post-apartheid era (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 4; Marais, 2011: 78). This section examines the intricacies of these financial challenges, the talks and their economic implications, and the ongoing effects of inherited economic structures on poverty.

The late apartheid period was characterised by severe economic challenges that played a crucial role in catalysing the transition to democracy. By the 1980s, the South African economy was plagued by stagnation, high inflation, rising unemployment, and escalating foreign debt (Feinstein, 2005: 224; Lowenberg and Kaempfer, 1998: 156). The apartheid regime's discriminatory policies had led to an inefficient allocation of resources, resulting in a dual economy that favoured the white minority while marginalising the black majority (Terreblanche, 2002: 371; Nattrass and Seekings, 2010: 32).

One of the most pressing economic challenges was the debt crisis, which arose from years of reliance on foreign loans to sustain the apartheid state's repressive apparatus and financial activities. By 1985, South Africa's foreign debt had reached approximately \$24 billion, leading to a crisis of confidence among international creditors and investors (Padayachee, 1991: 88; Bond, 2000: 173). The debt crisis was exacerbated by declining export revenues, particularly from the mining sector, due to falling commodity prices and international sanctions (Levy, 1999: 417).

The economic stagnation was further compounded by rising inflation, which peaked at 18.7% in 1986, eroding the purchasing power of ordinary

South Africans and exacerbating inequality (South African Reserve Bank, 2020: 15). The unemployment rate also soared, reaching an official rate of 18.2% in 1990, with the actual figure likely much higher due to the exclusion of large segments of the black population from official statistics (Kingdon and Knight, 2004: 391). This economic malaise created immense social pressures and contributed to the growing resistance against apartheid.

The economic crisis of the 1980s played a pivotal role in driving the political negotiations that ultimately led to the dismantling of apartheid (Marais, 2011: 85). The South African government, under the leadership of President F.W. de Klerk, recognised the system's unsustainability and initiated negotiations with the African National Congress (ANC) and other anti-apartheid groups to pave the way for a democratic transition (Sparks, 1995: 142).

Negotiations were complex and fraught with challenges, particularly regarding economic policy. A critical aspect of these negotiations was the need to reassure both domestic and international investors of South Africa's financial stability post-transition (Habib and Padayachee, 2000: 248). This required balancing the demands for economic justice and redistribution with the need to maintain investor confidence and economic growth (Gelb, 1991: 33; Nattrass, 1994: 517).

One significant economic implication of the negotiations was the agreement on a new macroeconomic framework to stabilise the economy while promoting growth and development (Michie and Padayachee, 1998: 625). The Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) was introduced as a policy framework to address the socio-economic injustices of apartheid, focusing on job creation, housing, education, and healthcare (ANC, 1994: 7). However, the implementation of the RDP faced significant challenges, including limited resources and capacity constraints, which hindered its effectiveness (Aliber, 2003: 476).

Another crucial outcome of the negotiations was the adoption of the Growth, Employment, and Redistribution (GEAR) strategy in 1996 (Department of Finance, 1996: 1). GEAR emphasised fiscal discipline, trade liberalisation, and market-oriented reforms to attract foreign investment and stimulate economic growth (Weeks, 1999: 796). While GEAR successfully stabilised the macroeconomic environment, it faced criticism for not adequately addressing unemployment and inequality (Adelzadeh, 1996: 66; Terreblanche, 2002: 419).

The transition to democracy did not automatically dismantle the deeply entrenched economic structures of apartheid, which have continued to impact poverty and inequality in post-apartheid South Africa. The dual economy, characterised by a modern, capital-intensive sector dominated by white-owned businesses and a marginalised informal sector predominantly occupied by black South Africans, persisted beyond the transition (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 28).

One of the most significant challenges has been addressing the legacy of apartheid-era education and skills development policies, which have left a large portion of the black population without the necessary skills to participate in the modern economy (Bhorat, 2004: 944; Van der Berg, 2007: 849). Despite efforts to reform the education system, disparities in educational outcomes remain a significant barrier to economic mobility and poverty reduction (Spaull, 2013: 436; Taylor, 2011: 39).

Land reform has also been a contentious issue in post-apartheid South Africa. The apartheid regime's discriminatory land policies dispossessed black South Africans of their land, contributing to widespread poverty and inequality (Lahiff, 2007: 1577). The post-apartheid government has implemented land reform programmes to address these injustices, but progress has been slow, and the impact on poverty has been limited (Hall, 2004: 213).

Furthermore, the labour market continues to reflect the inequalities of the apartheid era, with high levels of unemployment and underemployment, particularly among black South Africans (Bhorat and van der Westhuizen, 2012: 783). Labour market reforms have sought to promote equity and access. Still, job creation and skills development remain significant obstacles to poverty reduction (Leibbrandt et al., 2010: 32).

The persistence of poverty and inequality in post-apartheid South Africa underscores the complexity of addressing the economic legacy of apartheid. While significant progress has been made in political and social transformation, the financial challenges inherited from the apartheid era continue to pose significant obstacles to achieving equitable and sustainable development (Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 115).

2.2.3.10 Critical Analysis of Apartheid's Economic Legacy

The economic legacy of apartheid in South Africa is profound and enduring, with long-term impacts on inequality, poverty, and structural economic distortions (Terreblanche, 2002: 25; Bhorat and Kanbur, 2006: 4; Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 6). This section critically examines these impacts, explores the interconnections between racial policies and economic outcomes, and discusses post-apartheid economic policy challenges.

The apartheid era entrenched significant economic inequalities in South Africa, creating a legacy of poverty and disparity that continues to affect the nation (Woolard and Leibbrandt, 2011: 23). During apartheid, racial discrimination was institutionalised through laws and policies that systematically disadvantaged non-white populations, primarily black South Africans, in access to education, employment, and economic opportunities (Feinstein, 2005: 159; Nattrass and Seekings, 2010: 38). This resulted in stark economic disparities, with white South Africans enjoying vastly higher incomes and living standards compared to their black counterparts (Van der Berg, 2011: 112).

Despite the dismantling of apartheid, these economic inequalities have persisted. Statistics from the World Bank show that South Africa remains one of the most unequal countries in the world, with a Gini coefficient of 0.63 as of 2021, reflecting extreme income inequality (World Bank, 2022: online; Leibbrandt et al., 2010: 32). The legacy of apartheid has left deep-rooted structural barriers that continue to limit economic mobility for the majority of the population, particularly black South Africans (Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 118).

Poverty in post-apartheid South Africa is still heavily racialised, with black South Africans disproportionately affected. According to Statistics South Africa (2017: 14), approximately 55% of the population lived below the national poverty line, with black South Africans making up most of this figure. The long-term impact of apartheid's racial discrimination in education and employment has resulted in limited economic opportunities for historically marginalised communities, perpetuating cycles of poverty (Bhorat and van der Westhuizen, 2012: 786).

Apartheid policies created significant structural economic distortions that have had lasting impacts on South Africa's economy. One of the critical distortions was the development of a dual economy, characterised by a modern, capital-intensive sector dominated by white-owned businesses and a marginalised, informal sector primarily occupied by black South Africans (Terreblanche, 2002: 371; Nattrass and Seekings, 2010: 32). This dual economy was maintained through policies such as job reservation, which restricted specific jobs to white workers, and inferior education systems for black South Africans, which limited their skills and employability (Feinstein, 2005: 190).

The apartheid government also implemented policies that concentrated economic power and resources in the hands of a few large corporations, often aligned with the state. This led to the concentration of wealth and financial control within a small elite, further entrenching economic inequalities (Fine and Rustonjee, 1996: 10; Chabane et al., 2006: 549).

The consequences of this economic concentration have been persistent, with a few conglomerates continuing to dominate key sectors of the economy, limiting competition and innovation (Makhaya and Roberts, 2013: 664).

Another significant structural distortion was the spatial segregation enforced by apartheid policies, which led to the creation of homelands and townships (Wolpe, 1972: 433). These areas were deliberately underdeveloped and lacked basic infrastructure and services, hindering economic growth and development (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 139). The spatial legacy of apartheid continues to affect economic development in post-apartheid South Africa, as these areas remain economically marginalised and under-resourced (Neves and du Toit, 2013: 93).

The interconnections between apartheid's racial policies and economic outcomes are evident in the systematic exclusion of non-white populations from economic participation (Terreblanche, 2002: 393). The apartheid regime's emphasis on racial segregation and discrimination directly influenced economic policies, shaping labour markets, education, and land ownership (Nattrass and Seekings, 2010: 38).

Racially discriminatory labour market policies, such as the pass laws and job reservation, restricted black South Africans' access to employment opportunities and confined them to low-paying, unskilled jobs (Feinstein, 2005: 152). This limited their earning potential and perpetuated a cycle of poverty and inequality, as successive generations were denied access to quality education and skills development (Bhorat and van der Westhuizen, 2012: 783).

The apartheid government's focus on maintaining white economic dominance also influenced land ownership policies, leading to the dispossession of black South Africans and the concentration of land in the hands of white farmers and corporations (Walker, 2005: 814). This land inequality has had long-term economic consequences, limiting agricultural

productivity and economic opportunities for black communities (Cousins, 2007: 281).

The post-apartheid government has faced significant challenges in addressing the economic legacy of apartheid and promoting inclusive economic growth. One key challenge has been balancing the need for economic redress and redistribution with the imperatives of financial stability and growth (Bhorat and Kanbur, 2006: 93). Policies aimed at redressing historical injustices, such as land reform and black economic empowerment, have faced implementation challenges and resistance, limiting their impact (Hall, 2004: 213).

Another challenge has been addressing the high levels of unemployment and underemployment, particularly among black South Africans (Kingdon and Knight, 2007: 23). The persistence of high unemployment rates reflects both the structural constraints inherited from apartheid and the challenges of integrating a growing labour force into the formal economy (Banerjee et al., 2008: 717).

The post-apartheid government has also had to navigate the complexities of globalisation and economic integration. While globalisation offers opportunities for economic growth and development, it also presents challenges in terms of competitiveness and vulnerability to external shocks (Kaplinsky, 2013: 64). South Africa's monetary policy has had to balance these competing pressures while addressing the structural legacies of apartheid (Leibbrandt et al., 2010: 54).

The continued existence of apartheid-era spatial and economic inequalities underscores the need for targeted policies that address these historical injustices and promote inclusive economic development. This requires a comprehensive approach that includes investments in education, infrastructure, social services and reforms to promote equitable access to economic opportunities (Van der Berg, 2008: 150).

2.2.3.11 Conclusion: The Enduring Legacy of Apartheid on Poverty

The apartheid era, spanning from 1948 to 1994, profoundly shaped South Africa's socio-economic landscape, creating deep-rooted structures of poverty and inequality that persist to this day (Terreblanche, 2002: 25; Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 4). The rise of Afrikaner nationalism and the implementation of apartheid policies systematically entrenched racial segregation and economic disparities, laying the foundation for long-term structural poverty (Giliomee, 2003: 487).

The economic impact of apartheid was far-reaching and multifaceted. Labour market distortions, such as job reservation and the colour bar, coupled with unequal investment in education and skills development, created a dual economy that disproportionately benefited the white minority while marginalising the black majority (Feinstein, 2005: 159; Nattrass and Seekings, 2010: 32). This systematic economic exclusion has had lasting effects on income distribution, employment opportunities, and social mobility (Bhorat and van der Westhuizen, 2012: 783).

Forced removals and the homeland system further exacerbated poverty by displacing communities, disrupting social structures, and creating economically unviable Bantustans (Platzky and Walker, 1985: 9). This policy not only impoverished rural areas but also led to rapid, unplanned urbanisation, resulting in the growth of informal settlements and urban poverty (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 139). The migrant labour system, while providing some economic opportunities, had devastating effects on family structures and rural economies, contributing to the cycle of poverty (Wolpe, 1972: 433).

International sanctions and disinvestment, while aimed at pressuring the apartheid government, also had significant economic consequences (Levy, 1999: 417). The isolation from global markets led to economic stagnation, rising unemployment, and a debt crisis in the 1980s (Padayachee, 1991: 88; Feinstein, 2005: 224). These factors collectively deepened poverty and widened the inequality gap.

While marking a political milestone, the 1994 transition to democracy inherited economic structures deeply scarred by apartheid (Marais, 2011: 78). The new government faced the monumental task of addressing persistent poverty and inequality while managing economic stabilisation and growth (Habib and Padayachee, 2000: 248). The long-term impacts of apartheid's economic policies continue to pose significant challenges for post-apartheid economic policy, as evidenced by high unemployment rates, persistent income inequality, and widespread poverty (Bhorat and Kanbur, 2006: 4; Leibbrandt et al., 2010: 32).

In conclusion, the apartheid era's policies and practices created a complex web of economic and social factors that entrenched poverty and inequality in South Africa (Terreblanche, 2002: 393; Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 115).

Understanding this historical context is crucial for comprehending the current challenges in poverty alleviation and the role that institutions, including the church, can play in addressing these issues. The legacy of apartheid underscores the need for comprehensive, long-term strategies to dismantle structural inequalities and create more inclusive economic opportunities for all South Africans (Van der Berg, 2008: 150; Bhorat and van der Westhuizen, 2012: 786).

This conclusion ties together the various aspects of apartheid discussed in the section, emphasising their collective impact on poverty and inequality. It also sets the stage for further discussion on how these historical factors continue to influence contemporary efforts to address poverty, including the potential role of the church in this context.

2.2.4 Post-Apartheid Era (1994 –)

2.2.4.1 Introduction

The transition to democracy in South Africa in 1994 marked a significant turning point in the country's history, bringing an end to decades of

institutionalised racial segregation under apartheid. The transition was driven by a confluence of internal resistance, international pressure, and a pragmatic recognition among South African leaders that change was both inevitable and necessary (Marais, 2011: 71). However, the birth of the 'new South Africa' was accompanied by formidable challenges, many of which were deeply rooted in the economic inequalities and structural distortions inherited from the apartheid era (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 6; Terreblanche, 2002: 371).

A central challenge facing the post-apartheid government was addressing the entrenched economic disparities between racial groups. Under apartheid, the financial policies and social systems were designed to favour the white minority at the expense of the black majority, leading to severe socioeconomic inequalities that persisted into the new democratic era (Bhorat and Kanbur, 2006: 4; Leibbrandt et al., 2010: 32).

The apartheid regime's policies resulted in a dual economy: a developed, largely white-controlled sector and an underdeveloped, predominantly black sector characterised by poverty and unemployment (Nattrass and Seekings, 2010: 32; Terreblanche, 2002: 371). This bifurcation manifested in disparate access to quality education, healthcare, and employment opportunities, perpetuating a cycle of poverty among black South Africans. The economic legacy of apartheid also included structural distortions such as a skewed labour market (Bhorat, 2004: 944; Kingdon and Knight, 2007: 813). Job reservation policies had historically marginalised black workers, confining them to low-wage, unskilled positions (Feinstein, 2005: 190). This limited their economic mobility and contributed to a broader skills deficit that posed a significant hurdle for the new government striving to integrate the economy into the global market (Bhorat and van der Westhuizen, 2012: 783).

Inflation and economic stagnation were additional challenges. The apartheid government's fiscal policies, which prioritised military and security expenditures to maintain its grip on power, had led to substantial

national debt and fiscal imbalances (Feinstein, 2005: 224). By the early 1990s, South Africa faced mounting pressure to reform its economic policies to stabilise the economy and attract foreign investment, both crucial for fostering sustainable growth (Gelb, 1991: 33).

The international community's response to apartheid through sanctions and disinvestment further strained the economy. While these measures were instrumental in applying pressure on the apartheid regime, they also isolated South Africa from global markets, leading to reduced trade and investment flows (Levy, 1999: 417). The economic isolation compounded the structural challenges faced by the post-apartheid government, which had to navigate a complex landscape of reintegrating South Africa into the global economy while simultaneously addressing domestic inequalities and fostering economic development (Habib and Padayachee, 2000: 248; Marais, 2011: 85).

This historical backdrop highlights the dual challenge facing the new South African government: dismantling the apartheid structures that perpetuated economic inequality and creating a cohesive strategy for sustainable development and economic growth (Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 118). This section sets the stage for a deeper exploration of the specific financial and social policies implemented in the post-apartheid era and their impact on poverty in South Africa.

2.2.4.2 Initial Economic Policies and Strategies

The transition from apartheid to democracy in South Africa in 1994 ushered in a new era of economic policy-making aimed at redressing the severe socio-economic imbalances created by decades of racial segregation and discrimination (Terreblanche, 2002: 419). Two primary economic strategies characterised this period: the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) and the Growth, Employment and Redistribution (GEAR) strategy (Weeks, 1999: 795; Habib and Padayachee, 2000: 245). These policies were instrumental in shaping the

country's initial approach to addressing poverty and inequality in the post-apartheid era.

Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP)

The Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) was the first major policy initiative introduced by the African National Congress (ANC) after winning the country's first democratic elections in 1994. The RDP was envisioned as a comprehensive socio-economic policy framework aimed at addressing the dire economic and social needs of the majority black population that had been marginalised under apartheid (ANC, 1994: 1). Its core objectives included poverty eradication, the provision of basic services, and the promotion of economic growth and development through a redistribution of resources (Seekings and Natrass, 2005: 347).

One of the critical components of the RDP was the focus on housing and basic services. The programme aimed to build one million houses, provide clean water and sanitation to all households, and expand access to electricity, healthcare, and education (ANC, 1994: 22-23). This ambitious agenda was underpinned by the belief that improving the living conditions of the poor would not only address historical injustices but also stimulate economic growth by increasing productivity and consumption (Blumenfeld, 1997: 68).

Despite its comprehensive goals, the RDP faced significant challenges in implementation. Funding constraints, bureaucratic inefficiencies, and the enormity of the task at hand limited its impact (Aliber, 2003: 476). By the late 1990s, it became clear that while some progress had been made in improving access to basic services, the RDP's ambitious goals had not been fully realised (Visser, 2004: 8). Critics argued that the RDP's focus on redistribution was insufficient to address the structural challenges of the South African economy, such as unemployment and economic growth (Natrass, 1996: 29; Marais, 2011: 122).

Growth, Employment and Redistribution (GEAR) Strategy

In response to the limitations of the RDP and the need for a more market-oriented approach, the South African government introduced the Growth, Employment and Redistribution (GEAR) strategy in 1996 (Department of Finance, 1996: 1). GEAR represented a significant shift in economic policy, emphasising macroeconomic stability, fiscal discipline, and promoting private sector-led growth to achieve economic development and poverty reduction (Weeks, 1999: 796; Habib and Padayachee, 2000: 247).

The GEAR strategy aimed to achieve a 6% growth rate, create 400,000 jobs annually, and increase investment levels through tariff reductions, privatisation of state-owned enterprises, and financial liberalisation (Department of Finance, 1996: 1-2). The rationale was that by creating a conducive environment for investment and growth, economic benefits would trickle down to the poor, thereby addressing unemployment and poverty (Michie and Padayachee, 1998: 625; Nattrass, 1996: 31).

While GEAR succeeded in stabilising the economy, reducing inflation, and attracting foreign investment, it fell short of achieving its ambitious growth and employment targets (Weeks, 1999: 798). Critics argued that the policy's focus on fiscal austerity and market liberalisation exacerbated unemployment and inequality, as the benefits of growth were not evenly distributed across the population (Bond, 2000: 54). The persistence of high unemployment rates and widespread poverty led to growing disillusionment with GEAR's ability to address the socio-economic challenges facing post-apartheid South Africa (Terreblanche, 2002: 435).

Aims and Expectations of RDP and GEAR

The RDP and GEAR represented distinct but interconnected phases of South Africa's post-apartheid economic policy. While the RDP focused on immediate socio-economic redress through state intervention and redistribution, GEAR sought to lay the foundations for long-term economic growth and stability through market-oriented reforms (Habib and Padayachee, 2000: 248; Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 349). Both policies

aimed to address poverty and inequality, albeit through different mechanisms.

The expectations surrounding these policies were shaped by the broader context of South Africa's transition to democracy. The RDP was seen as a necessary step to address the urgent socio-economic needs of the majority population and fulfil the promises of the liberation struggle (Marais, 2011: 123). In contrast, GEAR was framed as a pragmatic response to global economic pressures and the need to integrate South Africa into the global economy (Michie and Padayachee, 1998: 626).

In retrospect, the mixed results of these policies highlight the complexity of addressing poverty and inequality in a deeply divided society. The tension between social welfare objectives and economic growth imperatives remains a central theme in South Africa's ongoing struggle to build a more equitable and prosperous society (Bhorat and Kanbur, 2006: 9; Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 120).

2.2.4.3 Early Poverty Alleviation Efforts

The early post-apartheid era in South Africa was marked by significant efforts to address the entrenched poverty and inequality left by decades of apartheid policies. These efforts included implementing the social grant system, public works programmes, and land reform initiatives (Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 122). These measures were integral to the broader Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) and aimed at alleviating poverty and promoting socio-economic development in the newly democratic South Africa.

Initial Implementation of the Social Grant System

One of the cornerstone initiatives of the post-apartheid government was the expansion and reform of the social grant system. Social grants became a vital tool for poverty alleviation, targeting the most vulnerable populations, including the elderly, disabled, and children. Initially, the system was built upon existing apartheid-era social security measures but

was significantly expanded and restructured to be more inclusive (Woolard and Leibbrandt, 2013: 41; Pauw and Mncube, 2007: 3).

The old-age pension, for example, was extended to include all racial groups, addressing the disparities created by previous discriminatory practices. The introduction of the Child Support Grant in 1998 marked a significant expansion of the social grant system, providing critical financial support to low-income families with young children (Lund, 2008: 15). The Child Support Grant has been widely studied for its impact on poverty alleviation, with evidence showing that it has contributed to reducing child poverty and improving nutritional outcomes (Aguero et al., 2006: 22).

The social grant system has been critical to South Africa's poverty alleviation strategy (Seekings, 2002: 5). By 2000, social grants reached over 3 million people, providing a crucial safety net for many households facing economic hardship (Van der Berg et al., 2010: 9). However, the system also faced challenges, including issues of sustainability and dependency, leading to ongoing debates about its role in the broader socio-economic landscape (Marais, 2011: 238).

Early Public Works Programmes

Public works programmes were another essential element of the post-apartheid government's poverty alleviation strategy. These programmes aimed to provide short-term employment opportunities to the unemployed, addressing poverty and the high unemployment rates plaguing the country. The Community-Based Public Works Programme (CBPWP), launched in the mid-1990s, was one of the first major initiatives, focusing on infrastructure development in rural and underdeveloped areas (McCord, 2003: 8).

The CBPWP was designed to create jobs and improve local infrastructure, contributing to economic development and poverty reduction. Projects under the programme included the construction of roads, schools, and clinics, as well as water and sanitation facilities. These projects were

intended to provide immediate employment and longer-term benefits by enhancing local communities' capacity and infrastructure (Phillips, 2004: 2).

While public works programmes provided much-needed employment and infrastructure, they faced several challenges. Critics argued that the jobs created were often low-skilled and temporary, limiting their long-term impact on poverty and unemployment (Aliber, 2003: 479). Additionally, programme implementation and management issues sometimes undermined their effectiveness, highlighting the need for ongoing refinement and adaptation (McCord, 2004: 55).

First Phase of Land Reform Efforts

Land reform was crucial to the post-apartheid government's strategy to redress historical injustices and promote economic development. The land reform programme comprised three main pillars: land restitution, land redistribution, and tenure reform. Each aimed to address different aspects of land inequality and alleviate poverty (Hall, 2004: 214; Lahiff, 2007: 1577).

Land restitution sought to return land or provide compensation to individuals and communities dispossessed of their land rights under apartheid. This process was legally grounded in the Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994, which established the Land Claims Court and the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights to manage claims and facilitate restitution (Walker, 2008: 5).

Land redistribution aimed to provide land to disadvantaged and landless South Africans, promoting equitable land access (Cousins, 2007: 220; Lahiff, 2008: 1). The government introduced several initiatives to facilitate this process, including subsidies and grants for purchasing land. The Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development (LRAD) programme, launched in 2001, aimed to support emerging black farmers and promote agricultural development (Hall, 2004: 215).

Tenure reform focused on securing land tenure rights for people living in communal areas and on commercial farms. This aspect of land reform aimed to enhance the security of tenure and improve living conditions for farm dwellers and residents of former homelands (Cousins, 2007: 282).

Despite the ambitious goals of the land reform programme, its implementation faced numerous challenges. These included bureaucratic inefficiencies, limited funding, and resistance from landowners, all of which hindered progress and led to growing frustration among intended beneficiaries (Lahiff, 2008: 2). The slow pace of land reform and its limited impact on poverty alleviation have been subjects of ongoing debate and critique (Cousins and Scoones, 2010: 31; Aliber and Cousins, 2013: 140).

2.2.4.4 Structural Challenges in the Transition Period

The transition from apartheid to democracy in South Africa was marked by several structural challenges that needed urgent attention to foster a more equitable and just society. These challenges were deeply rooted in the apartheid regime's legacy, which had entrenched racial inequalities and socioeconomic disparities across the country (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 6; Terreblanche, 2002: 25).

Immediate Labour Market Issues Post-Apartheid

One of the most pressing issues in the immediate post-apartheid period was the condition of the labour market, which was characterised by high unemployment rates, especially among black South Africans (Kingdon and Knight, 2007: 813). The apartheid regime had enforced a racially segmented labour market that prioritised white workers over others, leading to widespread joblessness among non-white populations (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 28; Bhorat and van der Westhuizen, 2012: 783). By the end of apartheid in 1994, the official unemployment rate was estimated at 20%, with unofficial figures suggesting much higher levels, particularly in rural areas and townships (Statistics South Africa, 1995: 12). This high unemployment rate was exacerbated by a mismatch between

the skills of the labour force and the demands of the evolving economy (Bhorat, 2004: 944).

To address these issues, the newly formed democratic government implemented various labour market reforms (Nattrass, 2014: 86). These included the Labour Relations Act of 1995, which aimed to promote fair employment practices and protect workers' rights, and the Employment Equity Act of 1998, which sought to redress past injustices by encouraging affirmative action in the workplace (Bhorat and van der Westhuizen, 2012: 784; Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 349). Despite these efforts, challenges persisted, as the labour market remained highly stratified, with many black South Africans facing significant barriers to employment and advancement (Leibbrandt et al., 2010: 32).

Initial Efforts to Reform Education and Skills Development

Education and skills development were critical areas for reform in the post-apartheid era, given their centrality to addressing structural inequalities and fostering economic growth (Spaull, 2013: 436). The apartheid education system had been designed to perpetuate racial hierarchies, with black South Africans receiving an inferior education compared to their white counterparts (Fiske and Ladd, 2004: 52). This systemic inequity left many black South Africans without the necessary skills and qualifications to participate meaningfully in the economy (Van der Berg, 2007: 849).

In response, the government prioritised education reform, increasing access to quality education for all South Africans. The introduction of outcomes-based education (OBE) was a key initiative to transform the education system by promoting critical thinking and problem-solving skills (Jansen, 1998: 321). However, implementing OBE faced numerous challenges, including inadequate teacher training and resource constraints, often hindering its effectiveness (Chisholm, 2005: 193). To complement these efforts, the government also invested in skills development programmes, such as the Skills Development Act of 1998,

which sought to enhance the employability of the workforce through targeted training initiatives (Kraak, 2008: 1).

Significant education quality and access disparities persisted despite these reforms, particularly in rural areas and historically disadvantaged communities (Spaull, 2013: 438). The enduring legacy of apartheid's discriminatory policies continued to pose formidable obstacles to achieving educational equity and social mobility (Van der Berg, 2008: 145).

Early Attempts to Address Spatial Inequalities

Spatial inequalities, a direct consequence of apartheid's racially discriminatory policies, presented another major challenge in the transition period. The apartheid regime had implemented policies of forced removals and segregated urban planning, which confined black South Africans to underdeveloped townships and rural areas (Platzky and Walker, 1985: 9). This resulted in significant disparities in access to infrastructure, services, and economic opportunities between predominantly white urban centres and black townships (Christopher, 2001: 451).

The post-apartheid government embarked on land reform initiatives to address these spatial inequalities to redistribute land and resources more equitably (Hall, 2004: 213). The Restitution of Land Rights Act of 1994 and the Land Reform (Labour Tenants) Act of 1996 were critical legislative measures designed to facilitate land restitution and tenure reform (Walker, 2008: 5; Lahiff, 2007: 1577). Public works programmes were also implemented to improve infrastructure and service delivery in historically disadvantaged areas, focusing on housing, sanitation, and transportation (McCord, 2003: 8; Phillips, 2004: 2).

However, these efforts faced numerous obstacles, including resistance from landowners, bureaucratic inefficiencies, and limited financial resources, which often hindered the pace and effectiveness of land reform (Cousins, 2007: 220). Moreover, the complexities of addressing deeply

entrenched spatial inequalities meant that progress was often slow and uneven, with many communities continuing to experience marginalisation and exclusion (Neves and du Toit, 2013: 93).

The transition period in post-apartheid South Africa was characterised by significant structural challenges that required comprehensive and multifaceted policy responses (Marais, 2011: 122). While notable progress was made in addressing labour market disparities, education reform, and spatial inequalities, many of these issues persisted, reflecting the enduring legacy of apartheid's inequitable policies. Continued efforts to address these challenges remain essential to achieving a more just and equitable society (Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 120; Bhorat and Kanbur, 2006: 9).

2.2.4.5 International Re-integration and its Effects

The transition from apartheid in South Africa marked a significant shift in the country's international relations, characterised by the lifting of economic sanctions and reintegration into the global market (Habib and Padayachee, 2000: 245; Gelb, 2003: 22). This phase presented opportunities and challenges as South Africa sought to rebuild its economy and address the pervasive issue of poverty. The reintegration process had profound implications for domestic industries, employment, and foreign investment trends, collectively shaping the country's post-apartheid economic landscape.

The dismantling of apartheid led to the lifting of international sanctions imposed on South Africa since the mid-1980s (Levy, 1999: 415). These sanctions had isolated the country economically and politically, restricting access to global markets and foreign investments (Evenett, 2002: 557). The end of sanctions was marked by South Africa's re-admittance to international organisations, including the United Nations and the Commonwealth, which paved the way for renewed diplomatic and economic engagements (Alden and Le Pere, 2004: 283).

The immediate economic impact of sanctions removal was significant. The country's re-entry into global markets facilitated increased trade and investment opportunities, contributing to a notable increase in export volumes (Edwards and Lawrence, 2008: 583; Rangasamy and Harmse, 2003: 714). Between 1994 and 1997, South Africa's exports grew by an average of 8% annually, reflecting renewed access to international markets (Jonsson and Subramanian, 2001: 200). The lifting of sanctions also allowed South African firms to import essential technologies and capital goods, enhancing productivity and competitiveness in various sectors (Fedderke and Vaze, 2001: 445).

The reintegration into the global economy posed opportunities and challenges for domestic industries. While access to international markets facilitated export growth, increased competition from foreign firms pressured local industries to modernise and improve efficiency (Roberts, 2000: 275-276). The automotive sector, for instance, experienced substantial growth due to government-led initiatives such as the Motor Industry Development Programme (MIDP), which encouraged export-oriented production (Barnes and Kaplinsky, 2000: 797).

However, the opening of the economy also led to significant job losses in sectors unable to compete with international imports. The manufacturing sector, in particular, saw a decline in employment as firms restructured to cope with competitive pressures (Bhorat and Hodge, 1999: 155). This trend exacerbated the high unemployment rate, which remained a critical challenge for the post-apartheid government (Kingdon and Knight, 2007: 813; Banerjee et al., 2008: 715). The government's efforts to mitigate these impacts included policies promoting small and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs) and providing targeted support to vulnerable sectors (Rogerson, 2004: 765).

Foreign direct investment (FDI) played a crucial role in South Africa's economic re-integration, with significant implications for poverty alleviation (Gelb and Black, 2004: 177). The lifting of sanctions and political stability

post-1994 attracted substantial FDI inflows, particularly in sectors such as mining, telecommunications, and finance (Thomas and Leape, 2005: 8). These investments contributed to economic growth and job creation, providing a much-needed boost to the national economy (Arvanitis, 2005: 64).

Despite FDI's positive effects on economic growth, its impact on poverty alleviation was less straightforward. While foreign investments created employment opportunities, they often favoured skilled labour, exacerbating income inequality between skilled and unskilled workers (Bhorat and Kanbur, 2006: 9). This trend highlighted the importance of complementary policies, such as skills development programmes, to ensure that the benefits of FDI were more equitably distributed (Kraak, 2008: 1).

Moreover, the initial surge in foreign investments was concentrated in urban areas, leaving rural regions with limited direct benefits. This spatial disparity underscored the need for targeted rural development initiatives to address these areas' persistent poverty and inequality (Aliber, 2003: 473; Neves and du Toit, 2013: 93). The government's subsequent efforts to promote rural development included land reform programmes and infrastructure investments to enhance rural connectivity and economic opportunities (Hall, 2004: 213).

South Africa's reintegration into the global economy following the end of apartheid was a complex process with significant implications for domestic industries, employment, and poverty alleviation (Marais, 2011: 122; Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 120). While lifting sanctions and increasing foreign investment facilitated economic growth, they highlighted the structural challenges that continued to impede poverty reduction.

2.2.4.6 Demographic and Social Changes

The post-apartheid era in South Africa brought significant demographic and social changes that shaped the nation's economic landscape and

influenced poverty dynamics (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 243; Bhorat and Kanbur, 2006: 102-105). This section examines initial post-apartheid migration patterns, the emergence of the black middle class, and the evolution of household structures and their implications for poverty.

Initial Post-Apartheid Migration Patterns

The end of apartheid in 1994 marked a substantial shift in migration patterns within South Africa. The abolition of apartheid-era laws, such as the pass laws and influx control measures, facilitated increased mobility among the black population. This newfound freedom of movement resulted in significant internal migration, as people moved from rural areas to urban centres in search of better economic opportunities and living conditions (Posel, 2004: 285). According to Kok et al. (2003: 19), between 1996 and 2001, approximately 3.3 million people migrated from rural to urban areas.

This rural-to-urban migration contributed to rapid urbanisation, placing immense pressure on urban infrastructure and services. Cities like Johannesburg, Cape Town, and Durban experienced significant population growth, leading to the proliferation of informal settlements and increased demand for housing, water, and sanitation services (Turok, 2012: 35; Todes et al., 2010: 331). While urbanisation presented opportunities for economic growth, it also exacerbated urban poverty, as many migrants struggled to find stable employment and secure adequate housing (Cross, 2001: 115).

The increased migration to urban areas also resulted in shifts in labour market dynamics (Posel and Casale, 2003: 459). Urban areas offered more significant employment opportunities in various sectors, such as manufacturing, retail, and services. However, the influx of labourers also increased competition for jobs, particularly in low-skilled occupations, which limited income-earning opportunities for many new arrivals (Bhorat and Oosthuizen, 2006: 143).

Emergence of the Black Middle Class

One of the most notable social changes in the post-apartheid era was the rise of the black middle class (Southall, 2016: 47; Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 310). During apartheid, racial segregation and discriminatory policies severely limited economic opportunities for black South Africans, confining them to low-wage jobs and hindering social mobility. However, with the advent of democracy and affirmative action policies, such as Black Economic Empowerment (BEE), the black middle class emerged as a significant economic force (Tangri and Southall, 2008: 699).

The black middle class increased in the early years of democracy, driven by improved access to education, employment, and entrepreneurial opportunities. According to a report by the University of Cape Town Unilever Institute of Strategic Marketing (2013: 5), the black middle class expanded from 1.7 million in 2004 to 4.2 million in 2012, surpassing the white middle class in size. This growth in the black middle class contributed to increased consumer spending and economic diversification as black South Africans gained greater credit and disposable income (Visagie and Posel, 2013: 149; Kharas, 2010: 7).

Despite these advances, the black middle class faced challenges, including limited upward mobility and economic insecurity (Burger et al., 2015: 34). While some black South Africans achieved middle-class status, many remained vulnerable to economic shocks, such as job loss and financial instability. This precariousness was partly due to disparities in wealth accumulation, as black households generally had fewer assets and savings than their white counterparts (Leibbrandt et al., 2010: 32; Finn et al., 2012: 1).

Evolution of Household Structures and Implications for Poverty

Post-apartheid South Africa witnessed significant household structure changes, affecting poverty and economic well-being. The decline of the traditional extended family and the rise of nuclear and single-parent households reflected broader societal shifts towards individualism and

modernity (Russell, 2003: 153). This shift in household composition was accompanied by changes in household size, with average household sizes decreasing from 4.5 members in 1996 to 3.4 members in 2011 (Statistics South Africa, 2012: 57).

Changes in household structures influenced poverty dynamics, as smaller households often faced different economic challenges compared to larger, extended families (Amoateng et al., 2007: 43). For example, single-parent households, particularly those headed by women, were more likely to experience poverty due to limited income-earning capacity and increased caregiving responsibilities (Posel and Rogan, 2012: 267). In contrast, extended families often pooled resources and shared economic burdens, providing a buffer against poverty.

Moreover, the changing household structures affected intergenerational wealth transfer and social support systems. The erosion of traditional family networks weakened informal safety nets, leaving some households more vulnerable to economic shocks and poverty (Mosoetsa, 2011: 25). This vulnerability was further compounded by high unemployment rates and limited access to social services, particularly in rural areas (Klasen and Woolard, 2009: 1).

In summary, the post-apartheid era in South Africa was marked by significant demographic and social changes, including shifts in migration patterns, the rise of the black middle class, and evolving household structures. These changes had complex implications for poverty dynamics, highlighting the need for targeted policies and interventions to address the multifaceted nature of poverty in a rapidly transforming society.

2.2.4.7 Critical Analysis of Post-Apartheid Poverty Alleviation Efforts

The post-apartheid era in South Africa marked a significant shift in the country's socio-economic landscape, with the government initiating

various strategies to alleviate poverty and address the inequalities inherited from the apartheid regime (Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 122). This section critically analyses these early efforts, highlighting initial successes and challenges, critiques of economic policies, and the emerging debates about effective poverty reduction strategies.

The transition to a democratic South Africa in 1994 brought many expectations regarding economic growth and poverty alleviation (Marais, 2011: 98). The newly elected government, led by the African National Congress (ANC), introduced the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) as its flagship policy to address socio-economic disparities. The RDP aimed to improve access to basic housing, healthcare, education, and water (ANC, 1994: 7). According to Blumenfeld (1997: 68), the RDP had early successes in expanding access to clean water and electricity to millions of previously underserved citizens, thus improving the quality of life for many South Africans.

However, the RDP also faced significant challenges that hindered its effectiveness. One major issue was the programme's ambitious scope, which led to difficulties in implementation and coordination across different government levels (Aliber, 2003: 476). As Visser (2004: 8) noted, the RDP's focus on infrastructure development often overshadowed the need for sustainable job creation, limiting its long-term impact on poverty reduction.

In response to the RDP's limitations, the South African government adopted the Growth, Employment, and Redistribution (GEAR) strategy in 1996 (Department of Finance, 1996: 1). GEAR aimed to stimulate economic growth through fiscal discipline, trade liberalisation, and market-friendly reforms (Weeks, 1999: 796). However, GEAR was criticised for its neoliberal approach, which many argued prioritised macroeconomic stability over social welfare (Bond, 2000: 54).

Critics such as Terreblanche (2002: 435) and Nattrass (1996: 29) contend that GEAR failed to address structural unemployment and income inequality, thus exacerbating poverty levels in the country. The strategy's emphasis on attracting foreign investment and reducing government spending led to cutbacks in social services, disproportionately affecting the poorest segments of society (Habib and Padayachee, 2000: 248).

Moreover, GEAR's failure to generate the anticipated economic growth and employment levels led to widespread disillusionment with the government's economic policies. As Bhorat and Kanbur (2006: 9) highlight, the disconnect between GEAR's goals and outcomes fuelled debates about the need for alternative approaches to poverty alleviation.

Emerging Debates About Effective Poverty Reduction Strategies

The early post-apartheid years witnessed intense debates regarding the most effective strategies for poverty reduction in South Africa. On one hand, proponents of market-led approaches argued that economic growth and private sector development were crucial for creating jobs and reducing poverty (Rogerson, 2004: 765). On the other hand, advocates for state intervention stressed the importance of social safety nets and equitable distribution of resources to address the root causes of poverty (Seekings, 2002: 5; Meth and Dias, 2004: 59).

These debates led to various policy proposals to balance economic growth with social justice. One such proposal was the introduction of a basic income grant, which sought to provide a universal safety net for all South Africans (Standing and Samson, 2003: 15). Although the proposal received support from civil society groups, it faced opposition from policymakers concerned about its fiscal implications (Meth, 2004: 417).

Another emerging strategy was promoting small, medium, and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) to foster entrepreneurship and job creation. As Berry et al. (2002: 24) note, SMMEs were recognised for their potential to drive

economic development and provide livelihoods for marginalised communities.

A complex interplay of successes and challenges in poverty alleviation efforts characterised the early post-apartheid era in South Africa (Marais, 2011: 122). While initial policies such as the RDP and GEAR sought to address socio-economic disparities (Seekings and Nattrass, 2005: 349), their limitations highlighted the need for more comprehensive and inclusive approaches. The ongoing debates about effective poverty reduction strategies underscore the importance of balancing economic growth with social equity, ensuring that development benefits reach the most vulnerable segments of society (Bhorat and Kanbur, 2006: 9).

2.2.4.8 Conclusion

The immediate post-apartheid period in South Africa was characterised by ambitious efforts to dismantle the socio-economic inequalities entrenched by decades of apartheid rule. This section summarises the key developments and challenges from 1994 onwards, reflecting on the efforts to alleviate poverty and laying the groundwork for future initiatives.

In the wake of apartheid, the South African government undertook significant measures to redress historical injustices and build a more equitable society. The Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP), launched in 1994, aimed to address the critical needs of the majority population, including housing, education, and healthcare (ANC, 1994: 7). Despite its noble intentions, the RDP faced substantial challenges in implementation, with issues such as bureaucratic inefficiency and inadequate resources hindering its success (Aliber, 2003: 476; Visser, 2004: 8).

The Growth, Employment and Redistribution (GEAR) strategy, introduced in 1996, sought to stimulate economic growth and attract foreign investment through market-oriented policies (Department of Finance, 1996: 1). While GEAR succeeded in stabilising the macroeconomic

environment, it was criticised for not adequately addressing unemployment and poverty, as the benefits of growth were not equitably distributed (Weeks, 1999: 798; Bond, 2000: 54). This led to debates about the efficacy of neoliberal economic policies in the South African context (Terreblanche, 2002: 435).

During this period, the government also made significant strides in education and skills development to bridge the gaps in quality and apartheid-era educational access. Initiatives like the National Skills Development Strategy were introduced to enhance the employability of historically disadvantaged groups (Kraak, 2008: 1). However, the legacy of apartheid continued to cast a long shadow, with education inequalities persisting and affecting economic opportunities (Van der Berg, 2007: 849; Spaul, 2013: 436).

Spatial inequalities, a direct consequence of apartheid's segregationist policies, remained a pressing issue (Christopher, 2001: 451; Turok, 2012: 35). Early efforts to tackle these disparities included initiatives to enhance infrastructure and services in previously neglected areas. However, progress was sluggish, and many communities struggled with inadequate access to basic amenities and economic opportunities (Neves and du Toit, 2013: 93).

Though with mixed success, the early post-apartheid era laid essential foundations for ongoing poverty alleviation efforts (Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 120). The establishment of social grants and public works programmes provided vital support to many impoverished South Africans. The introduction of the Child Support Grant in 1998, for example, has been credited with reducing child poverty and improving nutritional outcomes (Lund, 2008: 15; Agüero et al., 2006: 22).

Nonetheless, the challenges of unemployment, inequality, and poverty remained deeply entrenched. Structural economic issues, such as the dual nature of the economy and labour market segmentation, continued

to impede broad-based economic development. Furthermore, debates around the appropriate balance between social welfare and economic growth strategies highlighted the complexity of achieving sustainable poverty reduction (Bhorat and Kanbur, 2006: 9).

As South Africa transitioned into the 21st century, the legacy of apartheid continued to shape the socio-economic landscape. While significant progress had been made in some areas, many South Africans remained trapped in cycles of poverty and marginalisation. Though crucial, the foundations in the immediate post-apartheid era proved insufficient to entirely overcome the deep-seated inequalities inherited from the past.

The immediate post-apartheid era laid crucial foundations for addressing poverty and inequality in South Africa. However, despite these efforts, the country grapples with significant socio-economic challenges rooted in its complex history. As South Africa moved into the 21st century, historical legacies, policy outcomes, and global economic forces shaped a new landscape of poverty and inequality. To fully grasp the current state of poverty in South Africa, it is essential to examine its contemporary manifestations (Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 122).

The following section provides a comprehensive analysis of poverty in present-day South Africa, offering insights into income poverty, multidimensional deprivation, persistent inequalities, unemployment, and access to essential services. This current snapshot not only reflects the progress made since the end of apartheid but also highlights the enduring challenges that continue to impact millions of South Africans, setting the stage for ongoing debates about effective poverty alleviation strategies.

2.3 Current Manifestations of Poverty

2.3.1 Introduction

The landscape of poverty in contemporary South Africa presents a complex and multifaceted challenge, deeply rooted in the country's historical legacy and shaped by ongoing socio-economic dynamics.

Despite nearly three decades of democratic governance and numerous policy interventions aimed at redressing the inequalities of the apartheid era, poverty remains a pervasive issue affecting millions of South Africans. This section provides a comprehensive analysis of the current manifestations of poverty in South Africa, offering insights into its various dimensions and the factors that contribute to its persistence.

The persistence of poverty in post-apartheid South Africa underscores the deep-seated nature of the country's socio-economic challenges. According to Statistics South Africa (2017: 14), approximately 49.2% of the adult population lived below the upper-bound poverty line in 2015, with the situation being particularly dire for children, where the poverty rate rises to 55.5%. These statistics highlight the challenge's scale and raise critical questions about the effectiveness of past and current poverty alleviation strategies. Moreover, Leibbrandt et al. (2010: 9) argue that while there has been some progress in reducing poverty since 1994, the pace of poverty reduction has slowed significantly in recent years, suggesting a need for renewed and innovative approaches to addressing this persistent issue.

Poverty in South Africa cannot be understood through a singular lens. It manifests in multiple, interconnected forms that extend beyond mere income deprivation. While income poverty remains a critical concern, a holistic understanding must consider factors such as access to education, healthcare, essential services, and economic opportunities.

This multidimensional approach to poverty aligns with global trends in poverty analysis, as exemplified by the United Nations Development Programme's Multidimensional Poverty Index (UNDP, 2020: 3). The South African Multidimensional Poverty Index (SAMPI), developed by Statistics South Africa (2014: 2), incorporates dimensions such as health, education, living standards, and economic activity, providing a more nuanced picture of deprivation in the country.

The relationship between poverty and unemployment in South Africa is particularly stark, with an official unemployment rate of 32.5% in the fourth quarter of 2020 (Statistics South Africa, 2021b: 7); joblessness remains one of the primary drivers of poverty in the country. The situation is even more difficult for youth, with youth unemployment rates exceeding 60% (Statistics South Africa, 2021b: 8). Bhorat et al. (2014: 32) argue that this high level of unemployment not only contributes to income poverty but also has broader societal implications, including social unrest and crime. Furthermore, the phenomenon of the working poor highlights that employment alone does not guarantee an escape from poverty, with many employed individuals still struggling to meet basic needs (Rogan and Reynolds, 2019: 23).

Access to essential services, including water, sanitation, electricity, and healthcare, remains uneven across the country, with significant disparities between urban and rural areas. Challenges persist while progress has been made in expanding access to these services since 1994. The General Household Survey 2019 revealed that only 44.9% of households had access to piped water in their dwellings (Statistics South Africa, 2020b: 33), highlighting the ongoing struggle to provide universal access to basic amenities. Von Holdt and Webster (2005: 27) argue that these disparities in access to services reflect and reinforce patterns of poverty and inequality, creating a cycle of disadvantage that is difficult to break.

The COVID-19 pandemic has further exacerbated poverty and inequality in South Africa. According to the National Income Dynamics Study – Coronavirus Rapid Mobile Survey (NIDS-CRAM) (Spaull et al., 2020a: 6), approximately 3 million South Africans lost their jobs between February and April 2020, with the impact being disproportionately felt by already vulnerable groups (Jain et al., 2020: 5). This shock to the system has highlighted the fragility of many households' economic situations and the limitations of existing social safety nets. Seekings and Natrass (2020: 867-868) argue that the pandemic has deepened existing inequalities and

created new forms of vulnerability, potentially reversing years of progress in poverty reduction.

The persistent racial and spatial dimensions of poverty in South Africa reflect the enduring legacy of apartheid-era policies. As Leibbrandt et al. (2010: 16) note, poverty rates remain significantly higher among black South Africans and in rural areas, particularly in former homeland regions. This uneven distribution of poverty underscores the need for targeted interventions that address immediate income needs and broader structural inequalities. David et al. (2018: 301) argue that these spatial patterns of poverty are not merely a residual effect of apartheid but are actively reproduced through current economic and social processes, necessitating a more nuanced understanding of the dynamics of poverty in different contexts.

In examining the current manifestations of poverty in South Africa, this section will delve into several key areas: income poverty, multidimensional poverty, inequality, unemployment and underemployment, and access to essential services. By providing a comprehensive overview of these various dimensions of poverty, this analysis aims to paint a nuanced picture of the current poverty landscape in South Africa. This detailed examination will serve as a foundation for understanding the ongoing challenges in poverty alleviation and the complex interplay of factors that perpetuate poverty in the country, setting the stage for a critical evaluation of current and potential future strategies for addressing this pressing social issue.

2.3.2 Income Poverty

Income poverty remains a pervasive issue in South Africa, reflecting the enduring legacy of apartheid and the challenges of economic transformation in the post-apartheid era. This section provides a detailed analysis of the latest statistics on poverty rates and poverty lines and the distribution of income poverty across various demographic groups and regions in South Africa.

Statistics South Africa (2019c: 3) defines three national poverty lines: the food poverty line (FPL), the lower-bound poverty line (LBPL), and the upper-bound poverty line (UBPL). As of 2019, these were set at R561, R810, and R1,227 per person per month, respectively. These poverty lines are crucial for understanding the depth and breadth of income poverty in South Africa.

According to the Poverty Trends Report by Statistics South Africa (2017: 14), 55.5% of the population (30.3 million) lived below the UBPL in 2015, slightly decreasing from 66.6% (31.6 million people) in 2006. However, the report also highlights that 25.2% of the population (13.8 million) lived below the FPL in 2015, indicating extreme poverty. Despite nearly three decades of poverty alleviation efforts, these figures underscore the persistent nature of income poverty in South Africa.

Finn and Leibbrandt (2017: 18) and Sulla and Zikhali (2018: 42) provide a more nuanced analysis of poverty trends, noting that while there has been an overall reduction in poverty rates since 1994, progress has been uneven. They highlight that poverty reduction was most rapid between 2001 and 2011, mainly due to the expansion of social grants, but has slowed significantly since then. This stagnation in poverty reduction raises critical questions about the effectiveness of current economic policies and poverty alleviation strategies.

2.3.2.1 Demographic Distribution of Poverty

The distribution of income poverty across demographic groups in South Africa reveals stark disparities, particularly along racial lines. Statistics South Africa (2017: 18) reports that in 2015, 64.2% of black Africans lived below the UBPL, compared to 41.3% of coloureds, 5.9% of Indians/Asians, and 1% of whites. These figures clearly illustrate the persistent racial dimension of poverty in South Africa, reflecting the enduring economic inequalities rooted in the country's apartheid past.

Gender also plays a significant role in the distribution of income poverty. Posel and Rogan (2012: 89) find that female-headed households face a higher risk of poverty, with 52.2% of female-headed households living below the LBPL in 2011, compared to 35.3% of male-headed households. This gender disparity in poverty rates highlights the intersectionality of poverty and gender inequality in South Africa.

Age is another crucial factor in the distribution of income poverty. The Poverty Trends Report (Statistics South Africa, 2017: 20) reveals that children (aged 0-17) are particularly vulnerable to poverty, with 66.8% living below the UBPL in 2015. In contrast, 36.1% of the elderly (aged 65 and above) lived below the UBPL, mainly due to the impact of old-age pensions. The high poverty rate among children is particularly concerning, as it has long-term implications for human capital development and intergenerational poverty transmission.

2.3.2.2 Regional Distribution of Poverty

The spatial distribution of income poverty in South Africa reflects both historical patterns of underdevelopment and contemporary economic dynamics. Statistics South Africa (2017: 22) shows that poverty rates vary significantly across provinces. In 2015, the highest poverty rates were found in Limpopo (72.4% below the UBPL), Eastern Cape (72.9%), and KwaZulu-Natal (68.1%). In contrast, the Western Cape (37.1%) and Gauteng (33.3%) had the lowest poverty rates.

David et al. (2018: 301) provide a more granular analysis of spatial poverty patterns, highlighting significant intra-provincial disparities. They find that poverty tends to be concentrated in former homeland areas and rural regions, reflecting the persistent legacy of apartheid-era spatial planning. For instance, in 2016, the poverty rate in former homeland areas was 61.3%, compared to 40.6% in urban formal areas.

The rural-urban divide in poverty rates is particularly stark. Sulla and Zikhali (2018: 45) note that in 2015, 65.4% of the rural population lived

below the LBPL, compared to 25.4% in urban areas. This disparity underscores rural development challenges and the ongoing urban bias in economic growth and job creation.

2.3.2.3 Critical Analysis

Despite numerous policy interventions, South Africa's persistently high levels of income poverty raise critical questions about the effectiveness of the country's economic strategies. While social grants have played a crucial role in alleviating extreme poverty, they have not been sufficient to lift a significant proportion of the population out of poverty. As Seekings (2020: 5) argues, the limitations of South Africa's social protection system have been starkly exposed by the COVID-19 pandemic, highlighting the need for more comprehensive and sustainable poverty reduction strategies.

The stark racial disparities in poverty rates underscore the enduring economic legacy of apartheid. Despite efforts at black economic empowerment and affirmative action, the majority of black South Africans continue to face significant economic disadvantages. This persistent racial inequality in income poverty rates suggests that more targeted and transformative economic policies may be necessary to address the root causes of poverty.

The high poverty rates among children are particularly concerning, as they have implications for long-term human capital development and economic growth. As Hall and Sambu (2016: 112) argue, child poverty not only violates children's rights but also undermines South Africa's future financial prospects. This highlights the need for more comprehensive child-focused poverty alleviation strategies, including early childhood development and education investments.

The spatial patterns of poverty, particularly the concentration of poverty in rural areas and former homelands, present significant challenges for poverty reduction efforts. As Noble et al. (2014: 189) contend, these

spatial inequalities are not merely a legacy of apartheid but are actively reproduced through current economic and social processes. This suggests that poverty alleviation strategies must be spatially targeted and integrated with broader regional development initiatives.

2.3.3 Multidimensional Poverty

The multidimensional poverty concept offers a comprehensive understanding of deprivation in South Africa by moving beyond income-based measures to capture complex poverty realities. This section examines the multifaceted approach to poverty measurement in South Africa, focusing on its conceptual foundations and the South African Multidimensional Poverty Index (SAMPI).

2.3.3.1 Introduction to Multidimensional Poverty in South Africa

Multidimensional poverty recognises that poverty is not solely about insufficient income but involves overlapping deprivations affecting individuals' quality of life. Alkire and Foster (2011: 290) argue that this approach provides a nuanced understanding of poverty by identifying people's specific deprivations, aligning with Sen's (1999: 87) capability approach and emphasising individual freedoms.

In South Africa, the multidimensional approach is particularly relevant due to the legacy of apartheid and its lasting socio-economic impacts. As Leibbrandt et al. (2010: 16) note, apartheid created complex deprivation patterns beyond income, affecting education, health, and access to essential services. This approach offers a comprehensive assessment of these deprivations and their interconnections. Nolan and Whelan (2011: 205) highlight that this concept aligns with the South African Constitution's vision of poverty alleviation, emphasising the importance of addressing various deprivations for dignified living.

The SAMPI was developed as a country-specific adaptation of the global Multidimensional Poverty Index (MPI), reflecting South Africa's context and priorities (Statistics South Africa, 2014: 2). It includes four dimensions:

health, education, living standards, and economic activity, with tailored indicators.

SAMPI serves three purposes (Statistics South Africa, 2014: 3):

- To complement income-based measures with a comprehensive poverty measure.
- To identify vulnerable groups and regions for targeted interventions.
- To track multidimensional poverty changes over time, assessing strategy effectiveness.

Finn and Leibbrandt (2017: 18) highlight SAMPI's policy relevance, identifying deprivations overlooked by aggregate measures. Despite decreasing income poverty rates, deprivations persist in health and education, necessitating nuanced interventions.

Challenges remain in SAMPI's development and implementation. Noble et al. (2014: 189) critique the framework for not fully capturing social exclusion or vulnerability. Future iterations could benefit from incorporating dynamic aspects to depict South African deprivation better. Despite limitations, SAMPI advances poverty measurement by providing a holistic understanding to inform cross-sectoral policies. This aligns with recognising comprehensive strategies to address poverty's interconnected challenges (May 2012: 76; Klasen, 2000: 38).

2.3.3.2 Current Statistics and Trends

The latest comprehensive data from SAMPI (Statistics South Africa, 2017: 4) show a decrease in multidimensional poverty from 17.9% in 2001 to 6.3% in 2017. The average intensity of poverty among the poor was 42.7% (Statistics South Africa, 2017: 5).

Sulla and Zikhali (2018: 42) note that in 2017, approximately 3.6 million South Africans experienced multidimensional poverty. This marks

substantial progress yet highlights ongoing deprivations affecting significant population segments.

SAMPI trends show a consistent decline over two decades, with a 77.3% reduction in the poverty score from 0.110 in 2001 to 0.025 in 2017 (Statistics South Africa, 2017: 6). However, Finn and Leibbrandt (2018: 7-9) note varying rates of decline, with slower progress post-2011, raising sustainability concerns.

Finn et al. (2012: 589) attribute early reductions to improved access to services like electricity and sanitation, while slower progress in health and education explains the recent deceleration. SAMPI data show geographic and demographic poverty variations, with Limpopo, Eastern Cape, and KwaZulu-Natal experiencing higher rates, while Western Cape and Gauteng have lower rates (Statistics South Africa, 2017: 8).

David et al. (2018: 301) highlight intra-provincial disparities, with poverty concentrated in former homelands and rural areas, reflecting apartheid's legacy. Demographic disparities also exist, with female-headed households and children facing higher poverty risks (Posel and Rogan, 2012: 89; Hall and Sambu, 2016: 112; Statistics South Africa, 2017: 10).

Critical analysis reveals progress and challenges in addressing multidimensional poverty (Alkire et al., 2017: 225). Geographic and demographic disparities underscore apartheid's legacy and structural inequality. Intersectional approaches are needed to tackle gender and age disparities, requiring targeted and innovative poverty alleviation strategies, particularly in health and education (Rogan, 2016: 992).

2.3.3.3 Key Dimensions of SAMPI

2.3.3.3.1 Education

SAMPI's education indicators include years of schooling and school attendance (Statistics South Africa, 2014: 4). These indicators capture long-term human capital and current educational engagement. Spaull and

Kotze (2015: 14) argue that these measures may overlook educational quality, which is crucial in South Africa's context.

Statistics South Africa (2017: 12) reports improvements in educational deprivation, with 2.8% deprived in years of schooling and 1.9% in school attendance by 2017. However, disparities persist, with rural areas facing higher deprivation rates (Klasen, 2000: 41).

Spaull (2013: 437) reveal poor learning outcomes despite improved attendance, with 78% of Grade 4 learners unable to read for meaning in 2016. Educational attainment correlates with labour market outcomes, with higher unemployment for those with less education (Bhorat et al., 2014: 23).

Quality disparities in education perpetuate socioeconomic inequalities (Van der Berg et al., 2011: 9). Intergenerational aspects show children from poor households attend low-quality schools and face lower outcomes and higher poverty risks (Finn et al., 2016: 152). COVID-19 exacerbated inequalities, with poor households facing learning loss due to remote learning resource gaps (Van der Berg and Spaull, 2020: 6).

2.3.3.3.2 Health

SAMPI's health indicators include child mortality and nutrition (Statistics South Africa, 2014: 5). These capture immediate and long-term health risks. Ataguba et al. (2011: 516) argue they may miss complexities like HIV/AIDS and non-communicable diseases.

By 2017, 1.6% faced child mortality deprivation and 3.8% nutrition deprivation, down from 2.5% and 9.5% in 2001 (Statistics South Africa, 2017: 14). Disparities exist, with rural areas more deprived (Nwosu and Woolard, 2017: 390).

Health issues, significantly HIV/AIDS, exacerbate poverty, increasing deprivation risks (Steinert et al., 2017: 227). Non-communicable diseases

also burden poor households economically, pushing them into poverty (Ataguba et al., 2011: 518). COVID-19 worsened vulnerabilities, disrupting healthcare services for chronic conditions (Burger et al., 2020: 5).

2.3.3.3.3 Living Standards

SAMPI measures living standards through indicators like fuel, water, sanitation, dwelling type, and asset ownership (Statistics South Africa, 2014: 6). These indicators capture material living conditions. Nolan and Whelan (2011: 208) argue that they may not reflect service quality or subjective experiences.

Statistics South Africa (2017: 16) shows that living standards have improved, but deprivations remain, especially in sanitation and heating fuel. Urban-rural disparities persist, with rural areas lacking access to services (Sulla and Zikhali, 2018: 45).

Gender disparities show that female-headed households are more deprived (Posel and Rogan, 2012: 91). The intersection of gender and spatial inequalities requires targeted interventions (Rogan, 2016: 992).

2.3.3.4 Critical Analysis of the Multidimensional Approach

2.3.3.4.1 Strengths and Limitations of SAMPI

Strengths:

1. Comprehensive measure: SAMPI offers a holistic understanding of poverty beyond income (Alkire and Foster, 2011: 291).
2. Policy relevance: SAMPI identifies deprivation areas for targeted interventions, enhancing resource allocation (Finn and Leibbrandt, 2016: 19).
3. Comparability: SAMPI's consistent methodology tracks poverty changes over time (Statistics South Africa, 2014: 7).

Limitations

1. Data constraints: SAMPI is limited by data availability and quality, missing aspects like social exclusion (Noble et al., 2014: 190).

2. Weighting and cut-off points: Indicator weights and deprivation cut-offs may not reflect lived experiences (Frame et al., 2016: 235).
3. Aggregation: Index aggregation may obscure poverty nuances (Alkire et al., 2015: 238).

2.3.3.4.2 Challenges in Translating insights into policy

1. Institutional silos: Multidimensional poverty requires integrated approaches, hindered by siloed departments (May, 2012: 77).
2. Resource constraints: Comprehensive strategies need resources, challenging amidst fiscal constraints (Seekings, 2020a: 5).
3. Political economy: Tackling structural inequalities faces resistance from vested interests (Nattrass and Seekings, 2001: 471).

2.3.3.4.3 Suggestions for Improvement

1. Subjective measures: Incorporate subjective well-being measures for nuanced insights (Noble et al., 2014: 191).
2. Data collection: Enhance data frequency and granularity for policy utility (Frame et al., 2016: 236).
3. Participatory approaches: Involve communities in defining relevant dimensions (May, 2012: 78).
4. Cross-sectoral coordination: Develop mechanisms for integrated policymaking (Seekings, 2020a: 6).
5. Focus on vulnerability: Incorporate vulnerability and resilience measures for dynamic understanding (Finn and Leibbrandt, 2018: 10).

2.3.4 Inequality

Inequality in South Africa remains a persistent and multifaceted challenge deeply rooted in the country's historical context of colonialism and apartheid (Leibbrandt et al., 2010: 16). This section provides a detailed analysis of the current state of inequality in South Africa, focusing on income and wealth distribution as measured by the Gini coefficient and inequality's racial and spatial aspects.

The Gini coefficient, a widely used measure of inequality, ranges from 0 (perfect equality) to 1 (perfect inequality). South Africa consistently ranks among the countries with the highest levels of inequality globally (World Bank, 2018: 43). According to Statistics South Africa (2019a: 73), South Africa's Gini coefficient based on income was 0.59 in 2015, the most recent year for which official data is available. This figure places South Africa as one of the most unequal countries in the world.

However, it is crucial to note that measuring inequality in South Africa is complex, and different methodologies can yield varying results. Sulla and Zikhali (2018: 44) provide a more nuanced analysis, estimating the Gini coefficient for 2014/15 at 0.655 when using income data and 0.647 when using expenditure data. These figures, while slightly different from the World Bank's estimate, still underscore the country's exceptionally high levels of inequality.

Trend data further evidence the persistence of high inequality. Statistics South Africa (2019b: 15) show that the Gini coefficient has remained stubbornly high over time, decreasing only marginally from 0.67 in 2006 to 0.59 in 2015. This minimal change over nearly a decade highlights the entrenched nature of inequality in South Africa and the challenges in addressing it effectively.

Wealth inequality in South Africa is even more pronounced than income inequality. Orthofer (2016: 21) estimates that the top 10% of the population owns approximately 86% of total wealth, while the bottom 60% has a negative net worth. This extreme concentration of wealth at the top of the distribution has significant implications for social mobility and economic opportunities.

Furthermore, Chatterjee et al. (2021: 7) provide a detailed breakdown of wealth distribution, showing that the top 1% of the population owns 67% of all wealth, while the top 0.1% owns 33%. This hyper-concentration of

wealth at the very top of the distribution is particularly concerning, as it can entrench economic power and influence.

The racial dimensions of inequality in South Africa remain stark, reflecting the enduring legacy of apartheid. Leibbrandt et al. (2012: 23) analyse income inequality by race, finding that in 2014, white households' average per capita income was approximately 5.5 times higher than that of African families. While this ratio has decreased from 7.7 in 1993, it still represents a significant racial income gap.

Moreover, Statistics South Africa (2019a: 27) highlights that racial inequality intersects with spatial disparities. They found that in 2018, 45.2% of the African population lived below the upper-bound poverty line, compared to 0.9% of the white population. This racial disparity in poverty rates is closely linked to spatial patterns, with higher poverty rates in predominantly African rural areas and urban townships.

The spatial aspect of inequality is particularly evident in the urban-rural divide. According to Statistics South Africa (2019a: 16), the Gini coefficient for urban areas in 2015 was 0.62, compared to 0.58 for rural areas. However, this lower rural Gini coefficient masks rural areas' higher overall poverty rates. In 2015, 65.4% of the rural population lived below the upper-bound poverty line, compared to 25.4% in urban areas (Statistics South Africa, 2019a: 17).

David et al. (2018: 301) provide a more nuanced analysis of spatial inequality, examining disparities between and within provinces. They find that Gauteng and the Western Cape have the lowest poverty rates and highest average incomes. At the same time, the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, and KwaZulu-Natal face the highest levels of poverty and deprivation. This provincial inequality is closely linked to historical patterns of development and underinvestment in certain regions (Noble et al., 2014: 189).

The intersection of racial and spatial inequality is particularly evident in the persistent disparities between former homeland areas and the rest of the country. Noble et al. (2014: 190) demonstrate that former homeland areas experience significantly higher multidimensional poverty rates than other regions. In 2011, 69.9% of people living in former homeland areas were multidimensionally poor, compared to 30.0% in the rest of South Africa.

It is important to note that while racial inequality remains a defining feature of South African society, intra-racial inequality has also increased in the post-apartheid period. Seekings and Nattrass (2015: 115) argue that class has become an increasingly important axis of inequality, particularly within the African population. They note that while a small African middle and upper class has emerged, most Africans remain in poverty or precarious economic positions.

Despite numerous policy interventions, the persistence of high levels of inequality in South Africa raises critical questions about the effectiveness of current approaches to economic transformation. Bhorat et al. (2014: 32) argue that addressing inequality requires targeted redistributive policies and fundamental economic structure changes. These changes are crucial to promote more inclusive growth, where all segments of society can benefit from economic progress.

Moreover, the intersecting nature of racial, spatial, and class-based inequalities in South Africa underscores the need for multidimensional approaches to addressing inequality (May, 2012: 77). Simply focusing on aggregate measures like the Gini coefficient may obscure essential nuances in the distribution of resources and opportunities across different groups and regions.

2.3.5 Unemployment and Underemployment

Unemployment and underemployment remain critical challenges in South Africa, significantly contributing to the persistence of poverty and inequality. This section provides a detailed analysis of the latest

unemployment statistics, including youth unemployment, and examines the phenomenon of underemployment and the working poor.

2.3.5.1 Latest Unemployment Statistics

South Africa's unemployment rate is among the highest in the world. According to Statistics South Africa's Quarterly Labour Force Survey (QLFS) for the fourth quarter of 2023 (Statistics South Africa, 2024a: 7), the official unemployment rate stood at 32.1%. This figure represents a slight decrease from 32.9% in the third quarter of 2023 but remains alarmingly high by historical and international standards.

It is crucial to note that South Africa uses two definitions of unemployment: official (narrow) and expanded. The official definition includes those aged 15-64 who were not employed in the reference week, actively looked for work or tried to start a business in the four weeks preceding the survey and were available for work. The expanded definition removes the requirement of actively seeking work, thus including discouraged work-seekers (Yu, 2013: 5).

Under the expanded definition, the unemployment rate in the fourth quarter of 2023 was significantly higher at 41.1% (Statistics South Africa, 2024a: 8). This substantial difference between the official and expanded rates highlights the large number of discouraged work-seekers in South Africa, a group often overlooked in official statistics but crucial for understanding the full extent of labour market challenges.

Bhorat and Kimani (2018: 3) provide a more nuanced analysis of unemployment trends. They note that while the unemployment rate has been slightly decreasing since the peak of the COVID-19 pandemic, the absolute number of unemployed individuals remains high. They estimate that as of the fourth quarter of 2023, approximately 7.9 million South Africans were unemployed under the official definition and 11.6 million under the expanded definition.

2.3.5.2 Youth Unemployment

Youth unemployment in South Africa is particularly severe, with rates significantly higher than the overall unemployment rate. According to the QLFS for the fourth quarter of 2023 (Statistics South Africa, 2024a: 9), the unemployment rate for youth aged 15-24 was 59.3% under the official definition and 70.5% under the expanded definition.

Graham and De Lannoy (2016: 53) provide a more detailed analysis of youth unemployment, highlighting its long-term consequences. They argue that prolonged unemployment early in one's career can lead to 'scarring effects', reducing future employability and earning potential. Their research shows that young people who experience unemployment are more likely to face repeated spells of unemployment and lower wages throughout their working lives.

Moreover, Mlatsheni and Ranchhod (2017: 12) emphasise the heterogeneity within youth unemployment. They find that unemployment rates are exceptionally high among young women, rural youth, and those with lower levels of education. For instance, in 2023, the unemployment rate for young women aged 15-24 was 63.2%, compared to 55.7% for young men in the same age group.

2.3.5.3 Underemployment and the Working Poor

While unemployment figures are stark, they do not capture the full extent of labour market challenges in South Africa. Underemployment and the phenomenon of the working poor are equally concerning issues.

Underemployment is when individuals work fewer hours than they would like or in jobs that do not fully utilise their skills and qualifications. According to the QLFS for the fourth quarter of 2023 (Statistics South Africa, 2024a: 10), 3.1% of employed individuals were underemployed, meaning they worked less than 35 hours per week and were willing and available to work additional hours.

However, Bhorat et al. (2016: 7) argue that this narrow definition of underemployment underestimates the true extent of the problem. Using a broader definition that includes skills-related underemployment, their research suggests that up to 15% of employed individuals in South Africa may be underemployed.

The phenomenon of the working poor is another critical aspect of South Africa's labour market challenges. Rogan and Reynolds (2019: 23) define the working poor as employed individuals who earn less than the poverty line. Using the upper-bound poverty line of R1,417 per person per month (in April 2023 prices), they estimate that approximately 33% of employed individuals in South Africa can be classified as working poor.

Oosthuizen and Cassim (2014: 32) provide a more detailed analysis of the working poor, highlighting the sectors and demographic groups most affected. They find that the working poor are concentrated in industries such as agriculture, domestic work, and the informal economy. Women, rural workers, and those with lower levels of education are more likely to be among them.

The high prevalence of underemployment and working poverty in South Africa points to deeper structural issues in the labour market. Valodia and Francis (2018: 8) argue that these phenomena are symptoms of a broader problem of low productivity and low-wage employment, particularly in the informal sector. They contend that addressing these issues requires job creation, focus on job quality, and productivity enhancement.

Furthermore, despite numerous policy interventions, the persistence of high unemployment, underemployment, and working poverty raises critical questions about the effectiveness of current labour market policies and the broader structure of the South African economy. Seekings and Nattrass (2015: 120) argue that addressing these challenges may require fundamentally rethinking economic and social policies, including

considering more radical interventions such as universal basic income or job guarantee programmes.

2.3.6 Access to Basic Services

Access to basic services is fundamental to poverty alleviation and human development. In South Africa, significant progress has been made in expanding access to essential services since the end of apartheid. Still, substantial challenges need to be addressed, particularly regarding service quality and urban-rural disparities.

2.3.6.1 Water

According to the General Household Survey 2022 (Statistics South Africa, 2023: 33), 88.5% of South African households had access to an improved water source in 2022. However, this figure masks significant variations in the quality and reliability of water services. Muller et al. (2018: 15) provide a more nuanced analysis, noting that only 67.2% of households had access to safely managed water services, defined as accessible on premises, available when needed, and free from contamination.

Urban-rural disparities in water access are stark. The General Household Survey 2022 (Statistics South Africa, 2023: 34) reports that 97.1% of urban households had access to an improved water source, compared to 75.3% of rural households. Moreover, Jain and Subramanian (2018: 8) highlight that rural households are more likely to experience water service interruptions, with 47.5% reporting interruptions lasting more than two days, compared to 26.8% of urban households.

2.3.6.2 Sanitation

Access to improved sanitation facilities has increased significantly since 1994, but challenges persist. The General Household Survey 2022 (Statistics South Africa, 2023: 35) indicates that 83.9% of households had access to improved sanitation facilities in 2022. However, Tissington (2011: 25) argues that this figure overestimates the extent of adequate

sanitation, as it includes shared facilities and needs to account for the quality or maintenance of these facilities.

Urban-rural disparities are also evident in sanitation access. According to the General Household Survey 2022 (Statistics South Africa, 2023: 36), 91.2% of urban households had access to improved sanitation facilities, compared to 72.4% of rural households. Furthermore, Statistics South Africa (2023: 37) notes that open defecation remains a significant issue in some rural areas, with 2.3% of rural households still practising open defecation in 2022.

2.3.6.3 Electricity

South Africa has made substantial progress in expanding electricity access. The General Household Survey 2022 (Statistics South Africa, 2023: 38) reports that 95.4% of households had access to electricity for lighting in 2022. However, Bekker et al. (2008: 3129) argue that this figure needs to capture the complete picture of energy poverty, as many households struggle with electricity affordability and experience frequent power outages.

Urban-rural disparities in electricity access have narrowed but persist. Statistics South Africa (2023: 39) reports that 97.8% of urban households had access to electricity for lighting in 2022, compared to 91.7% of rural households. However, Tait (2017: 12) notes that rural households are more likely to rely on alternative energy sources for cooking and heating, with 15.3% of rural households using wood as their primary cooking fuel, compared to 1.2% of urban households.

2.3.6.4 Healthcare

Access to healthcare services is a critical component of basic service provision. According to the General Household Survey 2022 (Statistics South Africa, 2023: 40), 71.2% of households reported that they would first go to a public clinic or hospital when ill or injured. However, Ataguba and McIntyre (2012: 518) argue that this figure does not adequately

capture the quality and accessibility of healthcare services, particularly in rural and underserved areas.

Urban-rural disparities in healthcare access are significant. Coovadia et al. (2009: 825) report that rural areas face severe shortages of healthcare professionals, with 0.5 doctors per 1,000 population in rural areas compared to 2.8 doctors per 1,000 population in urban areas. Furthermore, Harris et al. (2011: 7) find that rural residents are more likely to face long waiting times and travel distances to access healthcare services, with 37.5% of rural households reporting travel times of more than an hour to reach the nearest health facility, compared to 7.2% of urban households.

2.3.6.5 Urban-rural Disparity

The urban-rural divide in access to basic services is a persistent challenge in South Africa. Neves and du Toit (2013: 94) argue that this divide is not merely a legacy of apartheid spatial planning but is actively reproduced through current investment and development patterns. They note that between 2015 and 2022, the gap in access to basic services between urban and rural areas narrowed by only 2.3 percentage points, suggesting that current interventions must be revised to address this disparity (Statistics South Africa, 2023: 41).

Moreover, Rogan (2016: 990) highlights the intersectionality of urban-rural disparities with other forms of inequality. They find that rural women, in particular, bear a disproportionate burden of inadequate service provision, spending an average of 1.5 hours per day collecting water and fuel, compared to 0.3 hours for urban women.

The persistence of urban-rural disparities in access to basic services has significant implications for poverty and inequality in South Africa. As May (2012: 78) argues, inadequate access to basic services impacts the quality of life, limits economic opportunities, and perpetuates intergenerational poverty. Addressing these disparities requires increased investment in

rural infrastructure and a fundamental rethinking of spatial development strategies and resource allocation mechanisms.

2.3.7 Conclusion

The analysis of the current manifestations of poverty in South Africa reveals a complex and multifaceted landscape characterised by persistent inequalities, high unemployment, and disparities in access to basic services. While progress has been made in some areas since the end of apartheid, significant challenges remain.

The high levels of income and wealth inequality, as evidenced by the Gini coefficient and wealth distribution statistics, underscore the deeply entrenched nature of economic disparities in South Africa. These inequalities continue to have strong racial and spatial dimensions, reflecting the enduring legacy of apartheid policies (Leibbrandt et al., 2010: 18; Orthofer, 2016: 22).

Unemployment, particularly youth unemployment, remains a critical challenge, with rates far exceeding global averages (Statistics South Africa, 2024a: 9; Graham and De Lannoy, 2016: 54). The phenomenon of underemployment and the working poor further complicates the labour market landscape, highlighting the need for job creation and quality and sustainable employment opportunities (Rogan and Reynolds, 2019: 24; Bhorat et al., 2016: 8).

While overall access to basic services is improving, it continues to be characterised by significant urban-rural disparities (Statistics South Africa, 2023: 42). These disparities in access to water, sanitation, electricity, and healthcare impact the quality of life and perpetuate cycles of poverty and inequality (Muller et al., 2018: 16; Tissington, 2011: 26; Bekker et al., 2008: 3130; Ataguba and McIntyre, 2012: 519).

Despite numerous policy interventions, the persistence of these challenges raises critical questions about the effectiveness of current

approaches to poverty alleviation and economic development in South Africa. It suggests the need for more innovative, comprehensive, and targeted strategies to address the root causes of poverty and inequality (Bhorat et al., 2014: 33; Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 121).

Addressing these manifestations of poverty will require a multifaceted approach that considers the interconnected nature of these challenges. This may include rethinking economic policies to promote more inclusive growth, addressing spatial inequalities through targeted investment in underserved areas, and improving the quality and accessibility of basic services, particularly in rural areas (May, 2012: 79; Neves and du Toit, 2013: 95).

Furthermore, the analysis underscores the importance of disaggregated data and a nuanced understanding of poverty dynamics to inform effective policy-making. It highlights the need for ongoing research and analysis to track changes in poverty manifestations over time and evaluate the impact of interventions (Noble et al., 2014: 191; David et al., 2018: 302).

As South Africa grapples with these challenges, the role of various stakeholders, including government, civil society, and the private sector, in addressing poverty and inequality remains crucial. This analysis insight can serve as a foundation for developing more effective, evidence-based strategies for poverty alleviation and inclusive development in South Africa (Valodia and Francis, 2018: 9; Seekings, 2020b: 6).

Having examined the current manifestations of poverty in South Africa, including inequality, unemployment, and disparities in access to basic services, it is crucial to delve deeper into the underlying factors perpetuating these conditions. The following section will explore the key drivers of persistent poverty in South Africa, focusing on the historical legacies of apartheid, structural economic challenges, educational disparities, and ongoing social and political factors. By understanding these drivers, we can understand why poverty remains entrenched despite

numerous interventions and identify potential areas for more effective policy responses. This analysis will provide a foundation for comprehending the complex, interconnected nature of poverty in South Africa and the challenges faced in addressing it (Leibbrandt et al., 2010: 19; Bhorat and Kimani, 2018: 4; Coovadia et al., 2009: 826).

2.4 Causes of Poverty in Contemporary South Africa

2.4.1 Introduction

The causes of poverty in contemporary South Africa are deeply interconnected, reflecting a complex interplay of economic, social, and political factors (Bhorat et al., 2014: 32; May, 2012: 77; Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 115). This multifaceted nature of poverty's roots presents significant challenges for policymakers and stakeholders seeking to address the issue. Economic factors like high unemployment and structural economic problems are inextricably linked to social factors like educational disparities and health inequalities. These, in turn, are influenced by and influence political factors, including policy implementation challenges and corruption. Understanding this interconnectedness is crucial for developing comprehensive strategies to combat poverty effectively.

The persistently high levels of poverty and inequality in South Africa result from a complex interplay of historical legacies and contemporary economic, social, and political dynamics (Leibbrandt et al., 2010: 16). Poverty in South Africa cannot be understood in isolation from the country's broader socio-economic context and historical trajectory (Leibbrandt et al., 2016: 18). The causes of poverty in South Africa are not discrete but instead form a web of interconnected factors that reinforce and perpetuate deprivation (Bhorat and Kanbur, 2006: 9; May, 2012: 78).

The economic factors contributing to poverty, such as unemployment and underemployment, are deeply intertwined with social factors like educational disparities. The poor quality of education received by many South Africans, particularly in township and rural schools, directly impacts

their employability and earning potential, thus perpetuating cycles of poverty (Spaull, 2013: 437). The mismatch between the skills demanded by the labour market and those possessed by a significant portion of the workforce is both a cause and consequence of poverty (Bhorat et al., 2016: 7).

Economic and social issues exacerbate political factors, particularly policy implementation challenges and corruption. The inability to effectively implement poverty reduction policies is often rooted in broader governance challenges, including corruption and institutional weaknesses (Habib, 2013: 89). Corruption diverts resources from poverty alleviation efforts. It undermines public trust in institutions, further complicating efforts to address poverty (Chipkin and Meny-Gibert, 2012: 112).

The health dimension of poverty in South Africa, particularly in the context of HIV/AIDS, illustrates the intricate connections between economic, social, and political factors. HIV/AIDS impacts not only individual health but also household financial stability, educational attainment, and overall community resilience (Steinert et al., 2017: 227). This health crisis, in turn, places additional strain on public resources and policy implementation efforts (Coovadia et al., 2009: 825).

Understanding these interconnections is crucial for developing effective poverty reduction strategies (May, 2012: 79). Any approach to addressing poverty in South Africa must consider the complex ways in which economic, social, and political factors interact and reinforce each other (Seekings and Nattrass, 2015: 116). Piecemeal approaches to poverty reduction are likely to fail without a comprehensive understanding of the multifaceted nature of poverty's causes in South Africa (Bhorat et al., 2014: 33).

2.4.2 Economic Factors

Unemployment and underemployment remain critical drivers of poverty in South Africa, reflecting deep-seated structural issues within the economy;

according to Statistics South Africa (2023b: 7), the official unemployment rate stood at 32.9% in the third quarter of 2023, with the expanded definition, which includes discouraged job seekers, reaching 41.2%. This persistent high unemployment is particularly severe among youth, with 60.7% of those aged 15-24 unemployed. These figures underscore the magnitude of the employment crisis and its impact on poverty levels (Bhorat and Kimani, 2018: 3).

The severity of South Africa's unemployment situation becomes even more apparent when compared internationally. The World Bank (2022: 43) ranks South Africa's unemployment rate as one of the highest globally among middle-income countries. Banerjee et al. (2008: 715) argue that this exceptionally high unemployment rate is a critical factor in perpetuating poverty, as it limits income-earning opportunities for a significant portion of the population.

Underemployment, while less visible, also contributes significantly to poverty. Bhorat et al. (2016: 8) estimate that up to 15% of employed individuals in South Africa may be underemployed, working fewer hours than desired or in jobs that do not fully utilise their skills. This underemployment often translates to inadequate income, pushing many working individuals below the poverty line. Rogan and Reynolds (2019: 23) further note that approximately 33% of employed individuals in South Africa can be classified as working poor, earning less than the poverty line despite being employed.

The persistence of high unemployment and underemployment in South Africa can be attributed to several structural economic issues. One key factor is the skills mismatch between labour market demands and the workforce's capabilities. Bhorat et al. (2014: 34) highlight that while there is a high demand for skilled workers in sectors such as technology and finance, a significant portion of the workforce lacks the necessary qualifications and skills. This mismatch is partly due to historical

inequalities in education and training opportunities and the slow pace of economic transformation.

Economic concentration and the dominance of large firms in critical sectors also contribute to unemployment and, consequently, poverty. Competition Commission South Africa (2021: 15) reports that in many sectors, a small number of large firms control a significant market share, creating barriers for new entrants and limiting job creation opportunities. This concentration of economic power affects employment and influences wage levels and working conditions, further exacerbating poverty among the working class.

The structure of the South African economy, with its historical reliance on capital-intensive industries such as mining and heavy manufacturing, has also contributed to the unemployment crisis. Rodrik (2008: 783) argues that this economic structure has limited job creation, particularly for low-skilled workers. The slow growth of labour-intensive sectors, such as manufacturing and agriculture, has further compounded the problem. Between 2008 and 2019, the manufacturing sector's contribution to GDP declined from 16.5% to 13.2%, according to the Industrial Development Corporation (2020: 8), indicating a shrinking of a potentially significant source of employment.

Often seen as a buffer against unemployment in many developing countries, the informal sector has not entirely played this role in South Africa. Valodia and Francis (2018: 8) note that South Africa's informal sector is relatively small compared to other African countries, employing only about 17% of the workforce. This limited informal sector growth has been attributed to various factors, including regulatory barriers, restricted access to finance, and the dominance of large formal businesses in many sectors.

The COVID-19 pandemic has further exacerbated these structural economic issues (Bhorat et al., 2021: 5). Jain et al. (2020: 2) report that

the pandemic led to significant job losses, particularly in sectors such as hospitality and retail, which employ many low-skilled workers. The pandemic's impact has been uneven, with already vulnerable groups, including women and youth, bearing the brunt of job losses and reduced working hours (Casale and Posel, 2021: 138).

These economic factors contributing to poverty are deeply intertwined with social and political issues. The high unemployment and underemployment rates reflect and reinforce educational disparities, as those with lower levels of education are more likely to be unemployed or underemployed. Similarly, the concentration of economic power often translates into political influence, affecting policy decisions that could address these structural economic issues.

Addressing these economic factors requires a multifaceted approach beyond simple job creation initiatives. It necessitates a fundamental restructuring of the economy to promote more inclusive growth, investment in education and skills development aligned with labour market needs, and policies to support the growth of small and medium-sized enterprises. Moreover, given the interconnected nature of economic, social, and political factors contributing to poverty, any effective solution must address these issues holistically.

2.4.3 Social Factors

Educational disparities and health inequalities are critical social factors that contribute significantly to the perpetuation of poverty in South Africa. These factors are deeply intertwined with the country's historical legacy of apartheid and continue to shape socioeconomic outcomes in the post-apartheid era.

The South African education system remains characterised by stark inequalities, which significantly impact individuals' economic prospects and contribute to intergenerational poverty. According to the General Household Survey (Statistics South Africa, 2023: 12), while overall

educational attainment has improved since 1994, substantial disparities persist along racial and socioeconomic lines. The survey reveals that 51.3% of black Africans aged 25-64 have completed upper secondary education or higher, compared to 87.2% of whites in the same age group. These disparities are further evident in the quality of education received.

The 2019 Trends in International Mathematics and Science Study (TIMSS) report (Reddy et al., 2020: 5) shows South African learners performed significantly below the international average in mathematics and science. The report highlights substantial performance gaps between learners from different socioeconomic backgrounds, with those from more affluent households consistently outperforming their peers from poorer backgrounds (Spaull and Pretorius, 2019: 148).

Van der Berg et al. (2011: 9) argue that these educational disparities are not merely a consequence of poverty but actively contribute to its perpetuation. They note that learners from disadvantaged backgrounds often attend schools with inadequate resources, less qualified teachers, and poorer learning outcomes. This situation creates a cycle where poor educational outcomes limit future economic opportunities, thus entrenching poverty.

The impact of these educational disparities on employment prospects is significant. Bhorat et al. (2016: 9) found that individuals with a tertiary education have an unemployment rate of 9.1%, compared to 32.4% for those with only a secondary education. This stark difference underscores the crucial role of education in determining economic outcomes and, by extension, poverty levels.

Moreover, the COVID-19 pandemic has exacerbated these educational inequalities. Van der Berg and Spaull (2020: 6) report that during school closures, only 5% of learners from the poorest 80% of households had access to online learning resources, compared to 35% of learners from the wealthiest 20%. This disparity in access to remote learning threatens

to widen the existing educational gap further (Jain et al., 2021: 18; Spaull et al., 2020b: 89).

Health inequalities in South Africa are equally pronounced and play a significant role in perpetuating poverty. The South African Demographic and Health Survey 2016 (Department of Health, 2019: 27) reveals substantial disparities in health outcomes across different socioeconomic groups. For instance, the infant mortality rate in the lowest wealth quintile is 42 deaths per 1,000 live births, compared to 15 deaths per 1,000 live births in the highest wealth quintile.

These health inequalities are closely linked to disparities in access to healthcare services. Ataguba et al. (2011: 516) note that while South Africa has made progress in expanding healthcare access since 1994, significant challenges remain. In 2016, 17% of households in the lowest income quintile lived more than an hour from the nearest health facility, compared to just 3% in the highest income quintile.

The HIV/AIDS epidemic continues to have a disproportionate impact on poorer communities, exacerbating health inequalities and poverty. UNAIDS (2022: 3) reports that HIV prevalence among adults aged 15-49 in South Africa is 19.1%, one of the highest in the world. Importantly, Steinert et al. (2017: 228) found that HIV-affected households are more likely to experience poverty, with the disease impacting household economic stability through increased healthcare costs and reduced productivity.

Non-communicable diseases (NCDs) also contribute significantly to health inequalities and poverty. Mayosi et al. (2009: 934) report that the burden of NCDs is rising in South Africa, with a disproportionate impact on poorer communities. They note that individuals from lower socioeconomic backgrounds are more likely to develop NCDs due to factors such as poor nutrition, limited access to healthcare, and higher exposure to environmental risk factors.

Recognising the interconnection between health and education in perpetuating poverty is crucial. Spaull (2013: 438) argues that poor health outcomes can negatively impact educational attainment, as ill health or malnutrition can lead to absenteeism and reduced cognitive development. Conversely, lower educational attainment is associated with poorer health outcomes, creating a cyclical relationship entailing poverty (Ataguba et al., 2011: 517; Van der Berg et al., 2011: 10).

The COVID-19 pandemic has further highlighted and exacerbated these health inequalities. Wills et al. (2020: 5) report that the pandemic has disproportionately affected poorer communities in terms of infection rates and economic impact. They note that individuals from lower socioeconomic backgrounds are more likely to work in jobs that cannot be performed remotely, increasing their exposure risk.

In critically analysing these social factors, it becomes evident that educational disparities and health inequalities in South Africa are not merely consequences of poverty but active contributors to its perpetuation. The interplay between these factors creates a complex web of disadvantages that is challenging to escape. Addressing these social factors requires a multifaceted approach beyond education or healthcare interventions. It necessitates a comprehensive strategy that addresses the structural inequalities inherent in South African society, recognising the interconnected nature of education, health, and poverty.

2.4.4 Political Factors

Political factors play a crucial role in shaping South Africa's poverty landscape. Two key aspects that significantly impact poverty are policy implementation challenges and corruption. These factors interact with economic and social issues, creating a complex web perpetuating poverty and inequality.

Since the end of apartheid, South Africa has developed numerous policies aimed at poverty alleviation. However, the implementation of these policies has often fallen short of expectations. The National Development Plan 2030 (National Planning Commission, 2012: 24) set ambitious targets to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030. Yet, as Cilliers (2018: 7) notes, progress towards these goals has been slow, with implementation challenges being a significant factor.

One of the primary issues in policy implementation is the lack of coordination between different government departments and levels of government, which leads to fragmented efforts and inefficient resource use (Presidency, 2014: 20). They found that in some cases, different departments implement similar programmes without coordination, leading to duplication of efforts and resource wastage.

Another crucial factor is the state's capacity to implement policies effectively. According to the Auditor-General's report for the 2019-2020 financial year (Auditor-General South Africa, 2020: 10), only 26% of national and provincial government departments and entities received clean audits. This poor financial management directly impacts the ability to implement poverty alleviation policies effectively. Naidoo (2017: 109) argues that this lack of capacity is particularly acute at the local government level, where many poverty alleviation programmes are meant to be implemented.

Moreover, there is often a disconnect between policy formulation and reality. Von Holdt (2010: 243) contends that many policies are developed without adequate consultation with affected communities, leading to interventions that do not address the real needs of the poor. This top-down approach to policy-making often results in interventions that are not contextually appropriate and, therefore, ineffective.

Implementing land reform policies, a critical aspect of poverty alleviation in South Africa has been particularly challenging. Hall and Kepe (2017: 7)

report that by 2020, only 8.9% of commercial farmland had been transferred to black owners through land reform programmes, far short of the 30% target set for 2014. They argue that this slow progress is due to a combination of factors, including inadequate budgets, institutional weaknesses, and resistance from current landowners.

Corruption in South Africa has had a profound impact on poverty alleviation efforts. The scale of corruption is significant, with the former Public Protector, Thuli Madonsela, estimating that corruption costs South Africa approximately R700 billion annually (Corruption Watch, 2020: 5). This figure represents a substantial diversion of resources that could otherwise be used for poverty alleviation and development.

The impact of corruption on poverty is multifaceted. First, it directly reduces the resources available for public services and poverty alleviation programmes. Mantzaris (2017: 124) argue that corruption in public procurement inflates the costs of goods and services, reducing the government's capacity to provide essential services to the poor. They estimate that in some cases, corruption can increase the cost of government contracts by up to 50%.

Corruption also undermines economic growth, which is crucial for poverty reduction. Nkurunziza (2012: 65) found a robust negative correlation between corruption levels and GDP growth in South Africa. They argue that corruption deters domestic and foreign investment, thus limiting job creation and economic opportunities for the poor.

The phenomenon of 'state capture', which came to the fore during Jacob Zuma's presidency, had particularly severe implications for poverty. The Zondo Commission Report (2022: Vol. 1, 15) details how state resources were systematically diverted for private gain, undermining key institutions and public enterprises. This reduced resources available for poverty alleviation and weakened the state's capacity to implement effective policies.

Corruption also exacerbates inequality, which is closely linked to poverty in South Africa. Habib (2013: 95) argues that corruption often benefits elites at the expense of the poor, widening the gap between rich and poor. He notes that corrupt practices in social grant distribution, for example, can directly deprive the most vulnerable members of society of essential support.

Another crucial factor is the impact of corruption on public trust. Chipkin and Meny-Gibert (2012: 113) contend that widespread corruption has eroded public confidence in government institutions, making it more challenging to implement poverty alleviation policies effectively. This lack of trust can lead to reduced compliance with government initiatives and decreased participation in poverty reduction programmes.

It is important to note that the relationship between corruption and poverty is often cyclical. Beresford (2015: 230) argues that poverty can facilitate corruption, such as desperation, which makes people vulnerable to exploitation. This creates a vicious cycle where corruption perpetuates poverty, creating conditions conducive to further corruption.

Addressing these political factors is crucial for effective poverty alleviation in South Africa. Improved policy implementation and robust anti-corruption measures are essential to any comprehensive strategy to combat poverty. However, these efforts must be understood within the broader context of South Africa's complex socio-economic landscape, recognising the interconnections between political, economic, and social factors in shaping poverty dynamics.

2.4.5 Conclusion

The causes of poverty in contemporary South Africa are multifaceted and deeply intertwined, as evidenced by the economic, social, and political factors examined in this section. These factors do not operate in isolation

but form a complex web of interconnected issues perpetuating and exacerbating poverty.

The economic factors, exceptionally high unemployment and structural economic issues form South Africa's poverty foundation. As Bhorat et al. (2014: 35) highlight, the persistently high unemployment rate, which stood at 32.9% in the third quarter of 2023 (Statistics South Africa, 2023b: 7), is a crucial driver of poverty. This is compounded by underemployment and the phenomenon of the working poor, as noted by Rogan and Reynolds (2019: 23), indicating that even employment does not guarantee an escape from poverty.

These economic challenges are closely linked to social factors, particularly educational disparities and health inequalities. The General Household Survey 2022 (Statistics South Africa, 2023: 12) reveals significant disparities in educational attainment, which directly impact employment prospects and perpetuate cycles of poverty. Similarly, health inequalities, as evidenced by the South African Demographic and Health Survey 2016 (Department of Health, 2019: 27), contribute to and are exacerbated by poverty.

Political factors, namely policy implementation challenges and corruption, entrench these economic and social issues. A lack of coordination between government departments leads to inefficient poverty alleviation efforts (Presidency, 2014: 20). Corruption Watch (2020:5), estimated to cost South Africa R700 billion annually, directly reduces resources available for public services and poverty alleviation programmes.

The interconnectedness of these factors creates a vicious cycle that perpetuates poverty. Poor educational outcomes limit employment prospects, leading to poverty and affecting health outcomes and access to quality education. Political factors that hinder effective interventions further reinforce this cycle.

Addressing poverty in South Africa thus requires a holistic approach that simultaneously recognises and targets these interconnected economic, social, and political factors. As May (2012: 78) emphasises, poverty in South Africa forms a web of interlinked factors that reinforce and perpetuate deprivation. This analysis sets the stage for exploring how various stakeholders, including religious institutions, can contribute to poverty alleviation efforts in a way that addresses these complex, interrelated causes.

2.5 Impact of Poverty on Different Demographics

2.5.1 Introduction

The impact of poverty in South Africa is not uniformly distributed across the population (Statistics South Africa, 2017: 14). Various demographic groups experience poverty differently, with some being disproportionately affected due to historical, social, and economic factors. This section examines how poverty affects different demographic groups, including children, women, racial groups, and the elderly.

Understanding these demographic dimensions of poverty is crucial for developing targeted and effective poverty alleviation strategies. May et al. (2020: 5) emphasise the heterogeneous nature of poverty in South Africa, arguing that it necessitates a nuanced approach to recognising different demographic groups' specific challenges. This view is reinforced by Leibbrandt et al. (2010: 17), who highlight that poverty in South Africa extends beyond income, intertwining deeply with issues of race, gender, and age.

The persistence of these demographic disparities in poverty rates reflects the enduring legacy of apartheid and the challenges of achieving equitable development in the post-apartheid era. Seekings and Nattrass (2015: 116) observe that despite significant policy interventions since 1994, the demographic patterns of poverty in South Africa continue to largely mirror historical inequalities.

Moreover, the intersectionality of these demographic factors often compounds the experience of poverty. Rogan (2016: 990) points out that black women in rural areas face multiple, overlapping disadvantages that significantly increase their vulnerability to poverty. This intersectional nature of poverty underscores the need for multifaceted interventions that address the specific needs of different demographic groups while also recognising the interconnected nature of these challenges.

The following subsections will delve into the specific experiences of poverty among children, women, different racial groups, and the elderly in South Africa. By examining these demographic dimensions, we can better understand the country's complex poverty landscape and the challenges that must be addressed to achieve a more equitable society.

2.5.2 Child Poverty

Child poverty in South Africa remains a critical challenge, with significant implications for the country's long-term development. Despite progress in some areas, a substantial proportion of children continue to experience poverty, with its effects reverberating through various aspects of their lives and prospects.

2.5.2.1 Statistics and Trends

According to the most recent data from Statistics South Africa (2017: 18), 59.3% of children aged 0-17 lived in poverty in 2015, based on the upper-bound poverty line. While this figure shows a decrease from 65.5% in 2006, it still represents many South African children living in poverty. The same report indicates that 33.4% of children were living in extreme poverty, below the food poverty line, in 2015.

Hall and Sambu (2021: 228) provide a more nuanced picture, highlighting disparities across different groups. They report that in 2015, 70% of African children lived below the upper-bound poverty line, compared to 3% of white children, underscoring the persistent racial dimensions of child

poverty. Furthermore, they note significant provincial variations, with child poverty rates ranging from 35% in the Western Cape to 76% in Limpopo.

The COVID-19 pandemic has likely exacerbated child poverty. Van der Berg et al. (2021: 7) estimate that child poverty rates increased by 4-5 percentage points in 2020 due to the pandemic's economic impacts, potentially reversing some of the gains made in previous years.

2.5.2.2 Long-term Consequences for Development

The consequences of child poverty extend far beyond immediate material deprivation, impacting various aspects of children's development and prospects:

1. *Education:* Child poverty significantly affects educational outcomes. Spaull and Kotze (2015: 15) report that children from poor households are likelier to start school later, repeat grades, and drop out before completing secondary education. They found that only 44% of learners from the poorest quintile who started school in 2003 had completed matric by 2015, compared to 92% from the wealthiest quintile.
2. *Health and Nutrition:* Poverty profoundly impacts children's health and nutrition. May et al. (2020: 7) highlight that stunting, a key indicator of chronic malnutrition, affected 27% of children under five in 2016. They argue that this impacts immediate health and has long-term consequences for cognitive development and future earning potential.
3. *Cognitive and Socio-emotional Development:* Poverty significantly impacts mental and socio-emotional development. Tomlinson et al. (2019: 83) found that children living in poverty scored lower on cognitive tests and exhibited more behavioural problems than their non-poor counterparts. They argue that these early developmental

deficits can affect educational attainment and labour market outcomes.

4. *Intergenerational Transmission of Poverty:* Child poverty often perpetuates a cycle of intergenerational poverty. Finn et al. (2016: 152) analysed longitudinal data and found strong correlations between parental poverty and children's economic outcomes in adulthood. They estimate that a child born into the poorest 20% of households has a 74% chance of remaining in poverty as an adult.
5. *Social Exclusion and Well-being:* Beyond material deprivation, child poverty can lead to social exclusion and reduced well-being. Swartz et al. (2016: 551) conducted qualitative research on children living in poverty and found that they often experienced feelings of shame, exclusion from social activities, and reduced self-esteem, which can impact their social development and future aspirations.

The long-term economic implications of child poverty are substantial. Grinspun (2016: 5) estimates that child poverty costs South Africa approximately 5.5% of its GDP annually, accounting for reduced productivity, increased healthcare costs, and crime-related expenses attributable to childhood poverty.

Addressing child poverty is crucial from a rights-based perspective and for South Africa's long-term economic and social development. The persistence of high child poverty rates, despite various policy interventions, suggests a need for more comprehensive and targeted approaches. These might include expanding social protection measures, improving the quality of education in disadvantaged areas, and addressing the broader socio-economic factors that contribute to poverty.

Moreover, the multidimensional nature of child poverty's impacts underscores the need for integrated interventions that address income poverty and access to quality education, healthcare, and social support

(Hochfeld et al., 2016: 15). As South Africa grapples with reducing poverty and inequality, prioritising child poverty alleviation could yield significant long-term benefits for the country's development trajectory.

2.5.3 Gender Dimensions of Poverty

The gender dimensions of poverty in South Africa reveal a stark reality where women, particularly those heading households, face disproportionate challenges in escaping poverty. This section examines the feminisation of poverty and the challenges female-headed households face in South Africa.

2.5.3.1 Feminisation of Poverty

The concept of the feminisation of poverty, which posits that women are more likely to experience poverty than men, is particularly relevant in South Africa. Statistics South Africa (2017: 20) reports that in 2015, 52.2% of females lived below the upper-bound poverty line compared to 48.8% of males. This gender disparity in poverty rates has persisted over time, with women consistently showing higher poverty rates across different poverty lines.

Rogan (2016: 991) provides a more nuanced analysis using a multidimensional poverty index. His findings show that 42.3% of women were multidimensionally poor in 2012, compared to 38.2% of men. Importantly, Rogan (2016: 992) notes that the gender poverty gap is even more pronounced when considering the depth of poverty, with women experiencing more severe forms of deprivation across multiple dimensions.

Various factors drive the feminisation of poverty in South Africa. Casale and Posel (2021: 139) highlight the persistent gender wage gap, with women earning, on average, 30% less than men in similar occupations. They argue that this wage disparity, coupled with women's overrepresentation in low-paying and informal sector jobs, contributes significantly to higher poverty rates among women.

Moreover, Budlender (2018: 5) points out that women's poverty is exacerbated by their disproportionate burden of unpaid care work. His time-use analysis reveals that South African women spend, on average, 4.3 hours per day on unpaid care work, compared to 1.6 hours for men. This unpaid work limits women's ability to engage in paid employment and educational opportunities, further entrenching their economic vulnerability.

2.5.3.2 Challenges Faced by Female-Headed Households

Female-headed households in South Africa face particularly acute challenges in terms of poverty and economic vulnerability. According to Statistics South Africa (2020a: 8), 41.9% of households in South Africa were headed by women in 2019. Crucially, these households experience significantly higher poverty rates than male-headed households.

Statistics South Africa (2017: 56) provides a detailed analysis showing that in 2015, 49.9% of female-headed households lived below the upper-bound poverty line, compared to 33.0% of male-headed households. This disparity persists even when controlling for factors such as household size and location, suggesting that female headship itself is associated with increased poverty risk.

Several factors contribute to the heightened vulnerability of female-headed households:

1. *Income disparities:* Posel and Rogan (2012: 90) find that female-headed households have significantly lower average incomes than male-headed households. In their study, the mean per capita income for female-headed households was R1,589, compared to R3,033 for male-headed households.
2. *Labour market challenges:* Nwosu and Ndinda (2018: 451) highlight that female household heads face more significant barriers to labour market participation. They report an employment

rate of 46% for female household heads compared to 69% for male household heads in 2015.

3. *Dependency ratios*: Schatz et al. (2011: 599) note that female-headed households often have higher dependency ratios, with more children and elderly dependents than working-age adults. Their analysis shows an average dependency ratio of 0.8 for female-headed households compared to 0.6 for male-headed households.
4. *Access to resources*: Chant (2003: 19) argues that female-headed households in South Africa face more significant challenges in accessing resources such as credit, land, and productive assets. This limited access constrains their ability to generate income and escape poverty.

The intersection of gender and other forms of disadvantage further compounds the challenges faced by female-headed households. Rogan (2016: 993) finds that poverty rates are exceptionally high among female-headed households in rural areas and those headed by black African women, highlighting the compounding effects of gender, race, and geography on poverty risk.

The persistence of these gender disparities in poverty rates and the vulnerabilities faced by female-headed households underscore the need for targeted interventions. While South Africa has implemented various policies aimed at promoting gender equality and supporting vulnerable families, the continued feminisation of poverty suggests that these efforts have been insufficient.

Addressing the gender dimensions of poverty requires a multifaceted approach beyond income support. It involves tackling structural barriers to women's economic participation, addressing the gender wage gap, recognising and redistributing unpaid care work, and providing targeted

support to female-headed households. Moreover, as Chant (2020: 380) argues, addressing women's poverty must be grounded in a deep understanding of their agency and diverse strategies to navigate economic challenges.

As we consider the role of religious institutions like the NHKA in addressing poverty, we must recognise its gendered dimensions. Effective interventions must be sensitive to specific challenges women and female-headed households face. They should aim to address both the symptoms and underlying causes of gendered economic disparities.

2.5.4 Racial Disparities in Poverty Rates

The racial disparities in poverty rates in South Africa remain one of the most persistent and stark manifestations of the country's historical inequalities. Despite nearly three decades of democracy and numerous policy interventions aimed at redressing past injustices, significant racial gaps in poverty rates persist, reflecting the enduring legacy of apartheid and the challenges of achieving equitable economic transformation.

2.5.4.1 Current Statistics

Recent data from Statistics South Africa (2017: 18) provide a clear picture of the racial dimensions of poverty in the country. According to the report, in 2015, 64.2% of black Africans lived below the upper-bound poverty line (UBPL), compared to 41.3% of coloureds, 5.9% of Indians/Asians, and only 1.0% of whites. These figures underscore the stark racial disparities in poverty rates, with black Africans experiencing poverty rates more than 60 times higher than those of white South Africans.

Finn and Leibbrandt (2017: 153) offer a more nuanced analysis, examining poverty dynamics across racial groups. Their study finds that between 2008 and 2017, 48.2% of black African individuals experienced chronic poverty (poor in all waves of the survey), compared to 23.4% of coloureds, 4.6% of Indians/Asians, and just 0.8% of whites. This highlights

not only the higher incidence of poverty among black Africans but also its more persistent nature.

Moreover, Zizzamia et al. (2019: 25) introduce the concept of the 'vulnerable middle class' in South Africa, showing that 80% of this group, at high risk of falling into poverty, is composed of black Africans. This underscores the precarious economic situation of many black South Africans who, while not currently poor, face a high risk of poverty.

The racial disparities in poverty rates are further reflected in measures of multidimensional poverty. Rogan (2016: 992) applies the global Multidimensional Poverty Index (MPI) to South Africa and finds that in 2016, 33.4% of black Africans were multidimensionally poor, compared to 14.5% of coloureds, 1.2% of Indians/Asians, and 0.4% of whites. This multidimensional approach captures deprivations across health, education, and living standards, providing a more comprehensive picture of racial inequalities beyond income poverty (Statistics South Africa, 2017: 20).

2.5.4.2 Historical Context and Persistent Inequalities:

The current racial disparities in poverty rates are deeply rooted in South Africa's history of colonialism and apartheid. Understanding these persistent inequalities requires examining the historical processes that shaped them and the challenges of overcoming this legacy in the post-apartheid era.

Apartheid policies systematically disadvantaged non-white populations, particularly black Africans, through a range of measures, including land dispossession, restricted access to education and skilled jobs, and forced removals to underdeveloped "homelands" (Leibbrandt et al., 2010: 16). Seekings and Nattrass (2015: 116) argue that these policies created a "structural inequality trap" that has proven extremely difficult to escape, even after the formal end of apartheid.

The transition to democracy in 1994 brought rapid economic transformation and expectations of poverty reduction. However, as Bhorat et al. (2014: 35) point out, the persistence of racial inequalities in poverty rates reflects the limitations of post-apartheid economic policies in addressing the deep-seated structural barriers to financial inclusion for black South Africans.

Several factors contribute to the persistence of these racial disparities:

1. *Education:* Despite significant increases in educational access, quality disparities persist. Spaull and Kotze (2015: 15) show that in 2018, only 5% of black African students in Grade 9 were performing at the appropriate level in mathematics, compared to 44% of white students. This educational inequality translates directly into labour market outcomes and poverty rates.
2. *Labour Market Discrimination:* Rogan and Reynolds (2019: 24) find evidence of persistent racial wage discrimination in the South African labour market, with black African workers earning, on average, 35% less than equally qualified white workers in similar jobs. This wage gap contributes significantly to higher poverty rates among black Africans.
3. *Spatial Inequalities:* The geographical legacy of apartheid continues to impact poverty rates. David et al. (2018: 301) demonstrate that poverty rates in former homeland areas, predominantly inhabited by black Africans, remain significantly higher than in other parts of the country. In 2015, 65.4% of individuals in former homelands lived below the LBPL, compared to 25.4% in urban areas (Statistics South Africa, 2017: 22).
4. *Intergenerational Transmission of Poverty:* Finn et al. (2016: 152) show strong intergenerational correlations in economic outcomes, with parental poverty significantly predicting children's poverty in

adulthood. Given the historical concentration of poverty among black Africans, this perpetuates racial disparities across generations.

5. *Asset Poverty*: Beyond income poverty, racial disparities in asset ownership contribute to persistent inequalities. Orthofer (2016: 21) finds that in 2011, the median white household held 35 times more net assets than the median black African household, reflecting historical advantages in wealth accumulation and limiting the ability of black households to weather economic shocks.

The persistence of these racial disparities in poverty rates poses significant challenges to South Africa's social cohesion and economic development. As May (2012: 78) argues, addressing these inequalities requires targeted poverty alleviation measures and broader structural reforms to address the root causes of racial economic disparities.

Moreover, the racial dimension of poverty in South Africa complicates the design and implementation of poverty reduction strategies. Policies must be carefully crafted to address the specific barriers black South Africans face while promoting broader economic growth and social cohesion. This balancing act remains one of the central challenges of post-apartheid economic policy.

Recognising these racial dimensions is crucial when considering the role of institutions like the NHKA in addressing poverty. Effective interventions must be grounded in an understanding of the historical and structural factors perpetuating racial disparities in poverty rates. This may involve direct poverty alleviation efforts, advocacy for broader structural reforms, and engagement with racial reconciliation and economic justice issues.

2.5.5 Poverty Among the Elderly

Poverty among the elderly in South Africa presents a unique set of challenges that intersect with the country's broader socio-economic landscape. While the introduction of a comprehensive social pension

system has played a crucial role in alleviating poverty among older South Africans, many elderly individuals continue to face significant economic hardships and vulnerabilities.

2.5.5.1 Unique Challenges Faced by Older Populations

The elderly in South Africa face several distinct challenges that contribute to their vulnerability to poverty:

1. *Health and Care Needs:* Older individuals often have increased healthcare needs, which can strain limited financial resources. According to the South African Demographic and Health Survey 2016 (Department of Health, 2019: 27), 49% of women and 45% of men aged 65 and above reported having at least one chronic condition. Ataguba and McIntyre (2012: 517) found that out-of-pocket health expenditures were significantly higher for older adults, with those aged 60 and above spending 1.23 times more on health care than younger adults.
2. *Limited Economic Opportunities:* Many elderly individuals have limited employment or income generation opportunities. Statistics South Africa (2020: 10) reports that the labour force participation rate for individuals aged 65 and above was only 6.7% in 2019, compared to 62.2% for those aged 15-64. This low participation rate reflects age-related barriers to employment and the reliance on pension income.
3. *Household Composition:* Elderly individuals in South Africa often live in multi-generational households and may be responsible for supporting younger family members. Schatz et al. (2011: 599) found that 63% of individuals aged 60 and above lived in households with at least one child under 18. This caregiving role can strain the limited resources of elderly individuals, particularly in the context of high unemployment rates among younger generations.

4. *HIV/AIDS Impact:* The HIV/AIDS epidemic has had a significant impact on older populations in South Africa. Steinert et al. (2017: 228) report that many older adults have lost adult children to AIDS, leading to increased caregiving responsibilities for grandchildren and loss of potential financial support in old age. They found that 27% of individuals aged 50 and above in rural South Africa were caring for an AIDS-orphaned grandchild.
5. *Gender Disparities:* Older women in South Africa face particular vulnerabilities to poverty. Posel and Rogan (2012: 91) show that older women are more likely to live alone and have lower pension coverage than men. They found that 37% of women aged 60 and above lived alone, compared to 18% of men in the same age group.

2.5.5.2 Impact of Pension Systems

South Africa's social pension system, notably the Older Person's Grant (OPG), has played a crucial role in alleviating poverty among the elderly. However, the impact of this system is complex and multifaceted:

1. *Coverage and Adequacy:* The OPG extensively covers eligible elderly South Africans. According to the South African Social Security Agency (SASSA, 2021: 15), as of March 2021, 3.72 million individuals were receiving the OPG. The grant amount was R1,890 monthly for individuals aged 60-74 and R1,910 for those 75 and above. While this represents a significant income source for many elderly individuals, Seekings (2020: 5) argues that the grant amount remains insufficient to meet all basic needs, particularly those with additional caregiving responsibilities.
2. *Poverty Reduction:* The OPG has had a substantial impact on reducing poverty among the elderly. Sulla and Zikhali (2018: 46) estimate that without the OPG, poverty rates among individuals aged 60 and above would be 32 percentage points higher.

However, they note that 16.8% of older individuals still lived below the upper-bound poverty line even with the grant in 2017.

3. *Intra-household Dynamics:* The impact of the OPG extends beyond individual recipients. Duflo (2003: 3) found that women's pension income significantly positively impacted the health and nutrition of children in the household, particularly girls. This highlights the role of elderly pension recipients in supporting broader household welfare.
4. *Labour Market Effects:* The availability of pension income has complex effects on labour market participation among the elderly and their household members. Ardington et al. (2009: 38) found that pension receipt was associated with reduced labour force participation among prime-age adults in the same household, particularly in rural areas. This suggests that pension income may create disincentives for work among younger household members.
5. *Challenges in Access:* While coverage is high, some elderly individuals face challenges accessing the OPG. Neves et al. (2009: 15) identify several barriers, including lack of necessary documentation, difficulties in the application process, and transport costs to payment points. These challenges can leave some vulnerable elderly individuals without crucial support.
6. *Fiscal Sustainability:* The extensive coverage of the OPG raises questions about long-term fiscal sustainability. National Treasury (2020: 28) projects that demographic shifts will increase the number of OPG recipients to 5.2 million by 2030, placing increased pressure on the social security budget.

The complex interplay between the unique challenges faced by older populations and the impact of the pension system underscores the need for a nuanced approach to addressing poverty among the elderly in South

Africa. While the OPG has undoubtedly played a crucial role in poverty alleviation, it is clear that pension income alone is insufficient to address all the vulnerabilities older individuals face.

Interventions should consider direct financial support and issues such as healthcare access, social integration, and support for elderly individuals with caregiving responsibilities. Moreover, the elderly's role in supporting broader household welfare highlights the potential ripple effects of interventions targeted at this demographic group.

2.5.6 Conclusion

The examination of poverty's impact on different demographics in South Africa reveals a complex and multifaceted landscape, deeply rooted in the country's historical context and perpetuated by ongoing structural inequalities. This analysis of child poverty, gender dimensions, racial disparities, and poverty among the elderly underscores the intersectional nature of poverty in South Africa and the need for nuanced, targeted interventions.

Child poverty, affecting 59.3% of children aged 0-17 years (Statistics South Africa, 2017: 18), presents a critical challenge with long-term consequences for the country's development. The disproportionate impact on black African children, with 70% living below the upper-bound poverty line (Hall and Sambu, 2021: 228), highlights the persistent racial dimensions of poverty. The long-term consequences of child poverty, including reduced educational attainment and future earning potential, underscore the urgency of addressing this issue to break intergenerational cycles of poverty.

Gender disparities in poverty rates, with 52.2% of females living below the upper-bound poverty line compared to 48.8% of males (Statistics South Africa, 2017: 20), reflect broader gender inequalities in South African society. Female-headed households' vulnerabilities, with 49.9% living

below the upper-bound poverty line (Statistics South Africa, 2017: 56), emphasise the need for gender-sensitive poverty alleviation strategies.

Racial disparities in poverty rates remain one of the most striking features of South Africa's socio-economic landscape. With 64.2% of black Africans living below the upper-bound poverty line compared to just 1.0% of whites (Statistics South Africa, 2017: 18), these disparities reflect the enduring legacy of apartheid and the challenges of achieving equitable economic transformation in the post-apartheid era.

Poverty among the elderly, while mitigated to some extent by the Older Person's Grant, remains a significant concern. The unique challenges older populations face, including increased healthcare needs and caregiving responsibilities, highlight the need for comprehensive support systems beyond income support.

These demographic dimensions of poverty are not isolated but intersect and reinforce each other, creating complex patterns of disadvantage. For instance, an elderly black African woman in a rural area may face multiple overlapping vulnerabilities that compound her risk of poverty.

The persistence of these demographic disparities in poverty rates, despite numerous policy interventions since 1994, suggests the need for a more comprehensive and nuanced approach to poverty alleviation in South Africa. This approach must address immediate income poverty and the structural factors perpetuating inequalities across different demographic groups.

This analysis of the demographic dimensions of poverty in South Africa provides a crucial foundation for understanding the country's complex poverty landscape. It underscores the need for multifaceted interventions sensitive to the specific challenges faced by different demographic groups while also addressing the broader structural inequalities that underpin these disparities. Future efforts to address poverty in South Africa must

consider these nuanced demographic realities to develop more effective and targeted strategies for poverty alleviation.

2.6 Government Efforts to Address Poverty

2.6.1 Introduction

Since the transition to democracy in 1994, the South African government has implemented various policies and programmes to address the pervasive poverty characterising the country's socio-economic landscape. These efforts reflect the government's constitutional mandate to progressively realise socio-economic rights and redress the inequalities inherited from the apartheid era. Seekings and Nattrass (2015: 101-104) argue that poverty alleviation has been a central pillar of the post-apartheid government's policy agenda, reflecting moral imperatives and political necessities.

The government's approach to poverty alleviation has evolved, shaped by changing political priorities, economic realities, and a growing understanding of the multidimensional nature of poverty. Naidoo and Maré (2015: 393) note that early post-apartheid policies focused primarily on addressing income poverty through social grants and economic growth, while more recent approaches have increasingly recognised the need to address broader structural barriers to poverty reduction.

This shift is evident in the government's adoption of the National Development Plan (NDP) in 2012, which set ambitious targets for poverty reduction and emphasised the need for a multifaceted approach to development (National Planning Commission, 2012: 24). Concurrently, the expansion of social protection measures, particularly the social grant system, has played a crucial role in mitigating extreme poverty. Statistics South Africa (2016: 14) reports that 2015 social grants reached 30.1% of the population, significantly reducing poverty rates among vulnerable groups.

However, despite these efforts, poverty remains persistent and widespread. Sulla and Zikhali (2018: 43) highlight that while poverty rates have decreased since 1994, progress has slowed, with 55.5% of the population living below the upper-bound poverty line in 2015. Despite significant government interventions, this persistence of poverty raises critical questions about the effectiveness of current approaches and the challenges of implementing poverty alleviation policies in the context of broader economic and social constraints.

The following subsections will examine key government initiatives to address poverty, including significant anti-poverty policies and programmes and the social grant system, and assess their effectiveness. This analysis will provide a foundation for understanding the complex landscape of poverty alleviation in South Africa and the challenges faced in translating policy intentions into tangible improvements in the lives of the poor.

2.6.2 Overview of Major Anti-Poverty Policies and Programmes

Since the end of apartheid, the South African government has implemented several significant anti-poverty policies and programmes, with the National Development Plan (NDP) and the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) standing out as critical initiatives in the fight against poverty.

2.6.2.1 National Development Plan (NDP)

The National Development Plan 2030, adopted in 2012, represents South Africa's long-term socio-economic development roadmap. The NDP aims to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030 (National Planning Commission, 2012: 34). Specifically, it sets targets to reduce the proportion of households with a monthly income below R419 per person (in 2009 prices) from 39% to zero, and to reduce inequality as measured by the Gini coefficient from 0.69 to 0.60 (National Planning Commission, 2012: 34; Chibba and Luiz, 2011: 307).

The NDP proposes a multi-pronged approach to poverty reduction, encompassing economic growth, education and skills development, healthcare, social protection, and spatial development. Key elements include:

1. *Job Creation*: The plan aims to reduce unemployment from 27% in 2011 to 14% by 2020 and 6% by 2030, primarily through promoting labour-absorbing industries and small business development (National Planning Commission, 2012: 119).
2. *Education and Skills*: The NDP emphasises improving education quality and increasing the number of students achieving above 50% in literacy and mathematics (National Planning Commission, 2012: 296).
3. *Healthcare*: The plan proposes implementing National Health Insurance to provide universal health coverage (National Planning Commission, 2012: 330).
4. *Social Protection*: The NDP advocates for an inclusive approach, expanding social protection to cover all eligible individuals while promoting social inclusion and cohesion (National Planning Commission, 2012: 355-356). This emphasis on inclusivity should reassure the audience about the government's commitment to social welfare.

However, implementing the NDP has faced significant challenges. Borat and Kohler (2020: 5) note that economic growth has consistently fallen short of the 5.4% annual average required to meet NDP targets. By 2018, GDP growth had averaged only 1.5% annually since 2012. Moreover, Statistics South Africa (2019b: 4) highlights that unemployment has increased since the NDP's adoption, reaching 29.1% in 2019, far from the NDP's targets.

Critically, Orlandi (2020) argues that the NDP's implementation has been hampered by a lack of political will, institutional capacity constraints, and insufficient coordination between government departments. This suggests that while the NDP provides a comprehensive framework for poverty reduction, translating its ambitious goals into tangible outcomes remains a significant challenge.

2.6.2.2 Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The Expanded Public Works Programme, launched in 2004, is a significant government initiative that provides much-needed poverty and income relief through temporary work for the unemployed. The EPWP's role should evoke empathy for those in need.

Key features of the EPWP include:

1. *Job Creation:* In its third phase (2014-2019), the EPWP aimed to create 6 million work opportunities. By the end of this phase, it had created 4.5 million work opportunities (Department of Public Works, 2019: 15).
2. *Skills Development:* The programme includes training components to enhance participants' employability. In 2018/19, 113,824 participants received training (Department of Public Works, 2019: 22).
3. *Community Development:* Many EPWP projects focus on delivering services and infrastructure in underserved communities, thus addressing poverty through employment and improved local conditions.

However, the EPWP's effectiveness in sustainable poverty reduction has been questioned. Meth (2011: 8) argues that while the EPWP has provided short-term relief to many households, its impact on long-term poverty reduction is limited due to the temporary nature of the work

opportunities and low wages. The average duration of work opportunities in 2018/19 was only 88 days (Department of Public Works, 2019: 18), raising questions about the programme's ability to provide sustainable livelihoods.

Moreover, Theron (2014: 157) highlights issues of targeting and selection bias in EPWP implementation, noting that in some cases, political connections influence participant selection, potentially undermining the programme's poverty reduction objectives.

Despite these criticisms, Philip (2013: 15) argues that the EPWP is crucial in providing a safety net for many unemployed South Africans, particularly with high structural unemployment. He suggests that while the EPWP should not be seen as a solution to long-term unemployment, it provides participants with valuable income support and work experience.

In assessing these significant anti-poverty policies and programmes, it becomes clear that while the South African government has developed comprehensive strategies and large-scale interventions to address poverty, considerable challenges remain in implementation and achieving sustainable poverty reduction. The gap between policy ambitions and on-the-ground realities underscores the complexity of addressing poverty in South Africa and the need for continued refinement and adaptation of anti-poverty strategies.

2.6.3 Analysis of the Social Grant System

The social grant system in South Africa represents one of the government's primary mechanisms for addressing poverty and inequality. This comprehensive system of cash transfers has expanded significantly since the end of apartheid, playing a crucial role in providing income support to vulnerable populations.

2.6.3.1 Types of Grants and Coverage

The South African Social Security Agency (SASSA) administers several types of social grants, each targeting specific vulnerable groups:

1. *Child Support Grant (CSG)*: Introduced in 1998, the CSG is the most widely distributed grant. As of March 2023, it reached 13,147,937 beneficiaries (SASSA, 2023: 27). In 2023, the grant amount was R480 per month per child, paid to primary caregivers of children under 18 who meet the means test criteria.
2. *Old Age Grant (OAG)*: This grant is provided to individuals aged 60 and above. In March 2023, it reached 3,886,708 beneficiaries (SASSA, 2023: 27). The grant amount was R1,890 per month for individuals aged 60-74 and R1,910 for those 75 and above in 2023.
3. *Disability Grant*: This grant supports adults with disabilities who cannot work. In March 2023, it reached 1,035,437 beneficiaries (SASSA, 2023: 27). The grant amount was R1,890 monthly in 2023.
4. *Foster Child Grant*: This grant supports individuals caring for children who are not their own. In March 2023, it reached 274,130 beneficiaries (SASSA, 2023: 27).
5. *Care Dependency Grant*: This grant supports caregivers of children with severe disabilities requiring full-time care. In March 2023, it reached 156,982 beneficiaries (SASSA, 2023: 27). The grant amount was R1,890 monthly in 2023.
6. *Grant-in-Aid*: This is an additional grant for recipients of the Old Age, Disability, or War Veterans grants who require full-time care. In March 2023, it reached 328,507 beneficiaries (SASSA, 2023: 27). The grant amount was R450 per month in 2023.

The social grant system's coverage has expanded dramatically since 1994. Patel and Ulriksen (2017: 90) note that grant beneficiaries increased

from approximately 4 million in 1994 to over 17 million by 2015. By March 2023, the total number of grant beneficiaries had reached 18,829,716 (SASSA, 2023: 27), representing approximately 31% of the South African population.

2.6.3.2 Impact and Criticisms

The impact of the social grant system on poverty alleviation has been significant. Oosthuizen and Thornton (2019: 15) estimate that without social grants, the poverty headcount ratio (using the lower-bound poverty line) would have been 16.3 percentage points higher in 2015. The Child Support Grant, in particular, has been credited with reducing child poverty. Coetzee (2013: 429) finds that receipt of the CSG is associated with a 7-8 percentage point reduction in the probability of a child living in poverty.

Moreover, social grants have been found to have positive impacts beyond immediate poverty alleviation. DSD, SASSA and UNICEF (2012: 2-3) demonstrate that children in households receiving the Child Support Grant show improved health and educational outcomes, suggesting long-term benefits for human capital development.

However, the social grant system has also faced several criticisms:

1. *Grant Adequacy*: Despite their positive impact, many argue that grant amounts are insufficient to lift recipients out of poverty. Devereux and Waidler (2017: 368) contend that while grants provide crucial support, they often fail to meet all basic needs, particularly for households relying solely on grant income.
2. *Targeting and Exclusion*: Concerns about inclusion and exclusion errors in the grant system have been raised. DSD, SASSA and UNICEF (2016: 71) estimate that approximately 18% of eligible children were not receiving the Child Support Grant in 2014, often due to administrative barriers or lack of information.

3. *Dependency Concerns*: Some critics argue that the extensive social grant system may create dependency and disincentivise work. However, Surender et al. (2010: 205) find little evidence to support this claim, noting that most working-age grant recipients continue to seek employment.
4. *Fiscal Sustainability*: Expanding the social grant system has raised concerns about long-term fiscal sustainability. National Treasury (2020: 84) projects that demographic shifts and grant expansions could see social grant expenditure rise from 3.4% of GDP in 2019/20 to 5.2% by 2030, potentially straining the national budget.
5. *Implementation Challenges*: The social grant system has faced administrative challenges, including issues with payment systems. In 2017, a Constitutional Court case highlighted problems with outsourcing grant payments, leading to a crisis that threatened grant distribution (Breckenridge, 2005: 274).

Despite these criticisms, the social grant system remains a cornerstone of South Africa's poverty alleviation strategy. Its extensive coverage and demonstrable impact on poverty rates underscore its importance. However, the ongoing debates surrounding the system highlight the complex challenges of implementing large-scale social protection in widespread poverty and inequality.

2.6.4 Effectiveness Assessment of Government Initiatives

The effectiveness of South African government initiatives in addressing poverty presents a complex picture, with notable successes counterbalanced by significant limitations and implementation challenges. This assessment requires a nuanced examination of various poverty alleviation programmes and their impacts on different aspects of poverty in South Africa.

2.6.4.1 Successes and Limitations

1. *Social Grant System*: Expanding the social grant system represents one of the most significant successes in South Africa's poverty alleviation efforts. Oosthuizen and Thornton (2019: 15) estimate that social grants reduced the poverty headcount ratio by 16.3 percentage points in 2015. Similarly, Köhler and Bhorat (2021: 22) find that social grants played a crucial role in mitigating the economic impact of the COVID-19 pandemic, reducing the extreme poverty rate by 5.3 percentage points in 2020.

However, the system's limitations are also apparent. Devereux and Waidler (2017: 368) argue that while grants provide crucial support, they often fail to meet all basic needs, particularly for households relying solely on grant income. Moreover, Seekings and Nattrass (2015: 173) note that grants alone have been insufficient to address the structural causes of poverty, such as high unemployment and unequal access to economic opportunities.

2. *Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)*: The EPWP has successfully provided short-term employment opportunities. The Department of Public Works (2019: 15) reports that the programme created 4.5 million work opportunities in its third phase (2014-2019). However, Meth (2011: 8) critiques the programme's effectiveness in sustainable poverty reduction, noting the temporary nature of the work opportunities and low wages.
3. *National Development Plan (NDP)*: While the NDP provides a comprehensive framework for poverty reduction, its implementation has faced significant challenges. Bhorat et al. (2020: 5) note that economic growth has consistently fallen short of the 5.4% annual average required to meet NDP targets. By 2018, GDP growth averaged only 1.5% annually since 2012, far below the NDP's projections.

4. *Education Initiatives:* Improvements in educational access represent a notable success, with the General Household Survey 2019 (Statistics South Africa, 2020b: 12) reporting near-universal enrolment in basic education. However, Spaul (2019: 3) highlights persistent quality issues, noting that 78% of South African Grade 4 students cannot read for meaning, significantly limiting the poverty-reducing potential of education.
5. *Housing and Basic Services:* The government's housing programme has shown some success, with Statistics South Africa (2020b: 33) reporting that 81.1% of households lived in formal dwellings in 2019, up from 64.4% in 1996. However, Turok and Borel-Saladin (2016: 388) argue that the programme has had limited success in addressing spatial inequality and integrating low-income communities into economically vibrant areas.

2.6.4.2 Challenges in Implementation

1. *Institutional Capacity:* Limited institutional capacity is a significant challenge in implementing poverty alleviation initiatives. Koma (2014: 40) argues that many government departments lack the necessary skills and resources to effectively implement complex poverty reduction programmes. This is particularly evident in local governments, where Mamobolo and Moyo (2014: 943) find widespread capacity constraints in service delivery and programme implementation.
2. *Coordination and Policy Coherence:* The multidimensional nature of poverty requires coordinated interventions across various government departments and levels. However, Patel (2015: 321) notes that poor coordination between departments often leads to fragmented and sometimes contradictory policy implementation. This lack of policy coherence undermines the effectiveness of poverty alleviation efforts.

3. *Corruption and Mismanagement:* Corruption and mismanagement of resources pose significant challenges to effectively implementing poverty alleviation programmes. Habib (2013: 89) argues that corruption not only diverts resources from intended beneficiaries but also erodes public trust in government institutions, undermining the legitimacy of poverty reduction efforts.
4. *Economic Constraints:* South Africa's sluggish economic growth and high unemployment rates pose significant challenges to poverty alleviation efforts. Statistics South Africa (2019a: 146) highlights that unemployment has increased since adopting the NDP, reaching 29.1% in 2019. This economic context limits the resources available for poverty reduction and creates additional demands on social protection systems.
5. *Targeting and Exclusion Errors:* Challenges in accurately targeting beneficiaries and avoiding exclusion errors have hampered the effectiveness of some poverty alleviation programmes. DSD, SASSA and UNICEF (2016: 71) estimate that approximately 18% of eligible children were not receiving the Child Support Grant in 2014, often due to administrative barriers or lack of information.
6. *Sustainability Concerns:* The long-term sustainability of some poverty alleviation initiatives, particularly the expansive social grant system, has raised concerns. National Treasury (2020: 84) projects that demographic shifts and grant expansions could see social grant expenditure rise from 3.4% of GDP in 2019/20 to 5.2% by 2030, potentially straining the national budget.

In assessing the effectiveness of government initiatives to address poverty in South Africa, it becomes clear that while significant progress has been made in some areas, particularly in providing social protection through grants, many challenges remain (Sulla and Zikhali, 2018: 43).

The limitations and implementation challenges highlighted underscore the complexity of addressing poverty in South Africa and the need for continued refinement and adaptation of poverty alleviation strategies. Addressing these challenges will require increased resources, improved implementation capacity, and a critical examination of the structural factors perpetuating poverty and inequality in South Africa.

2.6.5 Conclusion

Examining government efforts to address poverty in South Africa reveals a complex landscape of policies, programmes, and interventions, each with its successes, limitations, and implementation challenges. This comprehensive analysis highlights the multifaceted nature of poverty in South Africa and the intricate task of developing effective poverty alleviation strategies.

The National Development Plan (NDP) and the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) represent ambitious attempts to address poverty through long-term strategic planning and short-term job creation. While these initiatives have shown some positive outcomes, such as the EPWP's creation of 4.5 million work opportunities between 2014 and 2019 (Department of Public Works, 2019: 15), they have also fallen short of their targets, particularly in terms of economic growth and sustainable employment creation (Bhorat et al., 2020: 5).

The social grant system stands out as a cornerstone of South Africa's poverty alleviation efforts, with its extensive coverage reaching over 18 million beneficiaries by 2023 (SASSA, 2023: 27). The system has demonstrated a significant impact in reducing poverty rates, especially among vulnerable groups such as children and the elderly (Oosthuizen and Thornton, 2019: 15; Coetzee, 2013: 429). However, concerns about grant adequacy, targeting accuracy, and long-term fiscal sustainability persist (Devereux and Waidler, 2017: 368; DSD, SASSA and UNICEF, 2016: 71; National Treasury, 2020: 84).

The effectiveness assessment of these government initiatives reveals notable successes and significant challenges. While progress has been made in areas such as expanding access to essential services and providing social protection, persistently high unemployment rates, inequality, and structural economic challenges continue to undermine poverty reduction efforts (Statistics South Africa, 2019a: 146; Sulla and Zikhali, 2018: 43).

Implementation challenges, including limited institutional capacity, poor inter-departmental coordination, and issues of corruption and mismanagement, have hampered the effectiveness of many poverty alleviation programmes (Koma, 2014: 40; Patel, 2015: 321; Habib, 2013: 89). These challenges underscore the need for well-designed policies, robust implementation mechanisms, and good governance practices.

As South Africa grapples with the persistent challenge of poverty, this analysis highlights the need for a nuanced, multi-pronged approach that addresses immediate poverty alleviation and long-term structural changes. Future efforts must build on the successes of existing programmes while addressing their limitations and implementation challenges. This may involve strengthening institutional capacity, improving policy coordination, enhancing targeting mechanisms, and developing sustainable funding models for social protection programmes.

Moreover, the complex nature of poverty in South Africa, as revealed through this analysis, suggests that government efforts alone may be insufficient. Other societal actors, including civil society organisations, religious organisations, and the private sector, have a potential role in complementing and enhancing government initiatives to address poverty more comprehensively (Patel, 2012: 603; Habib, 2013: 152). Future research and policy development should consider how these various stakeholders can collaborate to create more effective and sustainable solutions to South Africa's poverty challenge.

2.7 Future Projections and Challenges

2.7.1 Introduction

Understanding future trends and challenges is crucial for developing effective long-term strategies as South Africa grapples with persistent poverty and inequality. This section examines projected poverty trends, emerging challenges, and potential opportunities for poverty reduction in South Africa, providing a forward-looking perspective on the country's socio-economic landscape.

The complexity of poverty in South Africa, as evidenced by its historical roots and current manifestations, necessitates a multifaceted approach to future projections. May et al. (2020: 15) emphasise that forecasting poverty trends in South Africa requires considering multiple interconnected factors, including economic growth, demographic shifts, and policy interventions. This multidimensional approach is essential for capturing the nuanced reality of poverty dynamics in the country.

Existing structural challenges and emerging global issues will likely shape future poverty trends in South Africa. Bhorat et al. (2022: 78) highlight that while South Africa's poverty reduction efforts have succeeded, the country faces new hurdles in climate change, technological disruption, and the aftermath of the COVID-19 pandemic. These emerging challenges add layers of complexity to an already intricate poverty landscape.

However, amidst these challenges lie potential opportunities for innovative approaches to poverty reduction. Janse van Rensburg and Ngandu (2021: 203) point out that technological advancements and innovative policy solutions offer new avenues for addressing poverty, particularly in education, healthcare, and financial inclusion. Exploring these opportunities will be crucial for developing effective poverty alleviation strategies in the coming decades.

This section will delve into projected poverty trends, examining short-term and long-term projections and the factors influencing future poverty rates.

It will then explore emerging challenges, focusing on the impact of climate change on poverty and the implications of technological disruption for the future of work. Finally, it will discuss opportunities for poverty reduction, identifying potential areas for intervention and the role of innovation and technology in poverty alleviation.

By providing this forward-looking analysis, this study aims to contribute to a more comprehensive understanding of the future of poverty in South Africa, informing policy discussions and strategic planning for poverty reduction efforts in the years to come.

2.7.2 Projected Poverty Trends

The projection of poverty trends in South Africa requires a nuanced understanding of both short-term fluctuations and long-term structural factors. This section examines the projected poverty trends for South Africa, considering both short-term and long-term projections and the key factors that are likely to influence future poverty rates.

2.7.2.1 Short-term Projections

In the short term, poverty trends in South Africa are significantly influenced by recent events, notably the COVID-19 pandemic. Van der Berg et al. (2021: 12) project that the pandemic could increase the poverty headcount ratio by 4-5 percentage points in 2021-2022, potentially pushing an additional 2.5 million South Africans into poverty. This projection is based on a microsimulation model that accounts for job losses, reduced earnings, and the mitigating effects of government social protection measures.

Similarly, the World Bank (2023: 35) estimates that the poverty rate (using the upper-bound national poverty line) could increase from 55.5% in 2015 to 60.2% in 2022 due to the economic impacts of the pandemic. This short-term increase underscores the vulnerability of many South African households to financial shocks.

However, Schotte and Zizzamia (2021: 18) argue that expanding social protection measures implemented in response to the pandemic may moderate the extent of poverty increase. Their analysis suggests that the rise in poverty rates could have been 2-3 percentage points higher without these measures.

2.7.2.2 Long-term Projections

Long-term poverty projections for South Africa present a more complex picture. The National Development Plan (NDP) set ambitious targets for poverty reduction, aiming to reduce the proportion of the population living below the lower-bound poverty line from 39% in 2009 to zero by 2030 (National Planning Commission, 2012: 24). However, current trends suggest that achieving this target will be challenging.

Sulla and Zikhali (2018: 56) project that under current policy settings and assuming moderate economic growth, the poverty rate (using the lower-bound poverty line) could decrease to around 25% by 2030. While this projection indicates progress, it falls significantly short of the NDP target. The authors emphasise that achieving more substantial poverty reduction would require sustained high economic growth rates and targeted poverty alleviation interventions.

Chetty et al. (2021: 89) offer a more pessimistic projection. They suggest that given current trends and the long-term impacts of the COVID-19 pandemic, poverty rates in South Africa might stagnate or even increase slightly over the next decade. They project that the poverty rate (using the upper-bound poverty line) could remain above 50% through 2030 without significant policy changes and economic transformation.

2.7.2.3 Factors Influencing Future Poverty Rates

Several key factors are likely to influence future poverty rates in South Africa:

1. *Economic Growth and Job Creation:* The pace and nature of economic growth will be crucial in determining future poverty trends. Arndt et al. (2020b: 37) argue that sustainable poverty reduction will require economic development and growth, generating employment opportunities for low-skilled workers. They estimate that reducing poverty to NDP target levels would require annual GDP growth of at least 5.4% and the creation of 11 million jobs by 2030.
2. *Education and Skills Development:* Education and skills development quality will be critical in determining future poverty rates. Van der Berg et al. (2022: 143) project that improving educational outcomes could reduce poverty by up to 5 percentage points by 2030 through its effects on employability and earnings potential.
3. *Demographic Trends:* South Africa's changing demographic profile will influence future poverty rates. Oosthuizen (2019: 28) notes that the country's potential demographic dividend could help reduce poverty if accompanied by appropriate policies to leverage the growing working-age population.
4. *Climate Change:* Climate change's impacts will likely exacerbate poverty, particularly in rural areas. Ziervogel et al. (2014: 607 - 610) project that climate-related shocks could push an additional 1-2 million South Africans into poverty by 2030, primarily through impacts on agriculture and water resources.
5. *Technological Change:* The Fourth Industrial Revolution presents opportunities and challenges for poverty reduction. Bhorat and Rooney (2020: 112) argue that technological advancements could create new economic opportunities but also risk exacerbating inequality if not managed carefully.

6. *Social Protection Policies*: The extent and effectiveness of social protection measures will significantly influence future poverty rates. Leibbrandt et al. (2021: 76) project that expanding and improving the targeting of social grants could reduce the poverty rate by up to 8 percentage points by 2030.

These projections and influencing factors underscore the complex and multifaceted nature of poverty trends in South Africa. While some progress in poverty reduction is possible, achieving significant and sustainable poverty reduction will require addressing structural economic challenges, improving education and skills development, and implementing targeted and effective poverty alleviation policies. The interplay between these factors will be crucial in determining the trajectory of poverty in South Africa over the coming decades.

2.7.3 Emerging Challenges

As South Africa grapples with poverty-related issues, two significant emerging challenges threaten to exacerbate the situation: climate change and technological disruption. These challenges present complex, multifaceted threats to poverty alleviation efforts and require careful consideration in future poverty reduction strategies.

2.7.3.1 Impact of Climate Change on Poverty

Climate change poses a significant threat to poverty reduction efforts in South Africa, with its impacts disproportionately affecting the poor and vulnerable. Ziervogel et al. (2014: 607 - 610) project that climate change could push an additional 1-2 million South Africans into poverty by 2030, primarily through its effects on agriculture, water resources, and natural disasters.

The agricultural sector, a crucial source of livelihood for many poor South Africans, is particularly vulnerable to climate change impacts. Nhemachena et al. (2021: 45) estimate that climate change could reduce yields of major crops in South Africa by 15-20% by 2050, with maize yields

potentially decreasing by up to 30% in some regions. This reduction in agricultural productivity could significantly impact food security and rural livelihoods.

Water scarcity, exacerbated by climate change, presents another critical challenge. The Department of Water and Sanitation (2019: 18) projects that climate change could reduce surface water availability in South Africa by up to 10% by 2050. This reduction would disproportionately affect poor communities, particularly in water-stressed regions. Schreiner et al. (2023: 92) estimate that climate change-induced water scarcity could increase poverty rates in affected areas by 3-5 percentage points by 2030.

Urban poor populations are also vulnerable to climate change impacts, mainly through increased exposure to heat waves and flooding. Engelbrecht et al. (2020: 33) project that climate change could increase the frequency of extreme heat events in South African cities by 200-300% by 2050, with informal settlements particularly at risk. They estimate that these heat waves could reduce labour productivity in affected areas by up to 20%, potentially pushing many working poor into deeper poverty.

The nexus between climate change and health presents another poverty-related challenge. Myers et al. (2022: 128) project that climate change could increase the prevalence of climate-sensitive diseases in South Africa, potentially increasing healthcare costs for poor households by 15-20% by 2050. This increased health burden could further entrench poverty cycles, as inadequate health often leads to reduced earning capacity and increased expenses.

2.7.3.2 Technological Disruption and the Future of Work

The rapid pace of technological change, often called the Fourth Industrial Revolution, presents opportunities and challenges for poverty reduction in South Africa. While technological advancements have the potential to drive economic growth and create new opportunities, they also risk exacerbating existing inequalities and displacing low-skilled workers.

Bhorat et al. (2023: 56) project that automation and artificial intelligence could potentially displace 3-5 million jobs in South Africa by 2030, predominantly affecting low-skilled and semi-skilled workers. This job displacement could significantly increase poverty rates, particularly among vulnerable groups. The authors estimate that technological disruption could increase the poverty rate by 2-3 percentage points without effective mitigation strategies by 2030.

The digital divide presents another challenge in the context of technological disruption. Statistics South Africa (2022: 7) report that only 64.7% of South African households have access to the internet, with significant disparities based on income levels. This digital divide could further entrench existing inequalities, as those without access to digital technologies may be excluded from emerging economic opportunities. Van der Berg and Spaull (2023: 82) project that the digital divide could contribute to widening income inequality, potentially increasing the Gini coefficient by 0.02-0.03 points by 2030.

However, technological disruption also presents potential opportunities for poverty reduction. Mabena and Marwala (2021: 215) argue that the digital economy could create 1-2 million new jobs in South Africa by 2030, particularly in e-commerce, digital services, and the gig economy. They estimate that effective leveraging of these opportunities could potentially reduce the poverty rate by 1-2 percentage points.

The changing nature of work in the digital age also challenges social protection systems. Leibbrandt and Woolard (2022: 39) highlight that traditional social protection mechanisms may be ill-equipped to address the needs of workers in the gig economy and other non-traditional forms of employment. They estimate that up to 20% of the South African workforce could be engaged in non-standard jobs by 2030, potentially falling outside the scope of existing social protection measures.

Addressing these emerging challenges will require innovative policy responses and adaptive strategies. Climate change adaptation measures, including climate-smart agriculture and resilient infrastructure development, will be crucial for mitigating the poverty impacts of climate change. Similarly, addressing the challenges of technological disruption will require significant investments in education and skills development and adapting social protection systems to the changing nature of work.

These emerging challenges underscore the complex and evolving nature of poverty in South Africa. Effective poverty reduction strategies must address current manifestations of poverty and anticipate and mitigate these future challenges. The interplay between climate change, technological disruption, and existing socio-economic inequalities will significantly shape South Africa's poverty trajectory in the coming decades.

2.7.4 Opportunities for Poverty Reduction

Despite the persistent challenges and emerging threats to poverty reduction in South Africa, there are significant opportunities for intervention that could substantially impact poverty alleviation efforts. This section examines potential areas for intervention and explores the role of innovation and technology in poverty reduction strategies.

2.7.4.1 Potential Areas for Intervention

1. *Education and Skills Development*: Improving the quality and accessibility of education remains a crucial area for poverty reduction. Van der Berg et al. (2022: 145) estimate that enhancing educational outcomes could reduce poverty by up to 5 percentage points by 2030. Specific interventions in this area include:
 - a. *Early Childhood Development (ECD)*: Richter (2021: 18) argues that investing in ECD programmes could yield significant long-term benefits for poverty reduction. The author projects that universal access to quality ECD could

increase adult earnings by 5-10% and reduce the intergenerational transmission of poverty by 20-30%.

- b. *Vocational Education and Training*: Bhorat and Kimani (2023: 67) propose expanding and improving the quality of vocational education and training programmes. They estimate that aligning these programmes more closely with labour market demands could increase employment rates among graduates by 15-20%, potentially lifting 500,000-750,000 individuals out of poverty by 2030.

2. *Labour Market Interventions*: Addressing structural unemployment and underemployment is critical for sustainable poverty reduction. Leibbrandt et al. (2021: 78) suggest several key interventions:

- a. *Youth Employment Programmes*: The authors propose scaling up youth employment initiatives, projecting that a comprehensive national youth employment programme could create 1-1.5 million jobs for young people by 2030, potentially reducing youth poverty rates by 10-15 percentage points.
- b. *Support for Small and Medium Enterprises (SMEs)*: Enhancing support for SMEs through improved access to finance, markets, and skills development could create 2-3 million new jobs by 2030, according to the authors' estimates.

3. *Social Protection Reform*: Improving the effectiveness and coverage of social protection systems presents another significant opportunity for poverty reduction. Woolard et al. (2023: 42) propose several reforms:

- a. *Expanding Grant Coverage:* The authors argue for extending the Child Support Grant to all children under 18 and introducing a Basic Income Grant for working-age adults. They project that these measures could reduce the poverty rate by 8-10 percentage points by 2030.
 - b. *Improving Grant Adequacy:* Increasing grant amounts to align more closely with the poverty line could significantly enhance the poverty-reducing impact of social grants. The authors estimate that doubling the value of the Child Support Grant could reduce child poverty rates by 15-20 percentage points.
4. *Rural Development and Land Reform:* Addressing rural poverty through targeted interventions remains crucial. Hall and Kepe (2022: 103) propose accelerating land reform and supporting smallholder agriculture. They project that redistributing 30% of commercial farmland to black farmers and providing comprehensive support could reduce rural poverty rates by 10-15 percentage points by 2030.
5. *Urban Development and Informal Settlement Upgrading:* Addressing urban poverty is crucial with increasing urbanisation. Turok and Borel-Saladin (2021: 55) propose a comprehensive approach to upgrading informal settlements, including improved access to basic services, secure tenure, and economic opportunities. They estimate that upgrading 50% of informal settlements by 2030 could reduce urban poverty rates by 5-7 percentage points.
6. *Financial Inclusion:* Expanding access to financial services for the poor can significantly reduce poverty. Wentzel et al. (2022: 89) argue that increasing financial inclusion through digital banking, mobile money, and microfinance could reduce poverty rates by 2-3 percentage points by 2030. They project that achieving 80%

financial inclusion among adults could lift 500,000-750,000 individuals out of poverty.

7. *Health System Strengthening*: Improving healthcare access and quality is crucial for breaking the cycle of poverty. Cleary et al. (2023: 112) propose expanding the National Health Insurance (NHI) scheme and strengthening primary healthcare. They estimate that achieving universal health coverage could reduce poverty rates by 3-4 percentage points by 2030, primarily through reduced out-of-pocket health expenditures and improved labour productivity.

2.7.4.2 Role of Innovation and Technology in Poverty Alleviation

Innovation and technology present significant opportunities for accelerating poverty reduction efforts in South Africa. This section explores how emerging technologies and innovative approaches can alleviate poverty across various sectors:

1. *Digital Financial Services*: Financial technology (fintech) innovations can be crucial in expanding financial inclusion. Wentzel et al. (2022: 91) project that widespread adoption of mobile banking and digital payment systems could increase financial inclusion rates by 15-20 percentage points by 2030, potentially lifting 300,000-400,000 individuals out of poverty through improved access to credit, savings, and remittance services.
2. *E-learning and EdTech*: Digital education platforms can help address educational disparities. Spaull and Van der Berg (2023: 78) argue that integrating e-learning solutions into the education system could improve learning outcomes, particularly in underserved areas. They estimate that widespread adoption of quality e-learning tools could increase educational attainment by 1-2 years on average, potentially reducing poverty rates by 2-3 percentage points by 2030.

3. *Precision Agriculture*: Innovative agricultural technologies can boost productivity and resilience in the face of climate change. Nhemachena et al. (2021: 47) project that adopting precision agriculture techniques, such as drone-based monitoring and smart irrigation systems, could increase agricultural yields by 20-30% and reduce crop losses by 15-20%. They estimate these improvements could lift 200,000-300,000 smallholder farmers out of poverty by 2030.
4. *Telemedicine and Digital Health*: Digital health solutions can improve healthcare access in underserved areas. Cleary et al. (2023: 115) argue that expanding telemedicine services could significantly reduce healthcare costs and improve health outcomes for poor communities. They project that achieving 50% coverage of telemedicine services in rural areas could reduce poverty rates by 1-2 percentage points by 2030, primarily through improved health outcomes and reduced healthcare-related financial burdens.
5. *Smart Cities and Urban Technologies*: Innovative urban technologies can improve service delivery and create economic opportunities in cities. Turok and Borel-Saladin (2021: 58) propose that implementing smart city solutions, such as intelligent transport systems and digital public services, could enhance urban livability and economic productivity. They estimate that comprehensive smart city initiatives in major metropolitan areas could reduce urban poverty by 3-4 percentage points by 2030.
6. *Blockchain for Land Rights*: Blockchain technology could help address land reform challenges. Hall and Kepe (2022: 106) suggest using blockchain for land registration to enhance tenure security and facilitate more efficient land redistribution. They project that implementing a blockchain-based land registry system could accelerate land reform efforts, potentially benefiting 500,000-750,000 households by 2030.

7. *Big Data for Targeted Interventions:* Advanced data analytics can improve the targeting and effectiveness of poverty reduction programs. Leibbrandt et al. (2021: 81) argue that leveraging big data and machine learning algorithms could enhance the precision of social protection interventions. They estimate that data-driven targeting could improve the efficiency of social grant distribution by 10-15%, potentially reaching an additional 500,000-750,000 poor households by 2030.

While these opportunities present significant potential for poverty reduction, it is crucial to note that their success depends on practical implementation, adequate resourcing, and addressing structural barriers. Moreover, ensuring that technological innovations are accessible to and benefit the poor is essential to prevent exacerbating existing inequalities.

The potential areas for intervention and the role of innovation and technology in poverty alleviation underscore the multifaceted nature of poverty reduction strategies. Effective poverty alleviation will require a comprehensive approach that leverages these opportunities while addressing the underlying structural causes of poverty in South Africa.

2.7.5 Conclusion

Examining future projections and challenges in South Africa's poverty landscape reveals a complex interplay of persistent issues, emerging threats, and potential opportunities. This analysis underscores the multifaceted nature of poverty and the need for comprehensive, adaptive strategies to address it effectively in the coming decades.

Projected poverty trends indicate that while some progress is possible, achieving significant and sustainable poverty reduction will be challenging. Short-term projections highlight the immediate impact of crises such as the COVID-19 pandemic, while long-term projections emphasise the need for structural changes to meet ambitious poverty reduction targets. The influence of factors such as economic growth, education, demographic

shifts, and social protection policies will be crucial in shaping these trends (World Bank, 2018: 45; Statistics South Africa, 2021a: 32; Schotte et al., 2018: 97-99).

Emerging challenges, particularly climate change and technological disruption, present new hurdles in the fight against poverty. The impact of climate change on agriculture, water resources, and urban environments threatens to exacerbate poverty, especially among vulnerable populations (Ziervogel, 2019: 495-506). Similarly, technological disruption poses risks of job displacement and widening digital divides while also offering the potential for new economic opportunities (Bhorat and Rooney, 2017: 156).

However, amidst these challenges lie significant opportunities for poverty reduction. Interventions in education, labour markets, social protection, and rural development present pathways for addressing poverty's root causes (Spaull et al., 2020b: 78; Leibbrandt et al., 2019: 234; Devereux, 2017: 345). Moreover, the role of innovation and technology in poverty alleviation offers promising avenues for enhancing the effectiveness and reach of poverty reduction strategies (Van der Berg et al., 2022: 56; Mwangi and Marais, 2020: 189).

This forward-looking analysis highlights the need for adaptive, innovative approaches to poverty reduction in South Africa and inspires and motivates the reader. It suggests that while the challenges are significant, there are substantial opportunities for positive change. Effective poverty alleviation in the coming decades will require addressing current manifestations of poverty, anticipating and mitigating future challenges, and leveraging emerging opportunities.

The complexity of the poverty landscape revealed in this analysis underscores the importance of holistic, cross-sectoral approaches to poverty reduction. It also highlights the potential role of various stakeholders, including government, civil society, and the private sector, in contributing to poverty alleviation efforts. As South Africa navigates the

challenges and opportunities of the coming decades, a nuanced understanding of these dynamics will be crucial for developing effective, sustainable strategies for poverty reduction, engaging the reader in the process and fostering a sense of commitment.

2.8 Conclusion: Synthesis and Transitional Summary

This chapter has provided an in-depth exploration of the persistent and multifaceted nature of poverty in South Africa. Despite nearly three decades of democratic governance and numerous policy interventions, poverty remains entrenched, driven by both historical legacies and ongoing socio-economic disparities. The analysis presented here underscores the critical need for innovative, coordinated responses that address poverty's immediate and systemic dimensions.

Reflecting on the research questions posed in Chapter 1, the findings from this chapter highlight the necessity of a missional ecclesiology that actively engages with these socio-economic realities. The NHKA, in re-evaluating its historical complicity in perpetuating inequality, is well-positioned to adopt a more transformative approach to poverty alleviation—one that moves beyond traditional charity-based models towards advocacy and systemic change (Schutte, 2003: 250; Dreyer, 2020b: 259). However, this shift towards a more activist stance is essential but presents significant challenges. The church must navigate internal resistance and the inertia of entrenched traditions that could hinder the full realisation of a missional ecclesiology. Furthermore, the success of this transition depends not only on theological alignment with the *missio Dei* but also on the church's capacity to translate this vision into practical, sustained action that can address deep-seated socio-economic inequalities (Bosch, 1991: 390; Niemandt, 2014: 6; Dreyer, 2020b: 262).

Looking ahead, the contextual analysis provided in this chapter sets the foundation for the examination in Chapter 3, which will delve into the NHKA's historical engagement with poverty. Chapter 3 will critically assess how the church's ecclesiology, particularly its identity as a

Volkskerk, has influenced its approach to poverty alleviation across different historical periods (Van Wyk & Buitendag, 2008: 1464; Dreyer, 2006: 1347). This analysis is crucial for understanding the NHKA's current challenges and opportunities as it seeks to redefine its mission and role in a post-apartheid society.

By bridging the contextual understanding of poverty with the historical analysis of the NHKA's responses, the next chapter will provide insights into how past practices can inform a more robust and missional response to poverty today. However, this forward-looking approach must be critically evaluated to ensure that the church's strategies do not merely replicate past efforts under a new guise but represent a genuine transformation in theology and practice. The insights gained from this chapter will inform the theoretical framework and guide practical applications in the subsequent chapters, ultimately determining the NHKA's relevance and impact in a rapidly changing South African context.

Chapter 3 – Historical Engagement of the NHKA with Poverty in South Africa

3.1 Introduction

Since its establishment in 1842, the NHKA has played a significant role in South African society, particularly in addressing socio-economic challenges like poverty. Central to understanding the NHKA's historical engagement with poverty is its identity as a *volkskerk* (ethnic church), rooted in Afrikaner nationalism and ecclesiology, which shaped its mission and diaconal practices (Van Wyk, 2017: 102; Dreyer, 2013: 21; Britz, 2017: 5).

Building on the theoretical framework and research questions outlined in Chapter 1, this chapter examines how the NHKA's ecclesiology, legal structures, and socio-political contexts influenced its historical approach to poverty alleviation. The church's theological identity and governance systems, such as the Church Law (*Kerkwet*) and Church Order (*Kerkorde*), framed its internal and external actions, including its diaconal mission within the Afrikaner community (Pont, 1995: 1175-1176; Van Wyk, 1992: 1014).

The chapter also draws on missional ecclesiology, as introduced in Chapter 2, to evaluate the NHKA's evolving understanding of its societal role. This framework underscores a shift from institutional maintenance to active social transformation (Dreyer, 2015: 2-3; Niemandt, 2014: 245). By analysing the interplay of ecclesiology, legal frameworks, and historical contexts, this chapter explores how these factors shaped the NHKA's socio-economic mission across three key periods: the Post-Boer War Era (1902-1948), the Apartheid Era (1948-1994), and the Post-Apartheid Era (1994-present).

Each section investigates how the church's theological identity, concept of *volkskerk*, and socio-political alignment influenced its diaconal practices. For example, during the Post-Boer War Era, nationalist

sentiments reinforced the NHKA's identity as a *volkskerk*. In the Apartheid Era, its theological justification for segregation aligned with state policies, while the Post-Apartheid Era reflects a broader ecclesiological and missional transformation (Dreyer, 2011b: 4; Buitendag & Van Wyk, 2008: 19; Van der Merwe, 2020: 310).

Critical reflections at the end of each section evaluate the NHKA's engagement with poverty in relation to the research questions (Chapter 1, Section 1.5). The chapter concludes by considering the implications of these historical developments for the NHKA's contemporary mission and its role in a democratic South Africa (Van Rensburg, 2023: 3; Dreyer, 2020a: 8). This analysis contributes to a deeper understanding of the NHKA's theological and institutional dynamics, providing insights into the complex relationship between ecclesiology, church polity, and social responsibility (Van Wyk, 2017: 103; Maartens, 2023: 21).

3.2 Post-Boer War Era (1902-1948)

3.2.1 Contextual Background

The socio-economic devastation following the Boer War (1899-1902) placed the NHKA at a critical juncture. The Afrikaner community, to which the NHKA was closely tied, faced widespread poverty, displacement, and social disintegration. The war's impact was particularly severe on rural Afrikaner families, who lost their farms and livelihoods. The massive loss of life during the war, leaving many women and children without providers, exacerbated economic hardship (Pakenham, 1979: 583-585; Giliomee, 2003: 287-290).

Numerous scholarly works have thoroughly documented the war's long-term effects on Afrikaner society, including the trauma of concentration camps and the resulting social disintegration (van Heyningen, 2013: 201-205; Grundlingh, 1983: 112-116; Thompson, 2001: 149-152). As such, this study will not delve further into these details. Instead, it focuses on the socio-economic challenges that led to significant urban migration among Afrikaners, resulting in the creation of informal settlements, or '*blikkiesdorpe*,' characterised by extreme poverty. These 'poor white'

communities became a major social issue, struggling to survive in a rapidly industrialising economy (Otto, 1954: 35-39; Pont, 1995: 1175; Dreyer, 2024: 149-151).

These socio-economic conditions deeply affected the NHKA and were profoundly connected to the Afrikaner identity. The war nearly destroyed the church, leaving less than ten thousand members and approximately 80% of all farmsteads requiring rebuilding. The loss of about 25% of the population, either in concentration camps or on the battlefield, severely diminished church membership. British troops also destroyed most church buildings, leaving only three ministers to serve the scattered congregations (Pont, 1995: 1175; Dreyer, 2011b: 4).

The NHKA's identity as a *volkskerk* was crucial in shaping its response to these challenges. This identity, rooted in Afrikaner nationalism, concentrated the church's diaconal responsibility primarily on its community, a focus institutionalised through the Church Law and Provisions of 1904, which limited church membership to white persons (NHKA, 1904: 27). This exclusionary policy, later reinforced in subsequent editions of the Church Law, was central to the church's identity as a *volkskerk*.

The post-war period was marked by anti-British sentiments and growing Afrikaner nationalism, leading to the establishment of separate living areas, schools, and churches aimed at preserving Afrikaner culture, language, and religion (Pont, 1995: 1175; Dreyer, 2011b: 4). The NHKA's response to the socio-economic crisis was initially driven by individual ministers who mobilised congregations to support one another. Church councils took responsibility for caring for the widows and orphans left by the war, reflecting a deep commitment to the welfare of those most affected by the conflict (Botes, 1991: 802).

These immediate relief efforts underscored the need for more structured and sustained poverty alleviation programmes, which the NHKA began

to formalise in the following years (Pont, 1995: 1176). Re-establishing church structures during this period was crucial in addressing the Afrikaner community's spiritual and material needs (Pont, 1981: 220-226; Botes, 1991: 802). Church councils, operating under the presbyterial-synodal model, conducted visits to support congregants facing poverty and hardship, providing both spiritual guidance and practical assistance (Pont, 2007: 32; Oberholzer, 2010: 102).

3.2.2 Early Ecclesiology and Church Concept

3.2.2.1 Ecclesiology and the Church's Role in Society

The NHKA's response to the socio-economic devastation following the Boer War was grounded in its ecclesiological identity as a *volkskerk*, deeply intertwined with Afrikaner nationalism. Drawing on Reformed theology, the NHKA reinforced its ecclesiological framework, emphasising the sovereignty of God, the authority of Scripture, and the church as a covenant community. Central to this ecclesiology was the presbyterial-synodal church concept, a governance structure balancing local congregational authority with broader oversight through regional and national synods. This model ensured the consistent application of the NHKA's *volkskerk* identity across all levels of governance, reinforcing its mission to serve the Afrikaner community (Pont, 1995: 1171; Dreyer, 2006: 1338).

The Presbyterial-Synodal model was crucial in formalising the NHKA's ecclesiological identity and mission. This governance structure allowed for a cohesive and coordinated approach to addressing the socio-economic needs of the Afrikaner community, particularly in the aftermath of the Anglo-Boer War. The Church Law and Provisions of 1904, implemented through this framework, codified the church's commitment to its community, formalising its ethnocentric focus and limiting membership to white persons (NHKA, 1904: 27; Pont, 1995: 1175-1176).

This ecclesiological stance was not merely a theological abstraction but a guiding principle that shaped the NHKA's engagement with social

issues, including poverty alleviation. The Church Law's explicit limitation of membership to white persons exemplified how ecclesiology and social mission were intertwined, with the church's mission directed almost exclusively toward Afrikaners (Pont, 1995: 1173-1174; Dreyer, 2006: 1343-1344). The presbyterial-synodal structure facilitated a unified approach to poverty alleviation, aligning local and national efforts while reinforcing the NHKA's identity as a *volkskerk*. However, this centralised approach also perpetuated exclusionary practices, limiting the church's engagement with broader socio-economic issues affecting non-white populations (Van Wyk, 2017: 102; Britz, 2017: 5).

This section lays the foundation for understanding the development of the NHKA's diaconal structures and poverty alleviation initiatives shaped by these ecclesiological principles. By maintaining a focus on its identity as a *volkskerk*, the NHKA's early 20th-century activities reveal both the strengths and limitations of its ecclesiology—a theme critically analysed in subsequent sections.

3.2.3 Diaconal Structures and Poverty Alleviation Initiatives

3.2.3.1 Historical Background of the Church Law and Provisions of 1904

The socio-economic aftermath of the Boer War necessitated a structured and sustained response from the NHKA to address widespread poverty among the Afrikaner community. Rooted in the ecclesiological principles of the *volkskerk* and governed by the presbyterial-synodal model, the NHKA's response was characterised by the establishment and formalisation of diaconal structures. These structures ensured that the church's commitment to its community was both theologically grounded and practically effective.

3.2.3.2 Establishment of Church Councils and the Diaconate

To effectively implement the poverty alleviation initiatives mandated by the Church Law, the NHKA formalised the structure of church councils and the diaconate. These councils, composed of ordained ministers,

elders, and deacons, oversaw their congregations' spiritual and material well-being. The diaconate, in particular, was central to the church's mission of providing spiritual and practical support to the impoverished, reflecting the NHKA's theological commitment to living out the gospel through acts of service (Van Wyk, 1992: 1017; Buitendag & Van Wyk, 2008: 19).

As urban poverty among Afrikaners grew, particularly with the rise of the 'poor white' problem, the diaconate's role became increasingly critical. Deacons, elected for their compassion and integrity, managed the collection and distribution of alms and coordinated the provision of essential goods and services. This hands-on approach ensured that the church's support was tailored to the specific needs of its congregants, reinforcing the NHKA's identity as a *volkskerk* focused on the welfare of the Afrikaner community (Groenewald, 2010: 115).

However, this ethnocentric focus also meant that the church's diaconal activities were largely exclusionary, addressing only the needs of white Afrikaners. This limitation highlights a significant tension within the NHKA's mission—between its theological commitment to the Afrikaner people and the broader Christian imperative to serve all in need (Van Wyk, 2017: 102).

3.2.3.3 Tasks and Operations of the Diaconate

The diaconate's operations targeted poverty alleviation within the NHKA's congregations. Deacons conducted home visits, assessing the needs of individuals and families and providing both spiritual support and practical assistance. This approach ensured that aid was personalised and responsive to the specific circumstances of those in need, aligning with the church's theological emphasis on compassionate service (NHKA, 1904; Van Wyk, 1992: 1020).

Financial stewardship was a critical aspect of the diaconate's work. Deacons managed the collection and distribution of alms with high

transparency and accountability, presenting regular reports to the church council to maintain congregational trust and encourage ongoing generosity. This focus on ethical governance underscored the NHKA's reliance on its members' goodwill, a model that, while effective, was vulnerable to economic downturns (Van Wyk, 1992: 1021).

Beyond financial aid, the diaconate coordinated the provision of essential goods such as food, clothing, and medical supplies. During times of crisis, like the Great Depression, the diaconate expanded its role, organising employment assistance programmes and community initiatives that provided alternative sources of income. However, while beneficial, these efforts remained largely within the confines of the Afrikaner community, reflecting the church's ongoing struggle with broader societal engagement (Van Wyk, 1992: 1029).

3.2.3.4 Poverty Alleviation Programmes and Initiatives

The NHKA's poverty alleviation programmes in the early 20th century were marked by immediate relief efforts and long-term strategies to build resilience within the Afrikaner community. One of the most significant initiatives was the establishment of children's homes, like the Jac van Belkum Kinderhuis, which provided holistic care for orphans and children from impoverished backgrounds. These homes reflected the church's commitment to child welfare, a key aspect of its diaconal mission (Dreyer, 2024: 177; Van Wyk, 1992: 1024).

Additionally, the NHKA created relief funds to support individuals and families facing acute hardship, with deacons ensuring that aid was distributed equitably and effectively. Educational programmes, including literacy classes and vocational training, were also established to empower individuals and promote self-sufficiency, demonstrating the NHKA's forward-looking approach to poverty alleviation (Van Wyk, 1992: 1025-1026).

However, while these programmes successfully addressed the needs of the Afrikaner community, they also underscored the church's ethnic-specific focus, potentially limiting its broader societal impact. This narrow approach would later face significant challenges as South Africa's socio-political landscape evolved (Van Bart, 2014: 186; Dreyer, 2024: 171).

3.2.3.5 The Nederduitsch Hervormde Sustersvereniging (NHSV)

The *Nederduitsch Hervormde Sustersvereniging* (NHSV), established in 1940 but with roots extending back to the early 20th century, played a crucial role in supporting the NHKA's diaconal efforts. Although not formally a diaconal body, the NHSV's initiatives significantly contributed to the church's poverty alleviation work, particularly in assisting impoverished women and children (Pont & Van Staden, 1998: 19).

The NHSV's activities not only complemented the work of the diaconate but also highlighted the critical role of women in the church's mission. By mobilising the resources and labour of its members, the NHSV ensured that the NHKA's charitable initiatives were comprehensive and responsive to the needs of the Afrikaner community. However, like other NHKA efforts, the NHSV primarily focused on the Afrikaner population, reflecting the church's broader ethnocentric mission (Gedenkalbum, 2014: 12; Pont & Van Staden, 1998: 19).

3.2.3.6 Case Studies Illustrating the Church's Diaconal Work

Several case studies illustrate the NHKA's proactive approach to poverty alleviation:

1. *Children's Home (1922)*: In response to the increase in orphans due to the influenza pandemic and Boer War aftereffects, the NHKA established the Hervormde Kerk Weeshuis in Krugersdorp,

providing holistic care for children (Maartens, 2023: 36; Van Wyk, 1992: 1027).

2. *Support Fund (1925)*: The NHKA created the Ondersteuningsfonds, which provides targeted financial assistance to needy families and fosters a sense of solidarity within the community (Van Wyk, 1992: 1028).
3. *Response to the Great Depression (1930s)*: The diaconate organised employment assistance and cooperative ventures, which were vital in maintaining the church's social welfare commitment during widespread poverty (Van Wyk, 1992: 1029; Dreyer, 2024: 171).
4. *Support Council (1948)*: The establishment of the Support Council marked a significant development in the NHKA's approach to social welfare, professionalising and expanding the church's diaconal work (Van Rensburg, 2023: 3; Pont & Van Staden, 1998: 19).

These case studies highlight the NHKA's structured and compassionate efforts to address poverty, fulfilling its theological mandate to serve the marginalised. However, while effective within the Afrikaner community, the focus on ethnic-specific solutions may have limited the church's broader societal influence, reflecting the ongoing tension between its ecclesiology and social mission.

3.2.4 Critical Reflection (1902-1948)

The NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation during the post-Boer War era reveals a complex interplay between its ecclesiological identity as a *volkskerk* and its mission to address the socio-economic challenges faced by the Afrikaner community. This period was marked by significant achievements and notable limitations, which must be critically examined

to understand the implications of the NHKA's social mission and theological commitments.

3.2.4.1 Strengths and Achievements

One of the NHKA's key strengths during this period was its ability to mobilise resources and establish effective diaconal structures in response to the socio-economic crises faced by the Afrikaner community.

The formalisation of the Church Law and Provisions of 1904 provided a legal and organisational framework that enabled the church to systematically address poverty and related issues within its community (Van Wyk, 1992: 1014). This framework allowed for a cohesive and coordinated response, ensuring the church's efforts were efficient and consistent across congregations. The creation of support mechanisms, such as relief funds and children's homes, demonstrated the NHKA's commitment to providing immediate relief while fostering long-term resilience within the Afrikaner community (Pont, 1995: 1175-1176; Dreyer, 2024: 157).

The NHKA's focus on education, economic empowerment, and social welfare initiatives highlights its comprehensive and forward-looking approach to poverty alleviation. Programmes such as the *Helpmekaar Fonds* and the establishment of children's homes were particularly impactful, addressing both immediate needs and the underlying factors contributing to poverty within the Afrikaner community. These initiatives underscored the church's commitment to uplifting its community during a time of great need, reflecting a holistic understanding of poverty that integrated spiritual, social, and economic dimensions (Van Bart, 2014: 186).

3.2.4.2 Limitations and Critiques

Despite these achievements, the NHKA's approach during this period was not without significant limitations. The church's identity as a

volkskerk led to a narrow focus on the Afrikaner community, often excluding other racial and ethnic groups from its diaconal efforts.

This ethnocentric approach, while understandable in the historical context of post-war Afrikaner nationalism, raises critical ethical questions about the church's broader Christian mission. The alignment of the NHKA's diaconal work with Afrikaner nationalism limited its ability to engage with the wider socio-economic challenges facing South Africa's diverse population, thereby restricting the church's social mission to a specific ethnic group (Dreyer, 2006: 1338-1339; Willoughby-Herard, 2007: 480).

Furthermore, while effective in standardising diaconal activities, the centralisation of church governance introduced a certain rigidity in responding to localised needs. The standardisation dictated by the Church Law and Provisions of 1904 may have stifled the adaptability and responsiveness of individual congregations to the unique socio-economic conditions of their contexts (Van Wyk, 1992: 1015). This centralised approach also risked creating a bureaucratic distance between church leadership and the grassroots realities of poverty, potentially limiting the effectiveness of the NHKA's diaconal initiatives.

Theologically, the NHKA's alignment with the socio-political ideologies of the time, particularly its policies of racial exclusion, presents a significant area of critique. The exclusion of non-white individuals from church membership, as formalised in the 1904 provisions, reflects a troubling conflation of cultural identity with theological principles (Dreyer, 2011b: 4; Britz, 2017: 5).

This exclusionary stance stands in stark contrast to Christianity's universal message, which calls for the inclusion and care of all people, regardless of race or ethnicity (Buitendag & Van Wyk, 2011: 4). The NHKA's approach during this period highlights a theological and ethical

tension between its identity as a *volkskerk* and its broader Christian responsibilities.

3.2.4.3 The Tension Between Mission and Identity

The NHKA's approach during the post-Boer War era underscores the ongoing tension between its mission to serve people experiencing poverty and its identity as a *volkskerk*. This tension manifested in the church's actions and theological justifications, creating a complex interplay between ecclesiology and social action. While the church succeeded in addressing the immediate needs of its Afrikaner congregants, its broader mission was constrained by its ethnocentric focus and alignment with nationalist ideologies (Dreyer, 2006: 1343-1344).

This reflection raises essential questions about the church's role in society and the extent to which its theological commitments should inform its social responsibilities. The NHKA's experience during this period is a cautionary tale of how ecclesiological identity can empower and limit the church's mission. As the church moved into the Apartheid era, these tensions would become even more pronounced, challenging the NHKA to reconcile its identity with its broader Christian calling.

3.2.4.4 Lessons for Contemporary Ecclesiology

Critical reflection on this period offers valuable lessons for contemporary ecclesiology, particularly in the context of the NHKA's ongoing mission in post-Apartheid South Africa. It underscores the importance of a missional approach that is both contextually sensitive and theologically grounded. The NHKA's experience highlights the need for the church to remain vigilant against the dangers of conflating cultural identity with theological principles and to strive for an inclusive mission that reflects the universal message of the Gospel (Dreyer, 2016a: 2-3).

As the NHKA continued to evolve in the 20th century, these lessons became increasingly relevant, particularly during the Apartheid era, when

the church's identity and mission were further tested. The challenges and critiques identified in this reflection provide a foundation for understanding the church's subsequent actions and theological developments during one of the most tumultuous periods in South African history.

This analysis of the post-Boer War Era highlights how the NHKA's theological identity as a '*volkskerk*' both shaped and constrained its poverty alleviation efforts. It addresses the research question of how church polity influenced the NHKA's socio-economic mission during this period (Chapter 1, section 1.5).

3.3 The NHKA During the Apartheid Era (1948–1994)

3.3.1 Contextual Background

From 1948 to 1994, the NHKA was closely aligned with the socio-political context of Apartheid South Africa. During this period, the church's theological stance became deeply intertwined with Afrikaner nationalism, significantly influencing its approach to poverty alleviation.

As the NHKA transitioned from the post-Boer War Era into the Apartheid Era, its ecclesiological identity continued to shape its socio-political engagement, revealing both continuity and shifts in its mission to address poverty. This period saw the church's mission increasingly influenced by its alignment with state policies, further complicating its approach to social responsibility.

The NHKA's commitment to the Afrikaner community led to a focus on addressing the socio-economic needs of this group, often aligning with the broader objectives of the Apartheid state (Dreyer, 2011b:2). This alignment can be seen as a continuation of the church's historical trajectory, as discussed in Chapter 2, Section 2.4, where the socio-political influences on the NHKA's development are explored.

The NHKA's alignment with Afrikaner nationalism was not a sudden development but the culmination of a long-standing relationship between the church and Volk. The 1888 Broederlijke Schrijve already proclaimed the NHKA as:

"the church of our fathers, the Church of the people who founded the Republic ... For the people, by the people, and through the people" (NHKA, 1888:91, cited in Dreyer, 2006:1342).

This statement reflects the church's early adoption of a nationalist identity, a theme introduced in Section 3.1. The concept of a *volkskerk* evolved significantly during this period, with the NHKA developing a theological justification for its exclusive focus on the Afrikaner community, particularly in response to growing criticism from the global ecumenical movement (Botha, 1986:52). This *Volksteologie* supported and justified the racial segregation mandated by the Apartheid state, reflecting a theological commitment to maintaining Afrikaner identity above broader Christian principles.

3.3.2 Ecclesiology and Church Concept

The NHKA's ecclesiology during the Apartheid era was deeply influenced by its identity as a *volkskerk*, a concept shaped by the theological works of Dutch theologians such as Johannes Calvyn, P.J. Hoedemaker, and A.A. Van Ruler (Botha, 1989:3-29; Dreyer, 2006:1348). These theologians emphasised the importance of covenant, order, and theocracy, which became foundational to the NHKA's ecclesiology and justified racial segregation as a divine mandate. This theological framework not only provided religious legitimacy to Apartheid policies but also reinforced the NHKA's role as a guardian of Afrikaner identity. This ecclesiological development is directly connected to the church's historical identity, as discussed in Section 3.2, where the early formation of the *volkskerk* concept was introduced.

A significant development occurred in 1951 when the NHKA revised its Church Law by replacing Article II with Article III. The new article explicitly stated:

"The Church, aware of the dangers that mixing of white and non-white poses for both groups, will not allow any equality in its midst, but aims to establish separate ethnic churches for different ethnic groups, in the conviction that this is how the Lord's command - 'Make disciples of all nations' (Matthew 28:19) - will best be realised and that such a division of labour will not harm the unity in Christ. Therefore, only white persons belong to the Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika." (NHKA, 1951)

This ecclesiological stance had profound implications for the NHKA's mission, as it restricted its diaconal work to the Afrikaner community, reinforcing social divides and neglecting the needs of non-Afrikaner communities. Theological justifications for racial segregation became central to the NHKA's self-understanding, further entrenching its alignment with the Apartheid state (Dreyer, 2018:4). This restriction in mission focus is consistent with the analysis in Chapter 1, Section 1.3, where the NHKA's theological identity and its implications for socio-economic engagement are explored.

3.3.3 Church Law and Provisions

The 1951 Church Law and Provisions cemented the NHKA's institutional commitment to Apartheid. Article III's restriction of church membership to whites reflected the church's broader strategy to preserve Afrikaner identity, mirroring the segregation enforced by the Apartheid government. The NHKA's 1973 Pastoral Letter reiterated this commitment, declaring:

"The church wishes to state emphatically that these measures (i.e., segregation in church and state) are not temporary, but are permanent and unchangeable and

founded on Scriptural principles." (NHKA, 1973:111, cited in Dreyer, 2011b:2)

This declaration further entrenched the NHKA's theological justification for Apartheid, positioning racial segregation as a non-negotiable aspect of its ecclesial identity. Critics argue that this stance isolated the NHKA from the global Christian community, deepening its moral and theological isolation (Dreyer, 2013:6). This continuation of the church's theological stance builds on the earlier discussion in Section 3.2, where the development of the church's legal framework and its implications for its identity were first explored.

3.3.4 Ministerial Practice and Poverty Alleviation

The NHKA's approach to mission work and poverty alleviation during the Apartheid era was heavily influenced by its *volkskerk* theology, which prioritised the welfare of the Afrikaner community over broader societal needs. The church's diaconal structures, while well-organized and effective within the Afrikaner community, were constrained by the wider context of Apartheid. The 1951 Church Law directed missionary efforts toward establishing separate ethnic churches, further reinforcing racial segregation (NHKA, 1951:29).

The diaconate, central to the NHKA's poverty alleviation efforts, was similarly limited by its ethnocentric focus. This approach, deeply aligned with Afrikaner nationalism, reflected the church's prioritisation of Afrikaner interests at the expense of broader social engagement. However, there were indications of evolving thought within the church. By the late 1980s, there was growing recognition of the need for a more inclusive approach to poverty alleviation, reflecting broader theological developments that emphasised the church's role in social transformation (Van der Merwe, 2020:304). The limitations of the NHKA's diaconal approach during Apartheid echo the challenges discussed in Chapter 2, Section 2.5, where the broader context of poverty and social justice in South Africa is analysed.

3.3.5 Critical Analysis and International Response

The NHKA's support for Apartheid drew significant criticism both within South Africa and internationally. Internally, theologians like Albert Geyser and Adrianus van Selms opposed Article III, reflecting a growing unease within the church regarding its theological justification of racial segregation (Van Aarde, 1992:159-182). Externally, the international Christian community repeatedly condemned the NHKA's stance. The 1960 Cottesloe Consultation, organised in response to the Sharpeville massacre, marked a significant turning point. The NHKA's decision to disassociate from the Consultation exemplified its resistance to external pressures for reform, further isolating the church from the global Christian community (NHKA Algemene Kerkvergadering, 1961; Dreyer, 2011b:5-6). The church's resistance to reform and its subsequent isolation are key themes rooted in the earlier discussion in Chapter 1, Section 1.4, which outlines the global and local critiques of the NHKA's theological stance.

The World Alliance of Reformed Churches (WARC) took a decisive stance against Apartheid at its 1982 Ottawa meeting, declaring that Apartheid was a sin and its theological justification a heresy (WARC, 1982). The NHKA's defiant response, including its resignation from WARC, underscored its commitment to maintaining its theological and political position despite growing global opposition (Dreyer, 2011b:6). This international critique of the NHKA's position ties back to Chapter 1, Section 1.5, where the role of international ecclesial bodies in challenging racial segregation is discussed.

3.3.6 Gradual Change and Reconciliation Efforts

As South Africa moved toward a post-Apartheid society, the NHKA faced significant challenges reconciling its past actions with new socio-political realities. The 1997 shift from a Church Law to a Church Order marked a substantial change in the NHKA's diaconal approach, reflecting broader transformations in the church's mission and social responsibility (NHKA, 1997:69). Despite these structural changes, the tension between

maintaining traditional structures and adapting to new societal demands remained a central challenge for the church (Van Wyk, 1992:1014). This transition is connected to the broader themes of change and adaptation discussed in Chapter 2, Section 2.6, which examines the NHKA's efforts to navigate the new socio-political landscape of post-Apartheid South Africa.

The establishment of the General Deacons' Assembly and Circuit Deacons' Assembly signalled a move towards greater organisation and autonomy in diaconal work. Still, questions remained about the depth and sincerity of these reforms. The NHKA's ongoing efforts to engage with its past and seek reconciliation are crucial for its future mission (Van Rensburg, 2023:1).

3.3.7 Critical Reflection (1948 – 1994)

The NHKA's involvement in the Apartheid era reveals a complex and deeply entrenched relationship between theology and politics, particularly in how this relationship shaped its approach to poverty alleviation. The church's identity as a *volkskerk* and its theological justification for racial segregation not only supported the Apartheid state but also constrained its poverty alleviation efforts to the Afrikaner community, limiting its broader Christian mission. This critique directly engages with the research questions outlined in Chapter 1, Section 1.3, which explore the NHKA's theological identity and its implications for the socio-economic mission.

3.3.7.1 Theological and Ecclesiological Foundations

The NHKA's theological justification for Apartheid, particularly its doctrine of separate '*ethnic churches*', represented a significant departure from universal Christian principles. The church's interpretation of covenant theology, shaped by Afrikaner nationalism, led to a theological framework that justified racial segregation as a divine mandate.

This theological stance not only provided religious legitimacy to Apartheid policies but also reinforced the NHKA's socio-political alignment with the state. The intertwined nature of ecclesiology and social responsibility, as discussed in Chapter 1, underscores the complex role that theological beliefs played in shaping the church's engagement with broader societal issues.

This framework isolated the NHKA from the global Christian community and reinforced racial divisions within South African society (Dreyer, 2006:1346-1347).

However, as the international Christian community condemned these practices, particularly through bodies like the World Alliance of Reformed Churches (WARC), the NHKA became increasingly isolated. The failure to engage with broader Christian principles of justice and equality highlighted the theological limitations of the *volkskerk* ideology. This isolation not only impacted the NHKA's global relationships but also limited its ability to fully address the moral and ethical implications of its theology (WARC, 1982; Dreyer, 2011b:6). The discussion of the NHKA's theological and ecclesiological foundations here builds on the analysis in Section 3.2, which introduces the church's earlier development of these concepts and sets the stage for their further entrenchment during the Apartheid era.

3.3.7.2 Ministerial Practice and Diaconal Work

The NHKA's ministerial practices during this period were marked by a tension between its commitment to Afrikaner welfare and its broader Christian responsibilities. While effective in addressing the Afrikaner community's needs, the church's ethnocentric focus limited the scope and impact of its diaconal work. The institutionalisation of diaconal efforts, primarily through the Support Council (*Ondersteuningsraad*) in 1948, provided a structured framework for poverty alleviation but also introduced a disconnect between the church and the broader societal needs (Engelbrecht, 1971:50; Van der Merwe, 2020:304).

This tension became increasingly apparent as the socio-political context of South Africa changed. While the NHKA's diaconal work was highly organised and effective within the Afrikaner community, it failed to address the broader systemic issues of poverty affecting non-Afrikaner communities. This failure underscored the limitations of a diaconal approach that was narrowly focused on ethnic identity rather than broader Christian principles of justice and inclusion (Dreyer, 2013:2). The challenges discussed in this section connect with Chapter 1, Section 1.4, which outlines the broader ethical and theological implications of the NHKA's approach to social engagement.

3.3.7.3 Ethical and Theological Critique

The NHKA's support for Apartheid raises significant ethical and theological questions. By providing theological legitimacy to a system of racial oppression, the church compromised its witness to the Gospel. The emphasis on maintaining Afrikaner identity and privilege overshadowed the NHKA's broader Christian mission, limiting its ability to act as a transformative force for justice and reconciliation in South Africa (Dreyer, 2018:6-7).

Moreover, the NHKA's theological stance during this period starkly contrasts the universal Christian call for justice, equality, and the inherent dignity of all people. The church's support for racial segregation not only contradicted these principles but also alienated it from the global Christian community, leaving a legacy of division that would require significant efforts to overcome (Van Wyk, 1992:1014). This ethical and theological critique is rooted in the broader discussion found in Chapter 2, Section 2.5, where the tensions between the NHKA's mission and its socio-political context are critically examined.

3.3.7.4 Legacy and Reconciliation

The NHKA's legacy during the Apartheid era continues to pose challenges for the church in the post-apartheid context. The church's

historical alignment with Apartheid has left deep scars that require ongoing reflection and reconciliation. While the NHKA has made efforts to adapt, including the shift to a Church Order in 1997, it must continue to critically engage with its past and strive towards a more inclusive and just expression of its faith (Van Wyk, 1992:1014; Van Rensburg, 2023:1).

Reconciliation within the NHKA involves not only addressing its historical complicity in Apartheid but also reimagining its mission in a way that fully embraces the principles of justice, equality, and inclusivity. This ongoing process of reflection and transformation is essential for the church to regain its moral authority and to contribute meaningfully to the broader South African society in the post-Apartheid era (Dreyer, 2018:7). The discussion on legacy and reconciliation here ties back to Chapter 1, Section 1.5, which introduces the future challenges and opportunities for the NHKA as it seeks to redefine its mission in a new socio-political context.

3.4 The NHKA in the Post-Apartheid Era (1994–Present)

3.4.1 Contextual Background

The transition to a democratic South Africa in 1994 marked a profound shift in the nation's socio-political landscape, requiring all institutions, including the NHKA, to critically reassess their roles in a new era. For the NHKA, this period was particularly challenging given its historical alignment with the Apartheid regime and its identity as a *volkskerk* deeply rooted in Afrikaner nationalism. The end of Apartheid necessitated a reorientation of the church's mission, moving from a focus on serving the Afrikaner community exclusively to embracing the broader demands of a democratic, multicultural society where justice, equality, and reconciliation were paramount (Dreyer, 2006:1357; Van Rensburg, 2023:3). This transition builds on the historical context provided in Section 3.3, where the NHKA's entanglement with Apartheid was critically examined.

As highlighted in Section 3.1, the NHKA's historical engagement with poverty has always been intricately linked to its ecclesiology and church polity. In the post-Apartheid era, this engagement needed to evolve to meet the complex socio-economic challenges of a newly democratic South Africa. The church's diaconal work, which had historically focused on alleviating poverty within the Afrikaner community, now faced the broader challenge of addressing the socio-economic disparities across all communities, necessitating a shift in both theological emphasis and practical implementation (Dreyer, 2013:1; Van Rensburg, 2023:2).

The post-Apartheid transformation of the NHKA was not immediate but occurred gradually over several decades. Critical developments in 1997, 2007, and 2016 marked significant milestones. As the NHKA sought to realign its mission with the new national ethos, it also confronted the collective trauma of Apartheid, requiring deep introspection and a willingness to confront uncomfortable truths about its past (Dreyer, 2020a:2). The legacy of the church's support for Apartheid, which had led to its isolation from international ecumenical bodies such as the World Alliance of Reformed Churches (WARC), played a significant role in shaping its early post-Apartheid journey (Dreyer, 2011:1). This contextual background extends the analysis in Chapter 1, Section 1.4, where the NHKA's historical challenges are first introduced.

The NHKA's ongoing diaconal work, particularly its child care initiatives through the transition from traditional orphanages to Diaconal Foster Care Houses (DPS-houses), became emblematic of its broader efforts to adapt to the new socio-economic realities. These initiatives were not merely responses to changing social conditions; they reflected a more profound theological and diaconal reorientation within the church, as explored by Maartens (2023:4). The establishment of DPS houses signified a proactive approach to addressing the needs of vulnerable children within the Afrikaner community while also grappling with the broader implications of the church's role in transforming society. This

evolution in diaconal practice links directly to the discussions in Chapter 2, Section 2.5, regarding the church's mission and social responsibility.

3.4.2 The Church Order of 1997

Adopting the new Church Order in 1997 marked a significant moment in the NHKA's post-Apartheid journey, though it did not represent the dramatic shift some might have anticipated. Rather than breaking away from its historical identity, the *1997 Church Order* largely maintained the NHKA's established theological positions, particularly its identity as a *volkskerk* (NHKA, 1997). This continuity reflected the deep-rooted nature of the NHKA's self-understanding, which was not easily altered even by the profound socio-political changes of the time (Dreyer, 2011:7). This analysis builds on the critique introduced in Section 3.3, where the church's resistance to change during Apartheid was discussed.

While the new Church Order introduced structural adjustments, it did not fully address the broader societal expectations for justice, reconciliation, and social responsibility that became increasingly prominent in the post-Apartheid era. The church's focus remained inward, grappling with its identity and role within the Afrikaner community rather than fully engaging with the transformative ethos sweeping across South Africa (Dreyer, 2006:1357; Van Rensburg, 2023:4). This continuity mirrors the challenges discussed in Chapter 1, Section 1.5, where the church's post-Apartheid transformation is first considered.

One of the key structural changes introduced by the *1997 Church Order* was the establishment of the *Ringsdiakenvergadering* (RDV), a regional assembly designed to provide services and guidance to deacons (Stoltz, 2016:46). While not immediately revolutionary, this development laid the groundwork for more significant changes in the NHKA's diaconal work. The RDV represented a step towards a more organised platform for deacons to collaborate and share resources, setting the stage for a gradual shift towards a more coordinated approach to poverty alleviation within the church (NHKA, 1997:56; Stoltz, 2016:46). This structural

evolution connects to the broader ecclesiological changes discussed in Section 3.3.

The *1997 Church Order* also marked a turning point in the NHKA's ecumenical relations. Ordinance 6 explicitly stated the NHKA's commitment to maintaining ties with other churches, particularly those within the Reformed tradition. Despite its historical isolation, this commitment reflected a growing awareness within the NHKA of the importance of reconnecting with the broader Christian community. The inclusion of this ordinance indicated a cautious yet deliberate step towards re-engagement with the global Reformed community, acknowledging the need for the NHKA to broaden its horizons beyond its traditional confines (Dreyer, 2011:5). This re-engagement links back to Chapter 1, Section 1.5, where the church's international relationships and their impact on its mission are discussed.

The *1997 Church Order* thus represented a complex moment in the NHKA's history, balancing continuity with the beginnings of change. While it did not fully embrace the new socio-political realities of post-Apartheid South Africa, it set the stage for future developments that would gradually steer the church towards a more engaged and responsive role in society.

3.4.3 The Revised Church Order of 2007

The NHKA's adoption of the revised Church Order in 2007 marked a pivotal moment in its post-Apartheid transformation. This revision represented a conscious effort to realign the church's mission with the socio-economic realities of a democratic South Africa, a process deeply rooted in the groundwork laid by the *1997 Church Order*. The earlier Order had initiated structural changes, but it was the 2007 revision that more fully embraced a missional ecclesiology, reflecting the church's evolving understanding of its role in addressing poverty and social justice within a diverse society.

The *2007 Church Order* demonstrated a significant shift towards decentralisation in diaconal work, empowering local congregations to take more responsibility for their social outreach efforts. By granting greater autonomy to the diaconate, the NHKA sought to make its poverty alleviation initiatives more responsive to the specific needs of various communities. This move was in line with the broader trend in the church to adapt its ecclesiology to the changing social context, recognising that a one-size-fits-all approach was no longer sufficient in a post-Apartheid society (Stoltz, 2016:47). This decentralisation reflects the theological shifts discussed in Section 3.3.

One of the most notable developments in the 2007 revision was the formalisation of the ADV, which had been evolving since its initial conception in the *1997 Church Order*. The ADV was crucial in coordinating diaconal activities across the NHKA, facilitating resource sharing and strategic planning among deacons. This body became instrumental in addressing the systemic nature of poverty, which required a coordinated response that extended beyond individual congregations (Van Rensburg, 2023:6; Dreyer, 2020a:5).

The revised *2007 Church Order* also underscored the NHKA's commitment to reintegrating into the global Reformed community. This was a significant departure from the church's previous isolation, a legacy of its support for Apartheid. The revisions included provisions for strengthening ecumenical relations, reflecting a growing recognition within the NHKA of the importance of solidarity with other Reformed churches in addressing global and local challenges (Dreyer, 2011:6-7). This re-engagement is consistent with the church's evolving mission, as discussed in Chapter 1, Section 1.5.

However, implementing the *2007 Church Order* was not without its challenges. The NHKA faced internal tensions as it navigated the balance between maintaining its traditional identity and embracing necessary reforms. While the church made strides in aligning its mission with the

demands of a new South Africa, there remained a degree of resistance to change within certain quarters, particularly regarding the church's historical identity as a *volkskerk* (Van Wyk, 2013:8).

The 2007 revisions thus represented both continuity and change. They built upon the foundations laid by the 1997 *Church Order* while pushing the NHKA towards a more inclusive and responsive ecclesiology. This transition period was marked by a growing awareness of the need for the church to engage more fully with the socio-economic issues of post-Apartheid South Africa, particularly in its commitment to poverty alleviation and social justice.

3.4.4 The *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV)

Establishing the ADV within the NHKA marked a pivotal moment in the church's evolving approach to its diaconal mission in post-Apartheid South Africa. The ADV was created to centralise and enhance the coordination of the church's diaconal efforts across its congregations, enabling a more unified and effective response to the socio-economic challenges of the time. This development was deeply rooted in the theological and ecclesiological shifts discussed in earlier sections, reflecting the church's growing recognition of its responsibility to address poverty and social issues within a rapidly changing society (Stoltz, 2016:48; Dreyer, 2016b:150).

The ADV played a crucial role in transforming the NHKA's social outreach from a series of isolated, congregation-specific initiatives into a coordinated, church-wide strategy. This centralisation allowed for better resource allocation, strategic planning, and the development of best practices, ensuring that the church's poverty alleviation efforts were effective and consistent with its broader mission. The ADV's efforts were critical in helping the NHKA align its diaconal work with the evolving needs of South African society, particularly as it sought to redefine its role in a post-Apartheid context (Van der Merwe, 2020:310).

A significant focus of the ADV was the management and oversight of the NHKA's child care initiatives, especially the transition to Diaconal Foster Care Houses (DPS-houses). These DPS houses represented a shift towards more individualised, community-based care, aligning with the church's broader mission of social justice and care for the vulnerable. The ADV's leadership ensured that these homes maintained high standards of care while adapting to the specific needs of the children and communities they served. This reflected the church's commitment to social justice, as established in the earlier sections of this chapter (Maartens, 2023:21-22).

The evolution of leadership within the ADV, from minister-led to deacon-led, signified an essential shift in the NHKA's understanding of the diaconate's role. This change empowered deacons with greater autonomy and responsibility, reflecting a broader trend within the church towards recognising the crucial role of lay leaders in advancing its mission. This transition was part of the church's ongoing efforts to balance tradition with the need for innovation, particularly in its social engagement efforts (Stoltz, 2016:37).

However, the transition to a deacon-led ADV was not without challenges. Some congregations found adapting to the new model difficult, which required a significant shift in mindset and practice. The move from a centralised, minister-led structure to a more decentralised, deacon-led organisation highlighted the broader tensions within the NHKA as it navigated the complex transformation process in the post-Apartheid era. These challenges underscored the need for ongoing training and support for deacons, ensuring they were equipped to meet their expanded roles effectively (Schutte, 2003:250; Stoltz, 2016:49).

The ADV's work extended beyond the church, fostering a more collaborative and holistic approach to poverty alleviation that recognised the multifaceted nature of poverty. This approach was crucial in addressing the systemic and structural issues contributing to poverty in

South Africa, reflecting the NHKA's growing commitment to social justice and its broader mission in society. The ADV's initiatives continued the church's evolving understanding of its role, as discussed in earlier sections, where poverty alleviation was increasingly seen as integral to its mission (Schutte, 2003:249; Van der Merwe, 2020:310).

Overall, the establishment and evolution of the ADV were central to the NHKA's efforts to realign its mission with the demands of a post-Apartheid society. This reflected a broader commitment to social justice and poverty alleviation within the framework established in earlier sections of Chapter 3.

3.4.5 The 2016 Revised Church Order and Resolution 1

The 71st General Assembly of the NHKA in 2016 marked a significant milestone in the church's post-Apartheid transformation. This assembly saw the adoption of Resolution 1, a foundational document that articulated a renewed understanding of the NHKA's ecclesiology under the theme "*Kerkwees in die toekoms*" (Being Church in the Future). This resolution represented a pivotal moment in the church's ongoing efforts to reconcile its historical identity with the demands of a new, inclusive South Africa while also responding to the challenges identified in previous sections of this chapter (NHKA, 2016a; Dreyer, 2020a:5).

Resolution 1 emphasised several critical aspects of the church's identity and mission, crucial in shaping its diaconal and social engagement. The resolution underscored the church's nature as rooted like God, independent of contemporary challenges, and highlighted the NHKA's understanding of itself as an eschatological community living between Christ's first and second comings. This theological perspective was vital in guiding the church's approach to its mission in a changing society, where its diaconal efforts were increasingly seen as an expression of its broader ecclesiological commitments (NHKA, 2016a:66; Dreyer, 2020a:6).

Central to the *2016 Church Order* was the inclusion of the concept of the priesthood of all believers, a significant theological shift that reflected the NHKA's evolving understanding of ministry. This inclusion, addressed in several critical articles of the Church Order, marked a departure from earlier church orders by explicitly recognising the role of all church members in the church's mission and ministry. This shift was significant for the church's diaconal work, as it empowered lay members to take a more active role in poverty alleviation and social justice initiatives, consistent with the broader theological framework discussed in earlier sections (NHKA, 2016a:74-79; Dreyer, 2020a:6).

The revised Church Order also strongly emphasised the NHKA as a missional community. This theme was closely tied to the church's evolving understanding of its societal role. Ordinance 7.1.1 of the Church Order explicitly states that the church exists to proclaim the gospel in various ways through the lives of its members. This focus on the missional nature of the congregation aligned with broader trends in Reformed ecclesiology, where the church's social engagement, particularly in areas such as poverty alleviation, was increasingly seen as integral to its identity and mission (Dreyer, 2020a:8).

The changes introduced by the *2016 Church Order* also reflected the NHKA's response to the broader socio-political context of post-Apartheid South Africa. The emphasis on diversity in unity, highlighted in the resolution, directly responded to the church's historical alignment with Afrikaner nationalism and its subsequent efforts to reposition itself as a more inclusive and socially engaged institution. This shift was crucial in helping the church address its past legacy while embracing a more forward-looking and inclusive approach to its mission (NHKA, 2016a:74-79).

The *2016 Church Order's* focus on empowering all church members in ministry and mission was a significant step towards realising the broader goals of the NHKA's transformation process, as discussed in earlier

sections. By integrating these themes into its official structures and practices, the church could better align its diaconal work with its theological commitments, ensuring that its poverty alleviation efforts were theologically grounded and practically practical.

The impact of the 2016 revisions on the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation was profound. By formalising the concept of the priesthood of all believers and emphasising the missional nature of the congregation, the church created a more inclusive and participatory framework for its social engagement. This framework was essential in enabling the church to respond more effectively to the needs of post-Apartheid South Africa, where the challenges of poverty and inequality required a concerted and collective effort from all members of the church community (Schutte, 2003:252; Dreyer, 2020a:8).

The 2016 General Assembly and the adoption of the revised *2016 Church Order* represented a critical moment in the NHKA's transformation journey. These changes reflected the church's ongoing efforts to address its historical legacy. They provided a solid theological and structural foundation for its continued engagement with the social issues facing South Africa.

3.4.6 The Impact of these Changes on Poverty Alleviation

The gradual transformation of the NHKA's ecclesiology and church order throughout the post-Apartheid era has significantly influenced the church's approach to poverty alleviation. The structural changes implemented through the *2016 Church Order* and earlier reforms, such as the establishment of the *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV), have provided the church with a more flexible and responsive framework for its diaconal work. These developments allowed the NHKA to better align its poverty alleviation efforts with its evolving understanding of its mission in a democratic and inclusive South Africa (Van Rensburg, 2023:8; Dreyer, 2020a:8).

One of the most notable impacts of these changes was the increased autonomy and empowerment of deacons within the church. The emphasis on the priesthood of all believers and the missional nature of the congregation, as outlined in the *2016 Church Order*, enabled deacons to take on greater responsibility in addressing the socio-economic challenges their communities face. This shift allowed for more localised and contextually relevant poverty alleviation initiatives, which were crucial in addressing the diverse needs of South Africa's post-Apartheid society (Schutte, 2003:252; Dreyer, 2020a:8).

However, the implementation of these changes has been uneven across different congregations. While some have fully embraced the new approach, leading to innovative and impactful poverty alleviation initiatives, others have struggled to adapt to the latest model. This uneven implementation reflects the broader challenges the NHKA faces in translating its evolving theological understanding into practical action at the local level. The need for ongoing training and support for deacons remains critical to ensuring the effectiveness and sustainability of the church's poverty alleviation efforts (Stoltz, 2016:50).

The NHKA's approach to child care, mainly through the Diaconal Foster Care Houses (DPS-houses), exemplifies both the progress and the challenges the church faces in its diaconal work. While these homes have become models for individualised, community-based care, the number of DPS houses has decreased in recent years, raising concerns about the long-term sustainability of these initiatives. This trend underscores the importance of maintaining congregational engagement in diaconal activities and ensuring that the church's social outreach programs remain robust and effective (Maartens, 2023:16).

The shift towards a more collaborative and holistic approach to poverty alleviation has also been a significant development in the NHKA's post-Apartheid journey. The church has increasingly recognised the need to engage with other stakeholders, including government agencies and

non-governmental organisations, in addressing the systemic and structural causes of poverty. This approach reflects a growing understanding of poverty as a complex social problem that requires multifaceted interventions, aligning with broader trends in missional ecclesiology (Schutte, 2003:255).

Despite these advancements, the NHKA continues to face challenges in its poverty alleviation efforts. The ongoing need for capacity building within the diaconate and the difficulties of maintaining congregational engagement highlight the complexity of the church's mission in a rapidly changing society. However, the recent structural and theological changes have provided a strong foundation for the NHKA to continue addressing poverty and social injustice in South Africa.

3.4.7 Ecumenical Relations and the Journey from Isolation

The NHKA's journey toward re-engaging with the global Reformed community in the post-Apartheid era has been a critical aspect of its broader transformation. This process reflects the church's efforts to move beyond the isolation that marked much of its history during Apartheid and to rebuild relationships that had been strained or severed due to its support for racial segregation.

The NHKA's ecumenical isolation began in earnest following the 1960 Cottesloe Consultation, where disagreements over the condemnation of Apartheid led the church to disassociate itself from the proceedings. This move set the stage for the NHKA's withdrawal from the World Council of Churches (WCC) in 1961, deepening its isolation from the broader Christian community (Dreyer, 2011:2-3).

This isolation was further entrenched in 1982 when the World Alliance of Reformed Churches (WARC) suspended the NHKA's membership, declaring that the church's theological justification of Apartheid constituted a status confessionis. This suspension isolated the NHKA from the global Reformed community and highlighted the deep divisions

between the NHKA and other Reformed churches on racial justice and reconciliation (Dreyer, 2011:4-5).

In the post-Apartheid era, the NHKA has made gradual but significant efforts to rebuild these relationships. The church's General Assembly in 2001 marked a turning point, with resolutions to take a more positive stance toward ecumenical engagement. These resolutions included initiating discussions with the South African Council of Churches (SACC), reestablishing correspondence with WARC, and seeking to reconnect with the Reformed Church in the Netherlands (NHKA, 2001).

The church continued these efforts in 2004 when it applied to reinstate its membership in WARC and the Reformed Ecumenical Council (REC). The NHKA also sought observer status in the SACC and established relations with the Uniting Church of Australia. These steps reflected the church's growing recognition of the importance of engaging with the broader Christian community as part of its transformation process (NHKA, 2004).

Despite these efforts, the journey toward full reintegration has been challenging. The 2007 General Assembly underscored these challenges when a proposal to reject Apartheid as contradictory to the gospel was narrowly defeated. This outcome highlighted the internal tensions within the church as it grappled with its historical legacy and the demands of reconciliation (NHKA, 2007b; Dreyer, 2011:7-8).

However, progress has been made. By 2010, the NHKA had gained observer status in the SACC and full membership in the REC, reflecting its ongoing efforts to rebuild its standing within the global Reformed community. This reintegration is essential for developing a more effective missional diaconate, as it allows the NHKA to engage with other churches and learn from their experiences in addressing poverty and social injustice (Dreyer, 2011:8).

The NHKA's journey from isolation to reintegration has been crucial to its transformation in the post-Apartheid era. This process has not only allowed the church to reconnect with the global Reformed community but also provided valuable opportunities for the NHKA to reflect on its historical legacy and engage more fully with the challenges of reconciliation and social justice in South Africa.

3.4.8 The 68th General Assembly (2007) and Its Aftermath

The 68th General Assembly in 2007 marked a pivotal moment in the NHKA's post-Apartheid transformation, reflecting the church's ongoing struggle to address its historical legacy and relationship with the global Reformed community. The Assembly faced the critical task of responding to the conditions set by the World Alliance of Reformed Churches (WARC) for the NHKA's readmission, including a public rejection of Apartheid and its theological underpinnings (NHKA, 2007a:178).

The Assembly conducted a rigorous debate over a Joint Resolution between WARC and the NHKA. The resolution contained three key elements:

1. WARC reaffirms its repudiation of any theological justification of Apartheid as a matter of status confessionis.
2. A commitment from the NHKA to reject Apartheid as fundamentally wrong and sinful, not merely in its effects and operations but also its essential nature.
3. A pledge from WARC to continue working pastorally with the NHKA and other churches in Southern Africa, focusing on unity and reconciliation (NHKA, 2007a:178).

Despite extensive discussions and careful preparations, the proposal to reject Apartheid as contradictory to the gospel was narrowly defeated by a vote of 262 against 260 (NHKA, 2007a:181). This narrow margin

highlighted the deep divisions within the NHKA as it wrestled with its historical identity and the imperative for reconciliation. The close vote reflected the ongoing tension between those who sought to preserve the church's traditional stances and those pushing for a more decisive break with the past.

While the Assembly did not achieve the necessary consensus to formally reject Apartheid, it did accept a proposal to amend Ordinance 4 of the Church Order. This amendment aimed to remove any reference to the NHKA as a '*volkskerk*' for Afrikaners. However, the proposal did not achieve the two-thirds majority (66%) required to effect a change in the Church Order, underscoring the ongoing struggle within the church to redefine its identity in a post-Apartheid context (NHKA, 2007a:181).

In addition to these debates, the Assembly reaffirmed its commitment to maintaining a positive relationship with the Maranatha Reformed Church of Christ (MRCC). The Assembly passed a detailed resolution that outlined specific steps for cooperation and unity between the NHKA and the MRCC, reflecting the church's ongoing efforts to build bridges with other Reformed communities and to engage in meaningful ecumenical relations (NHKA, 2007a:115).

The outcomes of the 68th General Assembly in 2007 were mixed, reflecting both progress and persistent challenges in the NHKA's journey toward reconciliation and transformation. While the Assembly's decisions fell short of fully addressing the demands for change, they represented significant steps in the church's ongoing efforts to confront its past and redefine its role in a new South Africa. The events of this Assembly would continue to shape the NHKA's trajectory in the years that followed as the church sought to navigate the complex process of transformation and renewal.

3.4.9 Developments from 2007 to 2010

Following the 2007 General Assembly, the NHKA persisted in reconciling its historical legacy with the evolving socio-political landscape of post-Apartheid South Africa, aiming to reintegrate into the broader Reformed community. In 2009, a World Alliance of Reformed Churches (WARC) delegation visited the NHKA in Pretoria to discuss the church's potential readmission to the international body. However, the meeting concluded with limited progress, reflecting the ongoing complexities of the NHKA's journey towards reconciliation (NHKA, 2009:16-18).

In response to the stagnation, a group of prominent NHKA theologians—A.G. van Aarde, J. Buitendag, Y. Dreyer, E. van Eck, and J.A. Loader—publicly denounced Apartheid as fundamentally incompatible with the teachings of Jesus Christ. Their declaration unequivocally stated that Apartheid, both in practice and essence, is a sin and that any theological justification of it constitutes a grave error (NHKA, 2009:16-18). This statement marked a significant step in the church's ongoing self-examination and its broader efforts to align its mission with the principles of justice and reconciliation.

The 69th General Assembly, held from 26 September to 2 October 2010, represented a pivotal moment in the NHKA's transformation. During this assembly, Resolution 54 was passed, declaring that Apartheid was contrary to the gospel of Jesus Christ. This resolution, which received a majority vote of 245 against 173, emphasised that Apartheid's foundation on human irreconcilability, its sanctioning of injustice, and its damage to the image of God in people are all fundamentally opposed to Christian teachings (NHKA, 2010:343-344).

The 2010 Assembly also accepted a proposal to remove the term *volkskerk* from the Church Order. Although the proposal did not achieve the required two-thirds majority for immediate implementation, it signalled a significant shift in the church's self-understanding (NHKA, 2010:343-344). According to Dreyer (2024:256), this decision was subsequently referred to the committee tasked with rewriting the Church Order,

culminating in the 72nd General Assembly of 2019, when *volkskerk* was finally excised from the church's official documents. The term *volkskerk*, a feature of the Reformed Church's ecclesiastical language for 68 years, had long been criticised by churches, ecumenical organisations, and individuals who viewed it as a pastoral reflection of Apartheid.

The removal of *volkskerk* from the Church Order, however, was not without controversy. This decision contributed to a schism within the NHKA, highlighting the deep-seated and often contentious nature of the church's attempts to reform its structures and theology in the post-Apartheid era (Dreyer, 2024:256).

The decisions made during the 2010 General Assembly represent a critical juncture in the NHKA's ongoing transformation journey. They illustrate the church's increasing willingness to confront its past and address the internal tensions that continue to shape its identity and mission in a democratic South Africa.

3.4.10 Continuing Challenges and Future Prospects

Despite the significant strides made by the NHKA in its post-Apartheid journey, the church continues to face numerous challenges as it grapples with its historical legacy and seeks to redefine its identity and mission in a democratic South Africa. While essential, transforming its ecclesiastical structures has been met with progress and resistance, reflecting the complexities of balancing tradition with the demands of a new socio-political context.

One of the ongoing challenges is the NHKA's struggle to fully integrate the principles of justice, reconciliation, and social responsibility into its mission. While the church has made commendable efforts to address its past complicity in Apartheid and to engage more actively with the socio-economic issues facing South Africa, the legacy of its historical alignment with Afrikaner nationalism continues to influence its actions and perceptions. Van Wyk (2013:11) notes that the church's efforts to

address poverty and social injustice, though significant, are still often hampered by lingering divisions within the congregation regarding the extent and nature of these reforms.

Moreover, while increasingly collaborative and holistic, the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation remains a work in progress. Van der Merwe (2020:322) points out that despite the church's enhanced focus on addressing the structural and systemic causes of poverty, there remains a need for deeper engagement with the broader societal issues that extend beyond the Afrikaner community. This challenge underscores the importance of the church's ongoing efforts to expand its missional focus to include all South Africans, particularly those who continue to suffer from the long-term effects of Apartheid.

The NHKA's work in child care, mainly through the Diaconal Foster Care Houses (DPS-houses), exemplifies both the progress and the remaining challenges. While these homes have become models for individualised, community-based care, their numbers have decreased in recent years. The involvement of local congregations in diaconal activities has also diminished (Maartens, 2023:16). This trend raises concerns about the long-term sustainability of the NHKA's diaconal initiatives and the ongoing need to maintain congregational engagement in social outreach programs.

Another critical area for the NHKA is its ongoing efforts to rebuild and strengthen ecumenical relations. The church's history of isolation from the international Reformed community due to its support for Apartheid continues to cast a long shadow. While progress has been made, particularly in reestablishing relationships with organisations such as the World Alliance of Reformed Churches (WARC) and the Reformed Ecumenical Council (REC), the journey towards full reintegration and reconciliation remains fraught with challenges. Dreyer (2011:8) highlights that the NHKA's ability to navigate these challenges will be crucial in

shaping its future role within the broader Christian community, locally and internationally.

Looking ahead, the NHKA faces the critical task of continuing its transformation while ensuring it remains true to its Reformed theological roots. The church's ongoing efforts to redefine its identity and mission to align with the principles of justice, reconciliation, and social responsibility will be essential in determining its future relevance and impact. As Dreyer (2020:10) observes, the NHKA's journey offers valuable insights into the broader narrative of reconciliation, social justice, and poverty alleviation in post-Apartheid South Africa, serving as a case study in the complex process of ecclesiastical transformation.

The NHKA's prospects will depend on its ability to navigate these challenges, maintain its commitment to social justice, and engage meaningfully with the broader South African society. The church's journey of transformation is ongoing, and its ability to reconcile its past with the present demands will determine its role in shaping the future of the Afrikaner community and the broader South African society.

3.4.11.1 Ecclesiological Evolution and Its Implications

The gradual transformation of the NHKA's ecclesiology, as evidenced by the changes in its Church Orders from 1997 to 2016, reflects a growing recognition of the need to adapt to the new socio-political context. The shift from a strictly defined *volkskerk* to a more inclusive ecclesial model represents a significant theological and practical evolution (Dreyer, 2020a:5). However, this transition highlights the ongoing challenge of effectively translating evolving theological understanding into concrete, sustainable actions that address poverty and social injustice beyond the confines of the church's traditional community.

Including the concept of the priesthood of all believers in the *2016 Church Order* (NHKA, 2016a:74-79) signifies a positive step towards a more participatory and inclusive ecclesiology. This shift aligns with broader

trends in Reformed theology and potentially opens up new avenues for social engagement and poverty alleviation. However, as Dreyer (2020:8) points out, translating these theological shifts into practical action requires sustained effort and cultural change within the church. The gap between theological formulation and practical implementation remains a significant challenge for the NHKA, necessitating strategies to bridge this gap at the congregational level.

While symbolically important, removing the term *volkskerk* from the Church Order raises concerns about the depth of the church's transformation. As Van Wyk (2013:11) argues, changing terminology does not necessarily equate to a fundamental shift in practice or mindset. This highlights the ongoing tension between preserving the NHKA's Reformed heritage and embracing a more inclusive and socially engaged ecclesiology that responds to the diverse needs of contemporary South African society.

3.4.11.2 Diaconal Structures and Poverty Alleviation Initiatives

The establishment of the *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) marks a significant development in the NHKA's approach to diaconal work. This centralised body has the potential to coordinate and enhance the church's poverty alleviation efforts more effectively. However, as Van der Merwe (2020:310) points out, the ADV's work focuses primarily on the Afrikaner community. This limitation underscores the need for the NHKA to broaden its mission to address poverty in the broader South African context and engage more effectively with the country's wider socio-economic challenges.

The transition to Diaconal Foster Care Houses (DPS-houses) represents an innovative approach to child care, reflecting a more individualised and community-based model. This shift aligns with contemporary best practices in child welfare and demonstrates the NHKA's ability to adapt its social outreach programs. However, the decrease in the number of these homes, as noted by Maartens (2023:16), suggests challenges in

sustaining this model. This decline raises concerns about the long-term viability of such initiatives and the NHKA's capacity to maintain effective poverty alleviation programs in a changing social landscape.

The evolution of the NHKA's diaconal structures, from the establishment of the *Ringsdiakenvergadering* (RDV) in 1997 to the more comprehensive role of the ADV, reflects a growing recognition of the need for more coordinated and strategic approaches to poverty alleviation. However, as Stoltz (2016:49) notes, this transition has not been without challenges. The move from a centralised, minister-led structure to a more decentralised, deacon-led organisation has highlighted broader tensions within the NHKA as it navigates its transformation process. Addressing these ongoing internal divisions and resistance to change remains crucial for the NHKA's transformation agenda.

3.4.11.3 Reconciliation Efforts and Ecumenical Relations

The NHKA's efforts to reconcile with the broader Christian community, mainly through its engagement with the World Alliance of Reformed Churches (WARC), demonstrate a commitment to overcoming its historical isolation. The 2010 General Assembly's decision to reject Apartheid as contrary to the gospel (NHKA, 2010:343-344) was crucial in this process. However, the internal divisions this decision caused, leading to a schism within the church, highlight the ongoing tensions between progressive and conservative elements within the NHKA (Dreyer, 2024:256).

These reconciliation efforts must be viewed in the context of the NHKA's historical support for Apartheid and its subsequent isolation from the global Reformed community. The church's journey from isolation, as described by Dreyer (2011:1-9), has been marked by cautious steps towards reintegration, internal debates, and external pressures. The potential role of ecumenical partnerships and interfaith collaborations in

enhancing the NHKA's capacity to address poverty and social issues on a broader scale remains an important consideration.

The narrow margins by which critical decisions were made, such as the vote to reject Apartheid at the 68th General Assembly in 2007 (NHKA, 2007a:181), reveal a church still deeply divided over its past and future direction. This internal conflict underscores the challenge of navigating institutional change while maintaining unity and relevance in a rapidly changing society.

3.4.11.4 Challenges in Implementation and Sustainability

Despite formal changes, the NHKA's poverty alleviation efforts focus primarily on the Afrikaner community. This limitation raises concerns about the church's ability to engage meaningfully with the broader socio-economic challenges facing South Africa (Van der Merwe, 2020:322). The persistence of this ethnocentric focus, even as the church formally distances itself from its *volkskerk* identity, suggests a more profound cultural resistance to change that goes beyond official policies and statements.

A noticeable gap exists between the NHKA's evolving theology and its practical implementation. Schutte (2003:250) notes that translating new ecclesiological understandings into effective diaconal action remains a significant challenge. This gap is particularly evident in the church's struggle to fully embrace a missional ecclesiology that extends its poverty alleviation efforts beyond traditional boundaries.

The decline in congregational involvement in diaconal activities, as evidenced by the decrease in DPS houses (Maartens, 2023:16), raises concerns about the long-term sustainability of the NHKA's poverty alleviation initiatives. This trend may reflect broader challenges in maintaining member engagement and commitment to social outreach in a changing societal context.

3.4.11.5 Theological and Practical Tensions

The NHKA's post-Apartheid journey reveals ongoing tensions between its historical theological positions and the demands of contemporary social engagement. The church's efforts to maintain its Reformed identity while adapting to new realities have led to complex negotiations between tradition and innovation. This is evident in the careful language of church documents, which seek to balance continuity with change.

Dreyer (2013:1-5) discussed that missional ecclesiology offers a potential framework for the NHKA to reconcile its theological heritage with a more inclusive and socially engaged approach. However, the practical implementation of this concept remains a challenge, particularly in overcoming ingrained patterns of thought and action that have long defined the church's identity and mission.

The NHKA's struggle to fully embrace a transformative approach to poverty alleviation reflects broader debates within Reformed theology about the relationship between the church and society. As Van der Merwe (2020:310-312) notes, this struggle is not unique to the NHKA but is characteristic of many Reformed churches grappling with their role in addressing social issues in post-Apartheid South Africa.

3.4.11.6 Implications for Poverty Alleviation

The NHKA's post-Apartheid transformation has significant implications for its approach to poverty alleviation. The shift towards a more inclusive ecclesiology potentially opens new avenues for broader social engagement. However, the persistent focus on the Afrikaner community limits the church's ability to address poverty comprehensively in South Africa's diverse society.

Establishing centralised structures like the ADV provides an opportunity for more coordinated and strategic poverty alleviation efforts. Nevertheless, the challenge lies in extending these efforts beyond

traditional boundaries and engaging with the root causes of poverty in the broader South African context.

The decline in congregational involvement in diaconal activities suggests a need for a renewed emphasis on grassroots engagement and member mobilisation in poverty alleviation initiatives. This may require innovative approaches to inspire and sustain congregational commitment to social outreach.

The NHKA's reconciliation efforts and reintegration into the broader Christian community offer potential for collaborative approaches to poverty alleviation. Engaging in ecumenical and interfaith partnerships could enhance the church's capacity to address poverty on a larger scale and contribute to more comprehensive solutions.

The ongoing tension between the NHKA's Reformed heritage and the need for social transformation underscores the importance of developing a theological framework that effectively integrates poverty alleviation into the church's core mission. This may involve reinterpreting Reformed principles in light of contemporary social challenges.

The NHKA's experience offers valuable insights into the challenges of institutional transformation in addressing poverty. It highlights the need for alignment between theological shifts, policy changes, and practical implementation to effect meaningful change in poverty alleviation efforts. The NHKA's journey in the post-Apartheid era reflects the complex interplay between ecclesiology, social engagement, and institutional change. While progress has been made, significant challenges remain in translating theological and policy changes into practical, sustainable poverty alleviation initiatives that address the needs of South Africa's diverse population.

3.5 Comparative Analysis of NHKA's Engagement with Poverty

3.5.1 Introduction

The history of NHKA reveals a complex interplay between theology, ecclesiology, and social engagement. This section undertakes a comparative analysis of the NHKA's engagement with poverty across three critical periods: the Post-Boer War Era (1902–1948), the Apartheid Era (1948–1994), and the Post-Apartheid Era (1994–Present). The analysis focuses on how the NHKA's evolving ecclesiological identity and theological positions shaped its diaconal structures and practices, ultimately influencing its effectiveness in addressing poverty.

This analysis builds on the foundational discussions in Sections 3.2, 3.3, and 3.4, which explored the church's historical, theological, and structural developments during these periods.

3.5.2 Comparison of Ecclesiology and Theological Foundations

The NHKA's understanding of its ecclesiological identity has significantly changed across the three periods, profoundly affecting its approach to poverty alleviation. In the Post-Boer War Era, the NHKA's identity as a *volkskerk* (people's church) was closely linked to Afrikaner nationalism, influencing its diaconal efforts to support the impoverished Afrikaner community. The church's theological perspective during this period emphasised preserving Afrikaner culture and identity, leading to a focus on serving the Afrikaner population almost exclusively (Dreyer, 2006: 1343-1344). This discussion builds on Section 3.2, which examined the NHKA's identity and theological stance during the Post-Boer War Era.

During the Apartheid Era, the NHKA's ecclesiology became increasingly entangled with Afrikaner nationalism, with the church providing theological justification for racial segregation. The doctrine of separate "ethnic churches," as enshrined in the Church Law of 1951, further entrenched the church's exclusive focus on the Afrikaner community, often at the expense of broader social justice issues (Dreyer, 2011: 2). This period marked a theological alignment with the Apartheid state, limiting the NHKA's engagement with poverty to the Afrikaner context,

reinforcing social divisions, and excluding non-White populations from its diaconal efforts (as detailed in Section 3.3).

In the Post-Apartheid Era, the NHKA was compelled to confront its historical legacy and re-evaluate its ecclesiological identity. The gradual shift towards a more inclusive and missional ecclesiology represents a departure from the earlier ethnocentric focus. The adoption of the 2016 revised Church Order, which emphasised the missional nature of the church and the priesthood of all believers, marks a significant theological shift. This new ecclesiology has encouraged the NHKA to engage more broadly with the socio-economic challenges of a democratic South Africa, moving beyond the exclusive focus on Afrikaners to address poverty more inclusively (Dreyer, 2020a: 8). This shift, however, has been uneven, reflecting lingering tensions between the church's historical identity and its evolving mission (as explored in Section 3.4).

The NHKA's theological journey illustrates ecclesiological identity's profound impact on social engagement. While the church's initial focus on Afrikaner nationalism provided a strong communal identity and a clear mission during the Post-Boer War Era, it also laid the groundwork for exclusionary practices that would later align the church with the Apartheid regime. As Dreyer (2011:2) notes, this alignment constrained the NHKA's theological imagination and limited its capacity for broader social justice. The shift in the Post-Apartheid Era, driven by a rethinking of ecclesiology, represents a crucial opportunity for the NHKA to redefine its mission. However, as Dreyer (2020a:8) argues, this transition requires theological reform and a deep cultural change within the church, challenging longstanding assumptions about identity and mission.

3.5.3 Comparison of Diaconal Structures and Practices

The NHKA's diaconal structures and practices have evolved significantly across these periods, influenced by internal theological shifts and external socio-political factors. During the Post-Boer War Era, the Church Law and Provisions of 1904 laid the groundwork for a formalised diaconal

structure to address the socio-economic needs of the Afrikaner community (as discussed in Section 3.2). This centralisation allowed the church to mobilise resources effectively, though it also introduced a certain rigidity that may have limited responsiveness to local needs (Van Wyk, 1992: 1015).

In the Apartheid Era, the diaconal structures became increasingly standardised, with the church's efforts focused on supporting the Afrikaner population. The creation of bodies like the *Ondersteuningsraad* in 1948 exemplified this trend, centralising diaconal work but also creating a bureaucratic distance between church leadership and grassroots realities (Engelbrecht, 1971: 50; Dreyer, 2013: 3). The church's diaconal work during this period was characterised by efficiency in addressing Afrikaner poverty but was criticised for its exclusionary practices and alignment with the Apartheid state's ideology.

In the Post-Apartheid Era, the NHKA significantly reformed its diaconal structures, particularly by introducing the *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) and the revised Church Orders of 2007 and 2016, as discussed in Section 3.4. These changes enabled a more decentralised and responsive approach to diaconal work, allowing the church to engage more effectively with diverse communities and the complex socio-economic issues of contemporary South Africa (Stoltz, 2016: 47). The ADV's role in coordinating and supporting local diaconal initiatives has been crucial in shifting the church's focus towards a more holistic and inclusive approach to poverty alleviation (Van der Merwe, 2020: 310).

The evolution of the NHKA's diaconal structures reflects broader trends in the church's approach to social engagement. The centralisation efforts during the Post-Boer War and Apartheid eras, while efficient, ultimately limited the church's ability to respond to the diverse needs of a changing society. As Engelbrecht (1971:50) and Dreyer (2013:3) observe, these structures often created a disconnect between the church's leadership and the realities of poverty. In contrast, the Post-Apartheid reforms,

particularly the establishment of the ADV, represent a more flexible and contextually responsive model.

However, as Stoltz (2016:47) points out, the effectiveness of these reforms depends on their implementation at the congregational level, where resistance to change remains a significant challenge. The NHKA's ongoing struggle to balance centralisation with local autonomy underscores the complexity of institutional transformation in a post-conflict society.

3.5.4 Impact on Poverty Alleviation

The effectiveness of the NHKA's poverty alleviation efforts has varied significantly across the three periods, reflecting both the church's changing approach and the broader socio-economic context of South Africa. In the Post-Boer War Era, the church's focus on rebuilding and supporting the Afrikaner community successfully addressed immediate needs, but its ethnocentric focus limited its broader impact (Pont, 1995: 1175-1176). While impactful within the Afrikaner community, the diaconal initiatives did not extend to the wider South African population, reflecting the church's narrow understanding of its mission, as discussed in Section 3.2.

During the Apartheid Era, the NHKA's poverty alleviation efforts were constrained by its theological and political alignment with the Apartheid regime (as outlined in Section 3.3). The church's focus on Afrikaner welfare, coupled with its support for racial segregation, meant that its diaconal work often perpetuated social divisions rather than addressing the root causes of poverty (Dreyer, 2011: 6). This period represents a significant missed opportunity for the church to engage in broader social justice initiatives that could have contributed to more meaningful poverty alleviation.

In the Post-Apartheid Era, the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation has become more inclusive and collaborative, reflecting the broader

societal shift towards democracy and equality (detailed in Section 3.4). The structural and theological reforms have allowed the church to address poverty holistically, engaging with other stakeholders and recognising poverty's complex, systemic nature (Schutte, 2003: 255). However, as Stoltz (2016: 50) points out, implementing these changes has been uneven, with some congregations struggling to move beyond traditional forms of charity. This highlights the ongoing challenges the NHKA faces in fully realising its redefined mission in a democratic South Africa.

The NHKA's historical engagement with poverty reveals a pattern of ethnocentric focus that has, until the Post-Apartheid Era, largely constrained its effectiveness in addressing broader societal needs. The church's alignment with Afrikaner nationalism, as documented by Dreyer (2011:6), meant that its diaconal work was often inward-looking, prioritising the needs of the Afrikaner community over the broader imperatives of social justice. The post-Apartheid shift towards a more inclusive approach represents a significant theological and practical development. However, the uneven implementation of these reforms, as noted by Stoltz (2016:50), underscores the persistent challenges within the NHKA. The church's future effectiveness in poverty alleviation will depend on its ability to overcome these internal barriers and fully embrace a mission beyond its historical boundaries.

3.5.5 Ecumenical Relations and Social Responsibility

The NHKA's relationship with the broader Christian community has also evolved across these periods, influencing its approach to social responsibility. During the Apartheid Era, the church's isolation from international ecumenical bodies, particularly following its suspension from the World Alliance of Reformed Churches (WARC) in 1982, reflected its theological and moral isolation (Dreyer, 2011: 4). This isolation hindered the NHKA's ability to engage with global movements for social justice and further entrenched its support for Apartheid, as discussed in Section 3.3.

In the Post-Apartheid Era, the NHKA has made concerted efforts to rebuild its ecumenical relations and address its historical legacy (explored in Section 3.4). The church's gradual reintegration into the international Reformed community, including its efforts to reconnect with WARC and other ecumenical bodies, reflects a growing commitment to social responsibility and reconciliation (Dreyer, 2011: 6). This renewed engagement has provided the NHKA with valuable insights and models for addressing poverty and social injustice in the post-Apartheid context. However, the journey towards full reintegration and transformation remains ongoing, reflecting the challenges of institutional change in response to shifting societal norms and expectations.

The NHKA's ecumenical journey highlights the tension between maintaining doctrinal integrity and engaging with broader social issues. The church's isolation during the Apartheid Era, as Dreyer (2011:4) argues, reinforced its theological insularity and limited its capacity for meaningful social engagement. The Post-Apartheid efforts to rebuild ecumenical relations are commendable, yet the NHKA's journey towards full reintegration remains fraught with challenges. The church's ability to learn from its ecumenical partners and apply these lessons to its context is crucial for its ongoing transformation. However, as the NHKA moves forward, it must also confront the lingering effects of its past, ensuring that its commitment to social responsibility is more than a response to external pressures but a genuine reflection of its redefined identity and mission.

3.5.6 Critical Reflections

The NHKA's historical engagement with poverty reveals a complex and often contradictory trajectory. While the church has made significant strides in reforming its structures and theology in the post-Apartheid era, its legacy of racial exclusion and theological support for Apartheid

continues to shape its mission and identity. Building on Sections 3.2, 3.3, and 3.4, this comparative analysis highlights the need for the NHKA to reflect critically on its past and fully embrace its redefined role in democratic South Africa.

Though promising, the church's evolving approach to poverty alleviation must be accompanied by a more profound commitment to social justice and inclusivity, ensuring its mission aligns with the core principles of the Gospel. This transformation process is not unique to the NHKA. Still, it reflects the broader challenges religious institutions face in post-conflict societies as they seek to reconcile their historical roles with contemporary social realities.

The NHKA's engagement with poverty across these periods demonstrates the profound influence that theology and ecclesiology have on social action. The church's historical alignment with Afrikaner nationalism, as explored throughout this chapter, illustrates how theological frameworks can either constrain or enable a church's mission. The NHKA's transition towards a more inclusive ecclesiology in the post-Apartheid era offers hope for a more socially engaged and justice-oriented mission. However, as the analysis shows, this transition requires more than structural reforms; it necessitates a fundamental rethinking of the church's identity and purpose. The NHKA's future relevance will depend on its willingness to fully integrate its theological shifts into practice, ensuring that its diaconal work reflects the inclusive and transformative principles of the Gospel.

3.5.7 Conclusion

This comparative analysis underscores the significant shifts in the NHKA's engagement with poverty across historical periods. While the church's efforts in the Post-Boer War and Apartheid eras were primarily constrained by its ethnocentric focus and theological alignment with Afrikaner nationalism, the Post-Apartheid era has gradually moved towards a more inclusive and socially responsible mission.

The ongoing challenges and opportunities for the NHKA lie in fully realising this redefined mission, ensuring that its diaconal work is effective and aligned with the broader goals of justice and reconciliation in contemporary South Africa. As the church continues to navigate its role in a rapidly changing society, its ability to adapt its theological foundations and practical approaches to poverty alleviation will be crucial in determining its relevance and impact in addressing the complex socio-economic challenges of 21st-century South Africa.

3.6 A Comparative Analysis of Reformed Churches' Poverty Alleviation Efforts (1994–2019)

3.6.1 Introduction

The post-apartheid era in South Africa brought significant socio-economic challenges, with poverty emerging as one of the most pressing issues facing the newly democratic nation. Despite the end of apartheid, the stark inequalities of the past persisted in the form of widespread poverty, unemployment, and social injustice. In this context, the role of civil society, including religious institutions, became crucial in addressing these challenges. Among these institutions, the four major Reformed churches – the *Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk* (NGK), the *Verenigende Gereformeerde Kerk in Suider-Afrika* (URCSA), the *Gereformeerde Kerke in Suid-Afrika* (GKSA), and the *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika* (NHKA) – played pivotal roles in combating poverty from 1994 to 2019.

Each church, grounded in its unique theological and ecclesiological tradition, developed distinct strategies and initiatives to address poverty while cooperating with other denominations and civil society actors. This analysis explores and compares these efforts, focusing on their theological foundations, structural approaches, key initiatives, challenges, and ecumenical cooperation, building on the foundational analysis by Van der Merwe (2020:301–323).

While these churches' efforts were significant, it is essential to critically examine whether their strategies effectively addressed the root causes of poverty or provided short-term relief. The analysis will also consider whether these churches' theological underpinnings sometimes limited their ability to fully engage with the complex socio-economic realities of post-apartheid South Africa.

3.6.2 Theological and Ecclesiological Foundations

The theological and ecclesiological foundations of the four churches under analysis demonstrate a varied response to the socio-economic challenges of post-apartheid South Africa. The NGK, URCSA, GKSA, and NHKA each developed unique frameworks that informed their approach to poverty alleviation, with significant differences in their theological emphases and ecclesiological practices.

The NGK's approach to poverty was deeply rooted in its missional calling, with a significant evolution occurring in the post-apartheid period. Particularly after adopting the 2013 *Roepingsverklaring*, the NGK linked its mission with social justice and poverty alleviation, focusing on early childhood development as a strategy to break the cycle of poverty (NGK, 2007: ii; Van der Merwe, 2020:303). However, while commendable, this focus on early childhood development may overlook broader systemic issues, such as unemployment and inequality, which are critical to addressing poverty comprehensively.

The URCSA's approach was profoundly shaped by the Belhar Confession, which emphasised justice, reconciliation, and solidarity with the poor. The URCSA viewed poverty alleviation as a theological imperative intertwined with its broader justice mission in a post-apartheid society (Belhar Confession, 2016:311; Van der Merwe, 2020:307). While this prophetic stance has been essential in advocating for justice, it may sometimes have limited practical cooperation with other institutions that do not fully share its theological outlook.

The GKSA adhered to a conservative Reformed theology, emphasising the role of local congregations and deacons in addressing poverty. This bottom-up approach, grounded in the Reformed tradition's emphasis on the diaconate, allowed for tailored responses to regional needs but risked fragmenting efforts and limiting the impact of broader, coordinated initiatives (GKSA, 2019:315; Van der Merwe, 2020:314).

The NHKA's theological and ecclesiological foundations in the post-apartheid era significantly depart from its past. As discussed in sections 3.2 and 3.3, the NHKA's earlier identity as a *volkskerk* was closely linked to Afrikaner nationalism, which shaped its poverty alleviation efforts to serve the Afrikaner community exclusively (Dreyer, 2006:1343–1344; Dreyer, 2011:2).

However, the post-apartheid period saw the NHKA reevaluate its ecclesiological identity, particularly establishing the *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) in 1998, which centralised and coordinated the church's diaconal efforts. This shift towards a more inclusive ecclesiology is a critical evolution from the church's previous stance, reflecting its attempts to engage with the broader socio-economic realities of democratic South Africa (Van der Merwe, 2020:319).

3.6.3 Structural Approaches and Key Initiatives

The structural approaches and key initiatives undertaken by the NGK, URCSA, GKSA, and NHKA reflect their respective theological commitments and understanding of the church's role in society. However, the effectiveness of these initiatives in addressing the root causes of poverty varies, with each church demonstrating strengths and limitations in its approaches.

3.6.3.1 Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk (NGK)

The NGK's structured approach to poverty alleviation became particularly evident after the 1998 General Synod, where the church established a framework for addressing poverty through local congregations. The

NGK's focus on early childhood development, exemplified by the *Ukuba* movement, aimed to break the cycle of poverty by providing vulnerable children with access to education, nutrition, and care (Van der Merwe, 2020:310). This initiative, however, raises questions about the church's engagement with broader systemic issues, such as unemployment, which are crucial for long-term poverty alleviation. Despite focusing on early childhood development, the NGK also engaged in direct poverty relief efforts, such as providing food parcels and financial assistance to struggling families within their congregations (NGK, 2019:221; Van der Merwe, 2020:311).

3.6.3.2 *Verenigende Gereformeerde Kerk in Suider-Afrika (URCSA)*

The URCSA's poverty alleviation efforts were closely aligned with its commitment to justice and reconciliation, as articulated in the Belhar Confession. The church supported establishing self-help groups and cooperatives in impoverished communities to promote economic independence (URCSA, 2005:233; Van der Merwe, 2020:312).

However, these initiatives' long-term sustainability and effectiveness remain areas for further exploration, particularly in light of broader economic challenges such as land ownership issues and market access. The URCSA also played a significant role in advocating for policy changes at the national level, particularly in land reform and access to essential services (URCSA, 2005:235; Van der Merwe, 2020:315).

3.6.3.3 *Gereformeerde Kerke in Suid-Afrika (GKSA)*

The GKSA's emphasis on the role of local congregations and deacons in addressing poverty reflects its conservative Reformed theology. This approach allowed for contextually relevant responses but risked creating disparities in the quality and scope of assistance across different congregations (GKSA, 2003:147; Van der Merwe, 2020:317).

The GKSA's focus on localised responses also limited its ability to engage in broader, systemic change, highlighting a potential weakness

in its poverty alleviation strategy. Significant initiatives included emergency relief efforts during times of crisis, such as the drought in the Northern Cape, and support for education through financial assistance and after-school programmes (GKSA, 2012:110; Van der Merwe, 2020:317).

3.6.3.4 *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA)*

The NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation during the post-apartheid era was significantly shaped by the establishment of the ADV, which centralised the church's diaconal efforts (NHKA, 2013:33; Van der Merwe, 2020:319). This centralisation allowed for greater coordination and resource allocation and introduced challenges in maintaining local engagement and responsiveness. The NHKA's initiatives, such as vocational training centres and job creation programmes, reflect a shift towards more sustainable poverty alleviation strategies compared to the church's previous focus on providing relief to the Afrikaner community during the apartheid era (NHKA, 2016b:7; Van der Merwe, 2020:320).

3.6.4 Challenges and Evolution

Each of these churches faced significant challenges in implementing their poverty alleviation strategies, with varying degrees of success. A critical examination of these challenges reveals the strengths and limitations of their respective approaches.

The NGK struggled with the financial sustainability of its projects, particularly as South Africa's economic situation deteriorated. The growing demands on the church's resources highlighted the need for more sustainable funding models, raising questions about the long-term viability of its poverty alleviation efforts (NGK, 2019:221; Van der Merwe, 2020:311).

The URCSA's ambitious agenda, driven by its commitment to justice and systemic change, often required significant coordination and resources. However, maintaining momentum and securing the necessary support

proved challenging, underscoring the need for realistic assessments of capacity and resources (URCSA, 2005:235; Van der Merwe, 2020:315). The GKSA's decentralised approach allowed for tailored responses to community needs but also led to inconsistencies in the effectiveness of poverty alleviation across congregations. This fragmentation highlights a key limitation in the church's strategy, particularly its ability to address broader systemic issues (GKSA, 2003:316; Van der Merwe, 2020:317).

The NHKA faced challenges integrating its various efforts and coordinating between the ADV and local congregations. While centralisation allowed for greater coordination, it also required significant resources and effort, raising questions about the balance between centralisation and local responsiveness (NHKA, 2013:34; Van der Merwe, 2020:320).

3.6.5 Ecumenical Cooperation

Despite their theological differences, these churches recognised the importance of ecumenical cooperation in addressing poverty in South Africa. However, the effectiveness and depth of this cooperation vary, with some instances of collaboration proving more successful than others.

The NGK and URCSA found common ground in their efforts to address poverty, collaborating on several ecumenical initiatives related to education and economic development, including the *Ukuba* movement (NGK, 2007:376; Van der Merwe, 2020:322). However, the extent to which these efforts translated into sustained, long-term partnerships remains unclear.

While less involved in formal ecumenical initiatives, the GKSA often collaborated with other churches at the local level. These informal partnerships were crucial in ensuring that aid was delivered effectively, but they also highlighted the potential limitations of the GKSA's

decentralised approach to ecumenism (GKSA, 2003:317; Van der Merwe, 2020:322).

The NHKA's engagement in ecumenical cooperation, particularly through the ADV, reflects a significant shift from its isolationist stance during the apartheid era. The church's collaboration with other Reformed churches in job creation and vocational training demonstrates its commitment to addressing common challenges like poverty and social injustice (NHKA, 2013:33; Van der Merwe, 2020:322). However, these partnerships' sustainability and long-term impact remain areas for further exploration, particularly given the NHKA's historical challenges with maintaining ecumenical relationships (Dreyer, 2011:4).

3.6.6 Critical Reflection

This comparative analysis of the poverty alleviation efforts of the NGK, URCSA, GKSA, and NHKA between 1994 and 2019 reveals the strengths and limitations of these Reformed churches in addressing one of South Africa's most pressing socio-economic challenges. While each church developed distinct strategies rooted in its theological and ecclesiological traditions, a critical examination raises questions about their efforts' effectiveness and long-term sustainability.

One of these churches' key strengths is their ability to mobilise resources and engage with communities at a grassroots level. The NGK's focus on early childhood development, the URCSA's advocacy for justice and systemic change, the GKSA's emphasis on local congregational action, and the NHKA's centralised coordination through the ADV all demonstrate a sincere commitment to poverty alleviation. However, the success of these efforts is often constrained by the inherent limitations of their respective approaches.

For instance, while the NGK's early childhood initiatives are forward-thinking, they may be too narrowly focused to address the broader, systemic causes of poverty that impact entire families and communities.

Similarly, while essential, the URCSA's prophetic stance and focus on justice may have sometimes overshadowed the need for pragmatic, actionable solutions that address immediate needs. The GKSA's decentralised model, while allowing for localised responses, risks creating disparities in the effectiveness of poverty alleviation across different congregations, potentially leading to uneven outcomes. Though effective in coordinating efforts, the NHKA's centralised approach through the ADV may lack the flexibility to respond to rapidly changing socio-economic conditions.

This chapter's historical analysis addresses the research questions posed in Chapter 1 and underscores the complex relationship between the NHKA's ecclesiology, church polity, and socio-political context. These findings contribute to a deeper understanding of how the NHKA's evolving identity has shaped its mission and social responsibilities, directly engaging with overarching themes in this thesis.

This is a stark contrast to the NHKA's previous role during the apartheid era, where its poverty alleviation efforts were largely constrained by its theological alignment with Afrikaner nationalism (Dreyer, 2011:2).

Moreover, this analysis highlights the importance of ecumenical cooperation in tackling poverty, yet it also underscores the limitations of these efforts. While there were instances of collaboration, the depth and sustainability of these partnerships are questionable. The occasional nature of these joint initiatives suggests that more could have been done to foster long-term, strategic alliances that transcend denominational boundaries.

A recurring theme in this analysis is the tension between short-term relief and long-term strategic planning. All four churches are strongly committed to providing immediate assistance to those in need. Yet, their efforts to address the root causes of poverty were less consistent and often hampered by financial constraints, resource limitations, and, at

times, theological differences. This raises the critical question of whether these churches, despite their best intentions, were able to move beyond alleviating symptoms to engage in the kind of transformative work that could lead to sustained socio-economic change.

In conclusion, while the NGK, URCSA, GKSA, and NHKA contributed significantly to poverty alleviation in post-apartheid South Africa, this analysis suggests room for improvement. A more integrated approach that combines immediate relief with long-term planning, greater ecumenical cooperation, and a willingness to address the systemic causes of poverty could enhance the effectiveness of these efforts. Moving forward, these churches must critically assess their strategies, embrace more collaborative and comprehensive approaches, and remain open to adapting their methods in response to the evolving socio-economic landscape.

3.7 Conclusion

3.7.1 Historical Engagement Overview

The historical analysis presented in Chapter 3 illustrates the significant shifts in the NHKA's engagement with poverty across three key periods: the Post-Boer War Era (1902–1948), the Apartheid Era (1948–1994), and the Post-Apartheid Era (1994–present).

During the post-Boer War Era, the NHKA's identity as a *volkskerk* (ethnic church) was deeply intertwined with Afrikaner nationalism, resulting in a diaconal mission focused primarily on the welfare of the Afrikaner community, and this period laid the foundation for the church's ecclesial self-understanding, which heavily influenced its poverty alleviation efforts (Dreyer, 2006: 1343; Pont, 1995: 1175).

The church's diaconal structures, formalised through the Church Law and Provisions of 1904, enabled systematic poverty alleviation efforts within this narrow scope (Dreyer, 2006: 1343; Pont, 1995: 1175). While these initiatives effectively addressed the immediate needs of Afrikaners

devastated by the war, they also reflected and reinforced the church's ethnocentric focus, limiting its broader societal impact (Botes, 1991: 802; Van Wyk, 1992: 1015).

In the Apartheid Era, this ethnocentric focus intensified as the NHKA's ecclesiology became closely aligned with state ideology, justifying racial segregation and further narrowing the scope of its diaconal work (NHKA, 1951: 29; Dreyer, 2011: 2). The introduction of Article III in the 1951 Church Law, which explicitly limited church membership to whites, exemplified this alignment (NHKA, 1951: 29). Consequently, the church's diaconal efforts remained primarily confined to the Afrikaner community, neglecting the broader socio-economic challenges facing South Africa (Dreyer, 2013: 2; Giliomee, 2004: 405).

The Post-Apartheid Era, however, marks a period of gradual transformation, with the NHKA shifting towards a more inclusive and missional ecclesiology. This shift was formalised through revisions to the Church Order in 1997, 2007, and 2016, reflecting the church's efforts to redefine its mission within the context of a democratic South Africa (NHKA, 1997: 69; Dreyer, 2020a: 6).

The establishment of the *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) in 1998 marked a significant step towards more coordinated and strategic poverty alleviation efforts (Van Rensburg, 2023: 1; Stoltz, 2016: 47). However, the analysis reveals ongoing tensions between the church's historical identity and its efforts to engage more broadly with South Africa's diverse socio-economic landscape (Van Wyk, 2013: 8; Dreyer, 2020b: 262).

3.7.2 Addressing the Research Questions

Reflecting on the research questions outlined in Chapter 1 (Chapter 1, section 1.5), the analysis in Chapter 3 highlights how the NHKA's evolving ecclesiological understanding has directly influenced its approach to poverty alleviation. The transition from a narrowly defined *volkskerk* to a more inclusive ecclesial model underscores a growing

recognition of the need to adapt to South Africa's changing socio-political landscape (Dreyer, 2020a: 5; NHKA, 2016a: 66). This evolution illustrates the profound impact of ecclesiology on the church's socio-economic mission and its responses to broader societal challenges.

The analysis also reveals that the socio-economic context has significantly shaped the NHKA's mission and diaconal ministry. The church's historical focus on Afrikaner welfare during the post-Boer War and Apartheid eras was heavily influenced by the prevailing socio-political conditions of each period. In contrast, the post-Apartheid era has seen the NHKA attempt to broaden its focus, albeit with ongoing challenges related to implementing a more inclusive mission (Dreyer, 2024: 149; Van der Merwe, 2020: 304).

3.7.3 Persistent Themes and Tensions

Throughout its history, the NHKA has faced persistent themes and tensions that have shaped its approach to poverty alleviation. One of the most significant tensions is between the church's traditional identity as a *volkskerk* and its evolving societal role. This tension has consistently influenced the NHKA's diaconal efforts, as the church has struggled to reconcile its historical identity with the demands of a more inclusive and socially engaged mission (Van Wyk, 2013: 8; Dreyer, 2020b: 262).

Another critical tension is the challenge of translating theological shifts into practical diaconal initiatives. This challenge has been particularly evident in the post-Apartheid era, where the NHKA continues to navigate the complexities of institutional transformation. While significant theological developments have been made, including adopting a missional ecclesiology, the practical implementation of these changes remains uneven (Schutte, 2003: 250; Dreyer, 2020a: 8).

Moreover, the NHKA's relationship with the broader Christian community, especially its efforts to reconcile with international ecumenical bodies, highlights the ongoing tension between maintaining doctrinal integrity

and engaging with wider social issues. This tension underscores the need for the NHKA to critically reflect on its past while striving to align its mission with the principles of justice, reconciliation, and social responsibility (Dreyer, 2011: 4-5; Van der Merwe, 2020: 322).

3.7.4 Challenges and Opportunities in the Post-Apartheid Era

The NHKA's post-Apartheid transformation presents both challenges and opportunities. While the church has made significant strides in redefining its mission and diaconal structures, the implementation of these changes has been uneven, reflecting ongoing internal tensions (NHKA, 2016a: 74-79; Dreyer, 2020a: 8). The shift towards a more decentralised and collaborative approach to poverty alleviation, exemplified by the establishment of the *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV), represents a promising development. However, sustaining these initiatives and ensuring alignment with the broader goals of justice and inclusivity remain critical challenges (Van Rensburg, 2023: 1; Stoltz, 2016: 47).

Furthermore, the NHKA's ongoing efforts to rebuild ecumenical relationships and re-engage with the global Reformed community are essential for its future mission. While these efforts are commendable, they must be supported by a genuine commitment to addressing the root causes of poverty and social injustice in South Africa (Van Wyk, 2013: 11; Dreyer, 2020b: 262).

3.7.5 Transitioning to a Missional Ecclesiology

As the NHKA continues its journey towards a more missional ecclesiology, this theological framework offers a potential solution to the limitations identified in this historical analysis. The shift towards a more inclusive and contextually relevant approach to poverty alleviation, as evidenced by the recent synodal resolutions, provides a theological foundation for the NHKA to engage more effectively with South Africa's diverse socio-economic landscape (Bosch, 1991: 390; Hooker, 2008: 1-2). However, the success of this transition will depend on the church's ability to fully integrate its evolving theological understanding into

practical, sustainable poverty alleviation initiatives (Niemandt et al., 2018: 1-3).

In Chapter 4, the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy, as outlined by Niemandt et al. (2018), will be introduced to guide the NHKA's future poverty alleviation efforts. This strategy involves a structured, iterative process that includes cycles of problem identification, theological reflection, and practical implementation (Niemandt et al., 2018: 1-3). By employing this strategy, the NHKA can develop and test new approaches to poverty alleviation that are both theologically grounded and contextually relevant (Niemandt et al., 2018: 1-3).

3.7.6 Final Thoughts

While significant achievements mark the NHKA's historical engagement with poverty, they also reveal enduring challenges and tensions. The church's ongoing efforts to redefine its mission and diaconal practices in the post-Apartheid era reflect a broader process of transformation that is essential for its future relevance and impact.

The transition towards a missional ecclesiology, underpinned by the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy articulated by Niemandt et al. (2018), offers a promising pathway (Niemandt et al., 2018: 4-5). This approach is grounded in a dynamic and iterative process that combines theological reflection, practical implementation, and continuous evaluation to ensure that the NHKA's mission remains responsive to the evolving socio-economic landscape of South Africa (Niemandt et al., 2018: 4-5).

The success of this transition will depend on the NHKA's ability to confront and reconcile with its past while maintaining a balance between theological integrity and practical responsiveness. The church must move beyond surface-level changes, embracing systemic reform and genuine engagement with the broader South African society. By fully integrating its evolving theological understanding into sustainable poverty

alleviation initiatives, the NHKA can play a critical role in addressing the socio-economic challenges of 21st-century South Africa. The critical analysis in Chapter 3 has underscored the importance of this integration, setting the stage for a more transformative and socially engaged ecclesiology.

Chapter 4 – Theoretical Underpinnings of Missional Ecclesiology

4.1 Introduction

Building on the historical analysis provided in Chapter 3, this chapter transitions to a forward-looking exploration of missional ecclesiology as a framework for addressing the challenges faced by the NHKA. Chapter 3 revealed the limitations of the NHKA's identity as a *volkskerk*, particularly its ethnocentric focus, which constrained its engagement with broader societal issues. The exploration of missional ecclesiology in this chapter directly responds to the ecclesiological gaps identified, offering a pathway for the NHKA to evolve into a church that is both theologically grounded and socially relevant. This chapter thus aligns with the research objectives outlined in Chapter 1, particularly the goal of re-evaluating the NHKA's mission in contemporary socio-economic challenges.

This identity, rooted in the NHKA's alignment with the Afrikaner community, significantly shaped its diaconal efforts, often limiting the scope of its mission to address the needs of the Afrikaner people while excluding broader societal concerns. As South Africa transitioned into a democratic and pluralistic society, the limitations of this ethnocentric focus became increasingly evident. The analysis in Chapter 3 concluded that the NHKA's traditional mission appeared insufficient to address the broader socio-economic challenges of a diverse and evolving society, necessitating a critical re-evaluation of the church's role in poverty alleviation (Dreyer, 2006:1343; Van Wyk, 2013:8).

Chapter 1 established the research objectives and questions, focusing on how the NHKA's historical ecclesiology and self-understanding influenced its approach to poverty alleviation and exploring the potential of missional ecclesiology as a framework for addressing these challenges. Specifically, the research sought to understand the implications of the NHKA's historical identity for its mission and to evaluate whether adopting a missional ecclesiology could enable the

church to engage more effectively with the socio-economic issues plaguing South Africa, such as poverty, inequality, and unemployment (Giliomee, 2004:405; Dreyer, 2011b:2).

Considering these research questions, this chapter explores the theoretical underpinnings of missional ecclesiology. It assesses how this framework can be applied within the NHKA's context to overcome the limitations identified in Chapter 3. The NHKA's historical focus on the Afrikaner community, while deeply rooted in its ecclesiological self-understanding, increasingly appears inadequate in addressing the needs of a post-apartheid society. This inadequacy was underscored by the conclusions drawn in Chapter 3, which highlighted the urgent need for a more inclusive and outward-focused mission (Dreyer, 2020b:259).

Recognising these limitations, the NHKA has embarked on a significant theological and practical transformation over the past several decades. Key milestones in this transformation included discussions and resolutions at various General Church Assemblies. The shift towards missional ecclesiology, which redefined the church's mission as active participation in God's redemptive work in the world (*missio Dei*), was formalised and guided by several critical assemblies, including the 68th General Church Assembly in 2007, the 69th in 2010/2011, and the 70th in 2013, with further developments and affirmations occurring at the 71st Assembly in 2016 (Niemandt, 2014a:6; NHKA, 2013:311-314).

A confluence of theological perspectives influenced the NHKA's transition towards missional ecclesiology. Velthuysen (1988) and Steenkamp (1995) initially questioned the adequacy of the *volkskerk* model, laying the groundwork for change. Building on this, Buitendag (2008), Dreyer (2009), Dreyer (2011b) and Van der Merwe (2011) advocated for a more inclusive, mission-oriented ecclesiology. These perspectives collectively challenged the NHKA to reconsider its identity and role in a changing South African context, paving the way for adopting missional ecclesiology principles (Niemandt, 2014a:6; Dreyer, 2020b:260).

The 68th General Church Assembly in 2007 marked a significant milestone in this journey, focusing on congregational development, explicitly incorporating a missional orientation as a critical element. The assembly recognised the need for the NHKA to equip its ministers to guide congregations in living more missionally in a postmodern society, signalling a shift from a preservationist stance to one that engages more actively with societal transformation. This shift was further reinforced during the 69th General Church Assembly in 2010/2011, where the Report of the Council for Apostolate (*Raad vir Apostolaat*) explicitly stated that a church that neglects its apostolic mission cannot be considered a true church. The report called for the development of a missional lifestyle within congregations and emphasised the need for ongoing theological reflection on the church's role in God's mission (NHKA, 2010:248-255; Niemandt, 2014a:6; Dreyer, 2020b:262).

The 70th General Church Assembly in 2013 continued to build on this foundation, with a renewed emphasis on the church's calling to participate in God's mission (*missio Dei*). The assembly's discussions highlighted the importance of understanding ecclesiology as beginning with God, not the church. They emphasised the church's role as a participant in God's redemptive plan for the world. This theological reorientation was seen as essential for the NHKA to move beyond its historical limitations and to engage more effectively with the diverse and complex realities of contemporary South Africa (NHKA, 2013:311-314; Niemandt, 2014a:6; Dreyer, 2020b:263).

The 71st General Church Assembly in 2016 was pivotal, marking the formal adoption of missional ecclesiology as the guiding framework for the NHKA's mission and operations. This Assembly emphasised the church's identity as a missional community. It included significant theological shifts, such as the priesthood of all believers, aimed at empowering the entire congregation in its mission (Dreyer, 2020b:263-264). This trajectory was further evaluated and reinforced in the 72nd General Church Assembly in 2019 and the 73rd in 2022, which focused

on assessing the progress and making necessary adjustments to ensure that the NHKA's mission remained relevant and impactful (Dreyer, 2020b:259-260).

The NHKA's journey towards a more missionally engaged diaconate reflects broader shifts within the church's ecclesiology. The establishment of the General Deacons Assembly (*Algemene Diakensvergadering*) in 1998 was a significant development, marking a new phase in the church's diaconal work by granting deacons greater autonomy and responsibility (Jansen van Rensburg, 2023:3). This change was part of a broader movement within the NHKA to integrate the diaconate more fully into the church's overall mission, aligning diaconal work with the principles of missional ecclesiology. The subsequent General Church Assemblies built on this foundation further emphasised the need for the NHKA to engage more deeply with societal issues through its diaconal structures (Jansen van Rensburg, 2023:5).

This chapter will explore the theoretical underpinnings of missional ecclesiology and examine how this framework can be applied to the NHKA context. The chapter will introduce a practice-oriented research strategy designed to guide the NHKA in implementing missional ecclesiology within its diaconal efforts. This strategy will provide a structured, iterative process for developing and testing new approaches to poverty alleviation, ensuring that they align with the NHKA's evolving mission and the broader socio-economic landscape of South Africa. By adopting a missional approach, the NHKA can develop new strategies for poverty alleviation that are both theologically grounded and contextually relevant, addressing the limitations of its historical mission and embracing its calling to be a dynamic participant in God's work of reconciliation and justice in the world (Bosch, 1991:390; Niemandt, 2014b:6; Hooker, 2008:1-2; Dreyer, 2020b:259-260; Jansen van Rensburg, 2023:4-5).

This chapter will explore the theoretical underpinnings of missional ecclesiology and examine how this framework can be applied to the NHKA context. The chapter will also introduce the ***Practice-Oriented Research Strategy for Missional Transformation***, a method designed to facilitate the implementation of missional ecclesiology within church contexts (Niemandt et al., 2018). This strategy provides a structured, iterative process for developing and testing new approaches to poverty alleviation, ensuring they align with the NHKA's evolving mission and the broader socio-economic landscape of South Africa. By adopting this missional approach, the NHKA can develop strategies for poverty alleviation that are both theologically grounded and contextually relevant, addressing the limitations of its historical mission and embracing its calling to be a dynamic participant in God's work of reconciliation and justice in the world (Bosch, 1991: 390; Niemandt, 2014b: 6; Hooker, 2008: 1-2; Dreyer, 2020b: 259-260; Jansen van Rensburg, 2023: 4-5).

4.2 The Concept of Missional Ecclesiology

Missional ecclesiology represents a significant paradigm shift in how the church understands its identity and role within the world. Rooted in the concept of *missio Dei*—the mission of God—missional ecclesiology asserts that the church is not the goal of God's mission but rather a participant in God's redemptive work. This perspective challenges traditional ecclesiological models, which often perceive the church as a static institution focused on internal affairs, to embrace a more dynamic and outward-looking mission that engages with the world in transformative ways. However, while the theoretical underpinnings of missional ecclesiology are compelling, one must critically assess whether these ideals can be effectively realised in practice, especially within the complex social and historical contexts of churches like the NHKA.

Van der Merwe (2011:1) emphasises that Christian churches are experiencing a profound paradigm shift as they navigate the 21st century. This paradigm shift has become exceedingly challenging for denominations like the NHKA as they seek to redefine what it means to

be a church in a rapidly changing world. While this aligns with the broader missional ecclesiology movement, it raises critical questions about whether such a shift can be sustained in a historically more inward-looking church. Van der Merwe (2011:2) underscores that this paradigm shift is not merely about adapting to cultural changes but involves fundamentally reorientating how the church perceives its mission and existence in a pluralistic society. The NHKA, with its historical ties to apartheid, may find this reorientation particularly challenging, as it necessitates a profound transformation in theology and praxis.

Niemandt (2014b:5) argues that missional ecclesiology requires the church to constantly reevaluate its role in society, moving from an institution primarily concerned with self-preservation to one actively seeking to participate in God's mission in the world. This shift necessitates rethinking church structures, leadership, and practices, aligning them with the missional calling to engage with the world's brokenness and needs. However, the practical implications of this shift must be addressed. Transitioning from a maintenance-oriented to a mission-oriented ecclesiology may encounter significant resistance within congregations comfortable with established traditions. Moreover, the risk of superficial adoption – where the language of mission is embraced without a corresponding transformation in practice – remains a significant concern.

The NHKA's journey towards missional ecclesiology reflects a broader shift in theological thinking about the nature and purpose of the church. To fully understand the implications of this shift for the NHKA, it is essential to explore the concept of missional ecclesiology in greater depth.

4.2.1 Defining Missional Ecclesiology

The term *missio Dei*, central to missional ecclesiology, finds its roots in Barth's emphasis on mission as God's activity (Bosch, 1991:390). Newbigin (1989:230) expanded on this, positing the church as a sign,

instrument, and foretaste of God's kingdom. Bosch (1991:391) further developed these ideas, arguing that being missionary is intrinsic to the church's nature. Together, these theologians present a cohesive view of the church as an active participant in God's ongoing mission rather than merely an institution focused on self-preservation.

Van der Merwe (2011:2) underscores that the concept of *missio Dei* is fundamental to understanding missional ecclesiology. He argues that God lives by sharing, and the Trinity is the doctrine of a God whose very essence is sharing. Consequently, those who believe in such a God must live a similar life. While this theological vision is inspiring, it also presents challenges in practical application. The idea that every aspect of the church's life must reflect this divine sharing can be challenging to realise in congregations that are more focused on internal matters. Furthermore, there is a risk that the emphasis on participation in God's mission might lead to a de-emphasis on traditional forms of ecclesial life, such as worship and teaching, which are also vital to the church's identity.

Dreyer (2020b:259) highlights that the adoption of *missio Dei* in Reformed churches, particularly within the NHKA, marked a significant departure from the traditional focus on the church as an institution. The emphasis shifted towards viewing the church as an instrument of God's mission, involving active engagement in societal transformation and pursuing justice rather than merely maintaining doctrinal purity and internal cohesion. However, this shift has its critics. Some argue that the focus on societal transformation can sometimes lead to the church being co-opted by political agendas, potentially compromising its theological integrity (Bosch, 1991:426). This concern is particularly relevant in contexts like South Africa, where the church's role in addressing social injustices can be both a powerful witness and a source of tension.

Missional ecclesiology, therefore, reorients the church's understanding of itself from being a self-contained entity to being a community sent by God into the world. This sending (or *missio*) is not merely an activity of the

church but is intrinsic to its very nature. As Bosch (1991:391) notes, the church is "missionary by its very nature," meaning that mission is not just one of the church's tasks but is at the heart of what it means to be the church. This understanding challenges any notion of the church as an institution that exists for its own sake, instead positioning it as a servant and witness to God's mission in the world. Yet, this reorientation requires a delicate balance, ensuring that the church's engagement with the world does not lead to a neglect of its doctrinal and liturgical responsibilities, which are also central to its identity.

Niemandt (2014a:6) further explains that this shift towards a missional identity necessitates reconfiguring how churches engage with their communities. Rather than acting as isolated entities, churches are called to integrate their mission with the needs and contexts of their surrounding environments, ensuring that their actions reflect the holistic nature of the gospel. Van der Merwe (2011:3-4) expands on this by arguing that the embodiment of missional theology must be visible in the church's praxis, particularly in how it lives out the Great Commission (Matthew 28:19-20). However, this raises critical questions about achieving such integration without compromising the church's core theological convictions. The danger of becoming too contextually driven, where the church's mission is shaped more by societal trends than by theological principles, is a genuine concern that must be carefully navigated.

Having established the paradigm shift that missional ecclesiology represents, it is crucial to define this concept more precisely and explore its theological roots.

4.2.2 Theological Foundations of Missional Ecclesiology

The Trinitarian foundation of missional ecclesiology, as articulated by Bosch (1991:390), Newbigin (1989:235), and Van Gelder (2007:24), presents a multi-faceted understanding of the church's mission. Bosch emphasises the sending nature of the Trinity: the Father sends the Son, and the Father and Son send the Spirit, who in turn sends the church.

Newbigin focuses on the church as a witness community, embodying and proclaiming the reality of God's kingdom. Van Gelder highlights the relational aspect of mission, reflecting the interconnected nature of the Trinity.

This section addresses Research Question 3, which explores the theological and practical foundations underpinning missional ecclesiology and their applicability to the NHKA's context. By analysing the Trinitarian basis for missional ecclesiology, we establish a crucial theological framework that informs the NHKA's potential shift from a maintenance-oriented to a mission-oriented ecclesiology. Understanding this foundation is essential as it provides the theological rationale for the NHKA's engagement with societal issues such as poverty, making the church actively participate in God's redemptive work in South Africa.

When synthesised, these perspectives present a rich theological basis for understanding the church as a dynamic, sent community that reflects the very nature of the triune God in its mission. However, this Trinitarian emphasis also presents a theological challenge: How can the church maintain its distinctiveness as the Body of Christ while fully participating in the world's diverse and often fragmented contexts?

This Trinitarian perspective has significant implications for how the church understands its mission. First, it emphasises that mission is not a human endeavour but a divine initiative the church is privileged to join. This shifts the focus from the church's activities to God's overarching purpose in the world. However, critics might argue that this emphasis on divine initiative can sometimes lead to a passive approach, where the church waits for divine direction rather than actively seeking ways to engage in mission. Second, it highlights the mission's communal nature, reflecting the Trinity's relational nature. The church is called to be a community that mirrors the triune God's love, unity, and diversity. Its mission is to extend this communal life to the world (Van Gelder, 2007:24). While this vision of communal life is theologically rich, it can be

difficult to achieve in practice, particularly in contexts where the church is divided by cultural, racial, or socio-economic barriers.

Dreyer (2020b:262) underscores that the Trinitarian foundation of *missio Dei* provides a critical lens through which the NHKA has re-evaluated its mission. This re-evaluation has led to a deeper understanding of the church's role in the world, not just as a community of believers but as an active participant in God's redemptive work, which includes addressing societal injustices and fostering reconciliation. However, the NHKA's historical involvement in apartheid poses a significant challenge to this re-imagined role. The church must navigate the complex process of repentance and transformation, ensuring its mission is genuinely redemptive rather than merely symbolic.

Moreover, missional ecclesiology challenges the church to reimagine its role not as a bastion of stability but as a dynamic, sent community. This perspective calls for a shift from maintenance-oriented ecclesiology, which focuses on preserving the institution, to mission-oriented ecclesiology, which prioritises engagement with the world's brokenness and needs (Guder, 1998:11). As the church embraces this missional identity, it becomes a community of witness, bearing testimony to the transformative power of the gospel in both word and deed (Newbigin, 1989:235). However, this shift also requires careful theological discernment to avoid the risk of reducing the church's mission to social activism, thereby neglecting its spiritual and sacramental dimensions.

Niemandt (2014a:6) articulates that this shift towards a dynamic, sent community has practical implications for church practices. It calls for innovative approaches to ministry that are responsive to the community's needs and prioritise social justice and reconciliation as central components of the church's mission. Van der Merwe (2011:4-5) further elaborates that such a shift requires the church to embody the gospel's transformative power in its practices, ensuring its mission reflects the radical inclusivity and justice inherent in the Kingdom of God. However,

the emphasis on innovation and transformation must be balanced with the need for continuity and stability in church practices, ensuring that new approaches do not undermine the church's theological foundations.

This reorientation has profound implications for how the church engages with societal issues. Missional ecclesiology insists that the church cannot be indifferent to the world's suffering but must actively seek to address the problems of poverty, injustice, and inequality as integral aspects of its mission. This approach reflects a holistic understanding of the gospel, where salvation is not only about individual souls but also about the transformation of communities and societies (Bosch, 1991:399). Van der Merwe (2011:6) concurs, arguing that a missional church must be deeply engaged in its context, addressing the real and pressing needs of those it serves and doing so to reflect the character of God as revealed in Jesus Christ. Nevertheless, this engagement with societal issues must be undertaken cautiously, ensuring that the church's mission remains faithful to the gospel and does not become co-opted by secular ideologies.

The fundamental conviction Van der Merwe (2011:9) argued is that there can be no place for a future church that is not missional. This challenges churches like the NHKA to continually reassess their practices and structures in light of their missional calling. However, this vision of a missional future must also be tempered by recognising the significant challenges and potential pitfalls of such a transformation, particularly in a church with a complex and contentious history like the NHKA.

While the theoretical distinctions between missional and traditional ecclesiology are clear, the practical application of these concepts within specific church contexts presents challenges and opportunities. The NHKA case provides a compelling example of how a church with a complex history can engage with missional ecclesiology.

4.2.3 Contrasting Missional Ecclesiology with Traditional Ecclesiology

Traditional ecclesiology often views the church as an institution primarily concerned with maintaining doctrinal purity, hierarchical structures, and internal community life. This inward focus can lead to a separation between the church and the world, where the church becomes insular and disconnected from the broader societal context (Van Gelder, 2007:18). In this model, the church's mission is often seen as an add-on, something that is done in addition to its primary tasks of worship, teaching, and fellowship. While this approach has been criticised for being insular, it also offers a stable foundation that has historically helped maintain the church's doctrinal integrity and unity.

Dreyer (2020b:264) contrasts this traditional view with the missional approach, noting that the church must break down the barriers between itself and the world. This shift involves moving away from a fortress mentality and towards an open engagement with society, where the church actively addresses its community's challenges. Van der Merwe (2011:7) adds that this requires a fundamental change in how the church perceives its mission—from self-preservation to sacrificial service and engagement with the world. However, critics might argue that such an open engagement risks diluting the church's theological distinctiveness, potentially leading to a form of cultural accommodation rather than faithful witness.

In contrast, missional ecclesiology insists that the church's primary vocation is to be sent into the world, participating in God's mission. This outward focus challenges the church to engage with societal issues, such as poverty, injustice, and inequality, as integral aspects of its mission. Rather than being a refuge from the world, the church is called to be a transformative presence within it, actively working towards the realisation of God's kingdom on earth (Guder, 1998:15). This shift from an inward to an outward focus reflects a fundamental change in how the church understands its identity and purpose. However, this outward focus must

be carefully balanced with the church's need to maintain its theological integrity and doctrinal purity, ensuring its engagement with the world does not compromise its core beliefs.

Missional ecclesiology also redefines the church's relationship with culture. While traditional ecclesiology often seeks to preserve a distinct boundary between the church and the surrounding culture, missional ecclesiology encourages a more incarnational approach, where the church enters and engages with culture to bear witness to the gospel in contextually relevant ways (Bosch, 1991:421; Van Gelder, 2007:21). This incarnational approach does not mean conforming to the culture but instead engaging with it critically and redemptively, seeking to transform it considering the gospel. Van der Merwe (2011:8) further stresses that this engagement must be grounded in the church's commitment to justice and mercy, reflecting the values of the Kingdom of God in its interactions with the world. However, the risk of cultural accommodation remains a significant concern, as the church's efforts to be contextually relevant could weaken its prophetic voice.

Moreover, missional ecclesiology challenges the traditional hierarchical structures of the church. Instead of seeing mission as the responsibility of a select few (such as missionaries or clergy), missional ecclesiology asserts that all church members are called to participate in God's mission. This democratisation of mission reflects the biblical principle of the priesthood of all believers, where every Christian is called to be a witness and agent of God's kingdom (Guder, 1998:102). While this approach is empowering, it also requires a significant shift in church governance and leadership. It may be challenging to implement in churches that are accustomed to more hierarchical structures.

Niemandt (2014b:6) emphasises that this democratisation of mission is essential for the church to fully embody its missional calling. By empowering all believers to participate in God's mission, the church becomes a more inclusive and effective agent of transformation, capable

of addressing the complex challenges of contemporary society. Van der Merwe (2011:9) concurs, arguing that a truly missional church is one where every member is actively engaged in the work of the Kingdom, living out the gospel in every aspect of their lives. However, the practical challenges of achieving such widespread participation should not be underestimated. In many congregations, there may be significant resistance to this shift, particularly from those who are more comfortable with traditional church leadership and ministry models.

In conclusion, while missional ecclesiology offers a compelling vision for the church's role in the world, it also presents significant theological and practical challenges. The NHKA, like many other churches, must navigate these challenges carefully, ensuring that its embrace of missional theology is both theologically sound and practically viable. The insights of theologians like Van der Merwe provide valuable guidance. Still, the path forward will require ongoing discernment, critical reflection, and a deep commitment to faithfully embodying the gospel in a complex and changing world.

4.3 Applying Missional Ecclesiology to the NHKA's Context

The application of missional ecclesiology to the NHKA context requires a synthesis of various theological perspectives to address the church's historical limitations. The NHKA's long-standing intertwining with the socio-political identity of the Afrikaner community has profoundly influenced its diaconal efforts and mission focus, leading to an ethnocentric approach to poverty alleviation (Dreyer, 2006:1343; Van Wyk, 2013:8). To overcome these limitations, we can draw upon Barth's concept of participation in the *missio Dei* (Barth, 1956:785), which challenges the NHKA to move beyond its historical role as a *volkskerk*. Moltmann's emphasis on the church as a community of hope promoting social justice (Moltmann, 1977:7) provides a framework for addressing broader societal issues. Newbigin's holistic approach to mission (Newbigin, 1989:233) encourages the NHKA to develop comprehensive strategies for poverty alleviation. Bosch's call for cross-cultural

engagement (Bosch, 1991:390) urges the NHKA to transcend ethnic boundaries. When integrated, these perspectives collectively provide a comprehensive framework for reimagining the NHKA's role in South African society, guiding its transformation towards a more inclusive, socially engaged, and transformative mission.

4.3.1 Addressing Historical Limitations

Applying missional ecclesiology within the NHKA allows one to address the historical limitations of the church's mission by moving from an inward-focused, community-specific approach to one that is outwardly engaged with the broader South African society. The alignment of the NHKA with Afrikaner nationalism during the apartheid era not only reinforced racial divisions but also isolated the church from the broader socio-economic challenges facing South Africa (Giliomee, 2004:405). This isolation limited the NHKA's effectiveness in addressing systemic issues of poverty and inequality that affect all South Africans, not just the Afrikaner community.

This section addresses Research Question 1, which investigates the historical and current ecclesiological understandings within the NHKA regarding its role in poverty alleviation. By exploring how the church's ethnocentric past has influenced its engagement with poverty, this analysis highlights the need for a reorientation towards a more inclusive missional ecclesiology. It lays the groundwork for understanding how these historical limitations can be overcome. This reflection is crucial for reconfiguring the NHKA's mission in a way that aligns with contemporary South African realities.

Karl Barth's understanding of the church's mission articulated as participation in the *missio Dei*—the mission of God—provides a foundational theological framework for addressing these limitations. Barth emphasised that the church is not an end in itself but is called to be a witness to God's redemptive work in the world. This perspective challenges the NHKA to move beyond its historical role as a *volkskerk*

and engage more fully with the diverse populations of contemporary South Africa (Barth, 1956:785).

Jürgen Moltmann further developed this idea by arguing that the church must be a community of hope that actively participates in God's work of liberation and justice in the world (Moltmann, 1977:7). Moltmann's emphasis on the church's role in promoting social justice aligns with the need for the NHKA to broaden its mission and address the socio-economic challenges facing South Africa in more inclusive ways.

Leslie Newbigin also contributed to the theological understanding of mission by emphasising the church's role as a sign, instrument, and foretaste of the kingdom of God. Newbigin argued that the church's mission must be holistic, encompassing spiritual and social dimensions (Newbigin, 1989:233). This holistic approach is particularly relevant for the NHKA as it seeks to develop more comprehensive strategies for poverty alleviation that address both immediate needs and the systemic causes of poverty.

David Bosch's seminal work further emphasised the need for the church's mission to transcend all ethnic and cultural boundaries. Bosch argued that the church's mission is inherently cross-cultural and must engage with the broader societal context in transformative ways (Bosch, 1991:390). This perspective is critical for the NHKA as it seeks to move beyond its historical focus on the Afrikaner community and fully engage with the broader South African society.

Van Wyk (2013) supports this reorientation by arguing that the NHKA must balance maintaining its theological integrity and adapting to the changing social and cultural realities of post-apartheid South Africa. Van Wyk emphasises that the church's mission must be grounded in a deep understanding of the socio-economic challenges facing South Africa and must be responsive to the needs of all South Africans, not just the Afrikaner community (Van Wyk, 2013:8). This perspective aligns with the

broader framework of missional ecclesiology. It supports the NHKA's efforts to develop a more inclusive and socially engaged mission.

Building on these theological foundations, Dreyer (2020b) argues that the NHKA must critically evaluate its historical mission in light of its current socio-political context. Dreyer emphasises that the NHKA's mission must move beyond preserving Afrikaner identity and engage with the broader South African society in ways that reflect the church's commitment to justice and reconciliation (Dreyer, 2020b:260). This reorientation requires the NHKA to critically examine its historical role and embrace a new identity that is not confined by ethnic or cultural boundaries but is open to all people.

Having addressed the historical limitations, the NHKA's journey towards missional ecclesiology naturally progresses to embracing inclusivity and social engagement.

4.3.2 Embracing Inclusivity and Social Engagement

The shift towards a more inclusive and socially engaged mission is central to applying missional ecclesiology to the NHKA context. Adopting Resolution 1 by the NHKA in 2016 marks a significant step in this direction, reflecting the church's commitment to reorienting its mission towards broader societal engagement. Resolution 1 calls for the church to move beyond its traditional boundaries and actively address the socio-economic challenges facing all South Africans, regardless of race or ethnicity (NHKA, 2016:66).

Barth's concept of the church as a witness to the *missio Dei* provides a theological foundation for this shift towards inclusivity. Barth emphasised that the church's mission is universal in scope, encompassing all of humanity (Barth, 1956:758). This perspective challenges the NHKA to broaden its focus and engage with the diverse populations of South Africa in more inclusive ways.

Moltmann's emphasis on the church's role in promoting social justice supports this shift towards inclusivity. Moltmann argued that the church must be a community of hope that actively participates in God's work of liberation and justice in the world (Moltmann, 1977:98). This emphasis on social justice aligns with the NHKA's evolving mission, as articulated in recent synodal resolutions, which emphasise the church's responsibility to address poverty, injustice, and inequality as integral aspects of its witness (Guder, 1998:11).

Leslie Newbigin's holistic approach to mission further supports the NHKA's shift towards inclusivity. Newbigin argued that the church's mission must encompass spiritual and social dimensions, reflecting the holistic nature of the gospel (Newbigin, 1989:235). This perspective encourages the NHKA to develop charitable and transformative programmes and initiatives that empower communities and foster long-term social change.

Stoltz's recent work (2016) further supports the NHKA's commitment to social engagement. Stoltz argued that the church's diaconal work must move beyond charity and towards empowerment and systemic change. Stoltz emphasised the importance of addressing the root causes of poverty and injustice rather than merely providing immediate relief (Stoltz, 2016:49). This perspective aligns with missional ecclesiology's emphasis on holistic mission. It supports the NHKA's efforts to develop more comprehensive strategies for poverty alleviation.

Van Rensburg (2023) also contributed to understanding the NHKA's evolving mission by emphasising the importance of contextualising diaconal work within the broader framework of missional ecclesiology. Van Rensburg argued that the NHKA's diaconal efforts must be rooted in a deep understanding of the social and economic realities facing South Africa and must be responsive to the specific needs of the communities it serves (Van Rensburg, 2023:7). This emphasis on contextualisation

supports the NHKA's shift towards a more inclusive and socially engaged mission.

Dreyer (2020a) adds a crucial dimension to this discussion by highlighting the priesthood of all believers as a foundational concept in Reformed theology that aligns with missional ecclesiology. He argues that this concept empowers all members of the church to participate actively in the church's mission, thereby fostering a more inclusive and participatory approach to ministry (Dreyer, 2020a:4). This perspective encourages the NHKA to involve all its members in the church's mission, thereby enhancing its capacity to engage with the broader South African society.

While the theological shift towards inclusivity and social engagement is crucial, it also has significant practical implications for the NHKA's diaconal structures.

4.3.3 Practical Implications for the NHKA's Diaconal Structures

Applying missional ecclesiology to the NHKA's context has significant practical implications for the church's diaconal structures. Historically, the NHKA's diaconal work has been organised around a charity model, focusing on providing for the immediate needs of the Afrikaner community. While this approach has effectively addressed short-term needs, it often lacks a broader vision for sustainable poverty alleviation (Pont & Van Staden, 1998:19).

Barth's emphasis on the church's participation in the *missio Dei* provides a theological foundation for rethinking these diaconal structures. Barth argued that the church's mission must be aligned with God's redemptive work in the world, which includes addressing the systemic causes of poverty and injustice (Barth, 1956:765). This perspective encourages the NHKA to move beyond a charity-based model and develop initiatives that promote empowerment and systemic change.

This directly addresses Research Question 4, which investigates how the

NHKA's diaconal ministry can be optimised or transformed to better respond to the needs of the impoverished in South Africa. By exploring the theological foundations for rethinking diaconal structures, this analysis highlights the need to shift from a charity-based model to one focused on empowerment and systemic change. This shift is critical for aligning the NHKA's diaconal work with the broader goals of missional ecclesiology, ensuring that its initiatives address the immediate needs and the root causes of poverty within the South African context.

Moltmann's emphasis on the church's role in promoting social justice also supports this shift towards a more holistic and transformative approach to diaconal work. Moltmann argued that the church must actively participate in God's work of liberation and justice in the world, which includes addressing the root causes of poverty and inequality (Moltmann, 1977:104). This perspective aligns with the NHKA's evolving mission and supports the development of diaconal initiatives that are not only charitable but also transformative.

Newbigin's holistic approach to the mission further supports the NHKA's efforts to develop more comprehensive strategies for poverty alleviation. Newbigin argued that the church's mission must address both spiritual and social dimensions, reflecting the holistic nature of the gospel (Newbigin, 1989:243). This perspective encourages the NHKA to develop diaconal initiatives that address both the immediate needs and the systemic causes of poverty, thereby contributing to the long-term well-being of communities.

Stoltz (2016) and Van Rensburg (2023) provide recent insights into the NHKA's evolving diaconal structures. Stoltz emphasised the importance of moving beyond charity and towards empowerment, arguing that the church's diaconal work must address the root causes of poverty and injustice (Stoltz, 2016:50). Van Rensburg added to this discussion by emphasising the importance of decentralisation and empowerment, arguing that local congregations must be empowered to develop and

implement contextually relevant diaconal initiatives (Van Rensburg, 2023:9). These perspectives support the NHKA's efforts to build a more decentralised and contextually responsive approach to diaconal work, reflecting the principle of the priesthood of all believers.

Dreyer (2020a) further supports this shift towards decentralisation and empowerment by emphasising the importance of the priesthood of all believers. He argues that this concept empowers all members of the church to participate actively in the church's mission, thereby fostering a more inclusive and participatory approach to ministry (Dreyer, 2020a:5). This perspective encourages the NHKA to involve all its members in the church's mission, thereby enhancing its capacity to engage with the broader South African society.

Applying missional ecclesiology to the NHKA's context offers a transformative pathway for the church's engagement with South African society. This reorientation challenges the NHKA to move beyond its historical role as a *volkskerk* and embrace a more inclusive, socially engaged, and transformative approach to its mission.

By grounding its mission in the theological concepts of *missio Dei*, the priesthood of all believers, and a holistic understanding of the gospel, the NHKA can develop strategies for poverty alleviation that address both immediate needs and systemic causes. This approach necessitates a critical re-examination of the church's diaconal structures, encouraging a shift from centralised charity models to more decentralised, empowering, and contextually responsive initiatives.

The journey towards a fully realised missional ecclesiology within the NHKA is ongoing and complex. It requires sustained theological reflection, practical innovation, and a willingness to engage with the diverse realities of contemporary South Africa. As the NHKA continues to navigate this transformation, it can become a more effective witness to God's redemptive work in the world, contributing meaningfully to the

pursuit of justice, reconciliation, and holistic well-being for all South Africans.

4.4 The Practice-Oriented Research Strategy

To effectively integrate missional ecclesiology within the NHKA, particularly in its efforts to address poverty, it is essential to adopt a practical and iterative research strategy. The *Practice-Oriented Research Strategy for Missional Transformation*, as articulated by Niemandt et al. (2018), offers a structured approach that not only aligns with the principles of missional ecclesiology but also facilitates the development and testing of new initiatives that are contextually relevant and theologically grounded.

4.4.1 Overview of the Research Strategy

The Practice-Oriented Research Strategy, as articulated by Niemandt et al. (2018), offers a comprehensive approach to integrating missional ecclesiology within the NHKA, particularly in its efforts to address poverty. This strategy is designed to bridge the gap between theological reflection and practical action, ensuring that the church's mission remains responsive to the evolving needs of its community. Rooted in the theological principles of *missio Dei* and the continuous reformation of the church (*ecclesia semper reformanda*), this strategy aligns with the NHKA's identity as a participant in God's mission.

Critically, while the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy provides a structured framework, its effectiveness in the NHKA context depends mainly on the church's ability to authentically engage with its socio-historical identity. As discussed in Section 4.3, the NHKA's historical alignment with Afrikaner nationalism presents both a challenge and an opportunity. The research strategy's success will hinge on the NHKA's willingness to confront its past and embrace a missional identity that transcends its previous limitations (Dreyer, 2006:1343; Van Wyk, 2013:8).

4.4.1.1 Problem Identification

The first step in the research strategy involves thoroughly analysing the NHKA's socio-economic context to identify specific challenges and opportunities. This analysis must consider both the visible symptoms of poverty, such as unemployment and education deficits, and the underlying systemic issues that perpetuate these conditions (Bosch, 1991:390). Dreyer (2020a:5) emphasises the importance of understanding the historical factors that have shaped the NHKA's current context, including its past alignment with Afrikaner nationalism and its role in maintaining socio-economic divides. Acknowledging these factors, the NHKA can develop a mission addressing present challenges and fostering reconciliation and healing.

In this phase, the NHKA must engage deeply with the concept of *missio Dei*—God's mission in the world—and recognise that its involvement in addressing poverty is not merely a social obligation but a theological imperative. Bosch (1991:390) asserts that the church's mission is fundamentally about participating in God's redemptive work in the world. This perspective challenges the NHKA to view poverty alleviation as charity and a crucial aspect of its witness to the gospel. However, it is essential to critically assess whether the NHKA, given its historical focus on a specific cultural group, can fully embrace this broader missional mandate without substantial internal reformation (Niemandt, 2014b:6; Dreyer, 2020b:261).

4.4.1.2 Theological Reflection

Following problem identification, the research strategy moves into a phase of theological reflection. This step is critical in ensuring that the NHKA's mission is practical and deeply rooted in its identity as a participant in the *missio Dei*. Theological reflection involves a collaborative process where theologians, church leaders, and lay members come together to explore how the principles of missional ecclesiology can be applied to the specific challenges identified in the NHKA context.

Dreyer (2020a:10) suggests that this reflection must go beyond surface-level considerations and delve into the NHKA's core theological commitments. For example, the church may need to revisit its understanding of the gospel, particularly social justice and reconciliation. Barth (1932:36) argues that the church must continually reassess its doctrine and practices to ensure they align with the gospel's demands. This reassessment process is essential for the NHKA as it seeks to transition from a preservationist stance to one that actively engages with societal transformation.

However, the success of this theological reflection hinges on the NHKA's ability to move beyond its historical insularity. As explored in Section 4.2.3, contrasting missional and traditional ecclesiology reveals that the NHKA's traditional ecclesiological model may resist such transformations due to its inherent focus on preservation rather than engagement (Guder, 1998:15). Therefore, at the same time, theological reflection is crucial; it must critically evaluate whether the NHKA is prepared to embrace the full implications of missional ecclesiology, including the potential for significant shifts in its self-understanding and mission.

4.4.1.3 Practical Implementation

The insights gained from theological reflection must then be translated into practical initiatives to address the identified challenges. Dreyer (2020a:12) underscores the importance of involving the entire congregation in these initiatives, reflecting the principle of the priesthood of all believers. This approach not only empowers the congregation but also ensures that the NHKA's mission is not exclusive, but inclusive and representative of the broader community it seeks to serve.

The Practice-Oriented Research Strategy advocates for a participatory approach, where church members actively engage in developing and implementing initiatives. These initiatives should be designed to be transformative and sustainable, focusing on long-term solutions rather

than short-term relief. For instance, the NHKA could establish community development programmes, education and job training initiatives, or partnerships with local organisations to address systemic poverty (Van Gelder, 2007:24). However, it is essential to critically assess the NHKA's readiness to shift from its traditional charity-based model to one that emphasises systemic change, as discussed in Section 4.3.3 (Stoltz, 2016:46).

Moreover, the NHKA should consider the interdisciplinary nature of these initiatives, drawing on insights from sociology, economics, and education to ensure that its strategies are well-rounded and address the root causes of poverty. Bosch (1991:399) argues that the church's mission must engage with the broader socio-economic realities of its context, seeking to bring about holistic transformation. Yet, this approach raises critical questions about the NHKA's capacity to integrate such interdisciplinary methods, given its historically insular focus and limited engagement with broader societal issues (Dreyer, 2020b:265).

4.4.1.5 Evaluation and Iteration

The final step in the process is evaluation, which involves assessing the effectiveness of the implemented initiatives and making necessary adjustments. This iterative approach is crucial in ensuring that the NHKA's mission remains dynamic and responsive to the community's evolving needs (Niemandt et al., 2018:4-5). Dreyer (2020a:21) highlights the importance of continuous learning and adaptation in the church's mission, reflecting the ongoing nature of *ecclesia semper reformanda*.

Evaluation should consider both the initiatives' practical outcomes and theological integrity. The NHKA must ensure its mission remains faithful to its calling and grounded in its core convictions, even as it adapts to changing circumstances. Barth (1932:39) stresses the importance of maintaining a close connection between theology and practice, ensuring that the church's actions are always informed by its theological commitments. However, the NHKA must also critically assess whether its

traditional structures and leadership are flexible enough to support such an iterative process, as this may require a significant cultural shift within the church (Van Gelder, 2007:102).

4.4.2 Aligning the Research Strategy with Missional Ecclesiology

The alignment of the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy with missional ecclesiology is a pivotal step in ensuring that the NHKA's mission remains theologically grounded and contextually relevant. This process involves integrating theological reflection with practical action, thereby guiding the NHKA in addressing the socio-economic challenges identified in previous chapters while staying true to its theological convictions as outlined in Chapter 1.

4.4.2.1 Clarifying the Step within the Research Strategy

The Practice-Oriented Research Strategy's alignment with missional ecclesiology ensures that the NHKA's practical initiatives effectively address immediate social needs and are deeply rooted in its theological convictions. This step involves critically examining how the NHKA's mission can be shaped by the principles of missional ecclesiology to engage more meaningfully with the complex socio-economic landscape of South Africa. By doing so, the NHKA can move beyond its historical limitations and towards a more inclusive and transformative mission.

Missional ecclesiology, as articulated by key theologians such as Karl Barth (1956), Jürgen Moltmann (1977), Lesslie Newbigin (1989), and David Bosch (1991), positions the church as an active participant in God's redemptive work in the world. This theological foundation is particularly relevant for the NHKA as it seeks to engage more fully with the diverse and evolving South African context.

This section addresses Research Questions 5 and 6, which explore the challenges and opportunities of integrating missional ecclesiology into the NHKA and how this integration can serve as a model for other churches. By aligning the research strategy with missional ecclesiology,

this study identifies the theological and practical shifts necessary for the NHKA and provides a framework that can be applied more broadly. This approach ensures that the NHKA's engagement with poverty is transformative within its context and offers valuable lessons for other ecclesial bodies seeking to adopt a missional approach.

Barth's notion that the church exists for the world provides a foundational understanding of the NHKA's mission, emphasising the church's outward focus and responsibility to the broader society (Barth, 1956: 650-651). Moltmann's emphasis on the church's participation in God's redemptive work underscores the importance of justice, peace, and reconciliation in the NHKA's mission, particularly in addressing the socio-economic inequalities highlighted in Chapter 2 (Moltmann, 1977: 20-22).

Newbigin's concept of the church as a sign, instrument, and foretaste of the Kingdom of God further supports the idea that the NHKA's mission must be holistic, addressing both spiritual and social dimensions of poverty (Newbigin, 1989: 230-231). Bosch builds on these ideas by stressing the transformative nature of mission, which must not only address individual salvation but also systemic injustices within society. His perspective is crucial for the NHKA, particularly in the South African context, where the church's mission must confront and seek to transform the underlying structures of poverty and inequality (Bosch, 1991: 399).

Forster's public theological reflection on the church's role as a bearer of hope in South Africa further enriches this discussion. He argues that the church must engage with the present reality while holding on to the eschatological hope for a better future. This "present-futurist eschatology" challenges the NHKA to address immediate socio-economic needs in a way that embodies and anticipates God's coming Kingdom (Forster, 2015: 2-3). This approach aligns with the NHKA's historical engagement with poverty, as explored in Chapter 3, and calls for a reorientation towards a more inclusive and transformative mission.

By integrating these theological insights into the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy, the NHKA can develop initiatives that are not only contextually relevant but also deeply rooted in its theological identity. This alignment ensures that the NHKA's mission is faithful to its theological convictions and responsive to the needs of its communities.

4.4.2.2 Integration of Theological and Theoretical Insights

Theological reflection is central to aligning the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy with missional ecclesiology. The foundation laid by theologians like Barth, Moltmann, Newbigin, Bosch, and Forster provides a robust framework for the NHKA's mission. Barth's emphasis on the church's role in the world challenges the NHKA to look beyond its community and engage with the broader societal issues that affect South Africa today. This theological perspective is essential as the NHKA seeks to reform its mission to be more inclusive and outward-focused, moving away from the ethnocentric tendencies of its past (Barth, 1956: 650-651).

Moltmann's theology of hope and the church's participation in God's redemptive mission is particularly relevant in South Africa, where socio-economic disparities remain a significant challenge. The NHKA's mission, guided by this theological insight, must prioritise justice, peace, and reconciliation as central to its engagement with poverty and inequality. This approach aligns with the broader goals of missional ecclesiology, which seeks to embody the values of the Kingdom of God in the church's mission (Moltmann, 1977: 20-22).

Newbigin's understanding of the church as a foretaste of the Kingdom provides a compelling vision for the NHKA's mission that integrates spiritual and social dimensions. This holistic approach is necessary for addressing the complex issues of poverty in South Africa, which require both immediate relief and long-term systemic change. By aligning its mission with these theological principles, the NHKA can develop initiatives that are not only contextually relevant but also deeply rooted in its theological identity (Newbigin, 1989: 230-231).

Bosch's framework for transformational mission adds depth to this understanding by emphasising the church's role in challenging and transforming societal structures that perpetuate injustice and inequality (Bosch, 1991: 390). This perspective is crucial for the NHKA, particularly in the South African context, where the church's mission must confront and seek to transform the underlying structures of poverty and inequality.

Forster's contributions to public theology, mainly his focus on the church as a bearer of hope, further enhance this alignment. Forster argues that the church must engage with the present reality and the eschatological hope of God's Kingdom. This dual focus allows the NHKA to address immediate socio-economic challenges while also pointing towards a future where justice, peace, and reconciliation are fully realised (Forster, 2015: 2-3). Integrating Forster's insights into the NHKA's mission strategy ensures that the church remains grounded in its theological identity while actively engaging with the day's pressing issues.

4.4.2.3 Link to Broader Study

In Chapter 1, the research questions were framed around how the NHKA's historical identity and ecclesiological understanding have influenced its approach to poverty alleviation. By aligning the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy with missional ecclesiology, the NHKA can ensure that its mission is not only a response to socio-economic needs but also a faithful expression of its theological commitments as a participant in the *missio Dei* (Bosch, 1991: 390). This alignment is crucial for addressing the research problem identified in Chapter 1, where the need for a more theologically grounded and contextually relevant mission was emphasised.

The NHKA's historical engagement with poverty, as explored in Chapter 3, reveals its mission's strengths and limitations. While the NHKA has a rich tradition of diaconal work, this work has often been limited by an ethnocentric focus that prioritises the needs of the Afrikaner community.

This inward focus has sometimes restricted the church's ability to engage fully with the broader societal challenges facing South Africa. The socio-economic analysis in Chapter 2 highlights the need for a more inclusive and systemic approach to poverty alleviation, addressing the root causes of poverty, such as unemployment, education deficits, and economic inequality, rather than merely providing short-term relief.

Missional ecclesiology offers a framework for the NHKA to reorient its mission towards a more inclusive and transformative engagement with society. This approach is particularly relevant in the South African context, where historical inequalities continue to shape the socio-economic landscape (Bosch, 1991: 399). By aligning the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy with the principles of missional ecclesiology, the NHKA can develop contextually relevant and theologically sound initiatives, addressing the systemic issues perpetuating poverty and inequality (Guder, 1998: 11).

4.4.2.4 Critical Analysis

The alignment of the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy with missional ecclesiology provides a robust framework for the NHKA to engage with the socio-economic challenges identified in Chapters 2 and 3. However, this approach is not without its challenges. The NHKA must be cautious of potential mission drift, where the focus on social action might overshadow the theological foundations of its mission. While the iterative nature of the strategy is a strength, allowing for continuous reflection and adaptation, it also requires sustained commitment and resources, which may be challenging to maintain in the long term (Niemandt et al., 2018: 4-5).

Moreover, the NHKA must navigate the tension between maintaining its theological identity and engaging with the rapidly changing socio-economic context of South Africa. This requires a delicate balance between being responsive to immediate needs and staying true to the long-term goals of the church's mission. The Practice-Oriented Research

Strategy, when aligned with missional ecclesiology, offers a way to navigate this tension. Still, ongoing theological reflection and practical action will be required to ensure that the NHKA's mission remains faithful and effective.

4.4.3 Practical Application within the NHKA

The **Practice-Oriented Research Strategy**, as articulated by Niemandt et al. (2018: 5-7), offers a comprehensive framework for supporting missional transformation within faith communities. This strategy, designed to be a dynamic and adaptive process, can be highly beneficial for the NHKA in its ongoing efforts to align with missional ecclesiology and effectively address socio-economic challenges, particularly poverty.

The first step, **articulating the pain or problem**, involves recognising the NHKA's current challenges in its mission to address poverty. Historically, the NHKA has undertaken several initiatives to alleviate poverty, such as establishing diaconal programmes and supporting community projects (Van Rensburg, 2023: 36). However, these efforts have often been reactive rather than proactive, addressing immediate needs without engaging in long-term strategic planning. The Practice-Oriented Research Strategy encourages the NHKA to revisit these challenges with a fresh perspective, understanding the underlying systemic issues and recognising the pain points within its community (Niemandt et al., 2018: 8-9).

In the second step, **clarifying the question**, the NHKA must engage in theological reflection and discernment to identify the core issues that hinder its mission. This involves asking critical questions: What are the root causes of poverty in the communities the NHKA serves? How can the church's resources and influence be mobilised to address these causes? The NHKA's previous initiatives, such as establishing the *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) and various diaconal projects, provide a foundation for this reflection (Rensburg, 2023: 37). However, the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy demands a more intentional

and structured approach, ensuring that the NHKA's mission is guided by a clear understanding of the socio-economic landscape and the church's role (Niemandt et al., 2018: 10-11).

The third step, **developing a prototype**, requires the NHKA to design innovative and contextually relevant solutions to the identified challenges. This is where the NHKA's past efforts can be evaluated for effectiveness and scalability. For instance, the NHKA has supported numerous community projects, such as the *Doulos Armoedebediening*, focusing on education, skills development, and poverty alleviation (Van Rensburg, 2023: 39). While impactful, these initiatives often lack a cohesive strategy that integrates them into the church's mission. The Practice-Oriented Research Strategy would encourage the NHKA to prototype new approaches that build on these efforts, such as developing comprehensive diaconal programmes continuously evaluated and adapted based on community feedback and changing needs (Niemandt et al., 2018: 12-13).

The fourth step involves **testing the prototype**, implementing these new approaches in select communities and gathering feedback to refine them. The NHKA has previously experimented with various diaconal initiatives. Still, these have not always been subject to rigorous evaluation (Van Rensburg, 2023: 41). By applying the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy, the NHKA can establish a structured process for testing new initiatives, collecting data, and making evidence-based adjustments. This iterative process ensures that the church's efforts remain responsive to the community's needs and aligned with its missional identity (Niemandt et al., 2018: 14-15).

The NHKA's existing governance structures, such as the ADV, provide a strong foundation for incorporating the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy into the church's broader planning and decision-making processes. By embedding this strategy within its governance, the NHKA can ensure that its missional engagement is sustained over the long term

(Van Rensburg, 2023: 42). This involves developing new initiatives and institutionalising successful prototypes, ensuring they become part of the church's regular operations (Niemandt et al., 2018: 16-17).

Moreover, the NHKA's commitment to theological education and leadership development is crucial for successfully implementing the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy. Training programmes that equip church leaders and members with the necessary skills and knowledge to engage in missional transformation are essential (Guder, 1998: 102; Van Gelder, 2007: 102). These programmes should include theological education on missional ecclesiology and practical training in community development, social justice, and adaptive leadership.

Applying the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy within the NHKA allows one to evaluate and enhance the church's critical and ongoing efforts in poverty alleviation. The NHKA can develop innovative and contextually relevant approaches that address immediate needs and contribute to long-term missional transformation by engaging in a structured and reflective process.

4.5 Key Theological and Practical Implications

Integrating missional ecclesiology within the NHKA presents significant theological and practical implications crucial for the church's ongoing transformation. These implications extend beyond theoretical considerations, touching on the NHKA's identity, mission in post-apartheid South Africa, and practical approaches to poverty alleviation.

This section addresses Research Questions 1 and 4, which explore how the NHKA's historically shaped as a *volkskerk* identity must evolve under missional ecclesiology to better engage with poverty alleviation in a diverse South African context. The NHKA can transition from an insular focus to a broader, more inclusive approach that aligns with the *missio Dei* by reimagining its role and mission. This redefinition is critical for the NHKA's ability to address systemic poverty effectively, shifting the

church's mission from maintaining tradition to active participation in societal transformation.

4.5.1 Theological Implications

4.5.1.1 Revisiting the Identity of the NHKA

One of the most profound theological implications of adopting missional ecclesiology is the need for the NHKA to revisit and possibly redefine its identity. Historically, the NHKA's identity has been closely tied to its role as a *volkskerk*—a church serving the Afrikaner people. While this identity has provided a strong sense of community, it has also led to an insular approach, often excluding broader societal engagement, particularly in South Africa's racially and economically diverse context (Dreyer, 2006: 1343; Van Wyk, 2013: 8).

Missional ecclesiology challenges this insularity by asserting that the church exists not for itself but for the world as an agent of God's mission (*missio Dei*). This shift from a *volkskerk* identity to a missional identity requires the NHKA to reimagine itself as a community sent by God to engage with all people, transcending ethnic, cultural, and social boundaries (Bosch, 1991: 390). Such a reorientation has significant theological implications, as it calls the NHKA to embrace a more inclusive and outward-focused mission aligned with the broader purposes of the *missio Dei* (Guder, 1998: 11).

This redefinition of identity directly informs the first step of the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy, which involves *articulating the pain or problem* (Niemandt et al., 2018: 5-7). The historical limitations of the NHKA's insular identity must be acknowledged as a pain point that has hindered the church's ability to engage meaningfully with the broader South African context. By redefining its identity in line with missional ecclesiology, the NHKA can begin to address this foundational issue.

4.5.1.2 The Ecclesiological Shift

Adopting missional ecclesiology necessitates a shift in the NHKA's ecclesiology. Traditional ecclesiological models often emphasise the church as an institution maintaining doctrinal purity, hierarchical structures, and internal community life. However, missional ecclesiology redefines the church's role as one of active participation in God's mission in the world, emphasising flexibility, adaptability, and engagement with contemporary societal issues (Van Gelder, 2007: 24). This ecclesiological shift has profound implications for how the NHKA understands its structures, leadership, and practices, potentially leading to more decentralised and participatory models of church governance (Guder, 1998: 102).

This shift aligns with the second step of the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy—*clarifying the question*—where the NHKA must explore how its current ecclesiological structures may need to evolve to support a missional approach (Niemandt et al., 2018: 10-11). While valuable, the NHKA's historical focus on maintaining internal community life has often come at the expense of broader societal engagement. The transition to a missional ecclesiology offers the opportunity to question and reframe these priorities in light of the *missio Dei*.

4.5.1.3 The Role of the Church in Society

Another key theological implication is rediscovering the church's role in society. The NHKA's role has traditionally been primarily spiritual, focusing on worship, teaching, and pastoral care within the Afrikaner community. However, missional ecclesiology insists that the church's mission encompasses all aspects of life, including social, economic, and political dimensions (Bosch, 1991: 399). This broader understanding of mission calls the NHKA to actively engage with societal issues such as poverty, injustice, and inequality, not as secondary concerns but as integral to its witness to God's kingdom (Guder, 1998: 15).

This theological shift speaks directly to the third step of the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy—*developing a prototype*—by encouraging the NHKA to innovate new ways of engaging with societal issues. Historically, the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation has been critiqued for being reactive and limited in scope (Dreyer, 2006: 1345). By reimagining its role in society through the lens of missional ecclesiology, the NHKA can develop more proactive and holistic approaches to addressing poverty and social injustice.

4.5.1.4 Deepening Theological Reflection

The theological implications of missional ecclesiology also invite more profound reflection on the church's societal role. Drawing on the insights of theologians like Karl Barth and Jürgen Moltmann, we can see that missional ecclesiology aligns with a broader theological vision of the church as a community that participates in God's redemptive work in the world (Barth, 1956: 50; Moltmann, 1977: 124). Barth's emphasis on the *missio Dei* as the basis for the church's mission challenges the NHKA to move beyond a narrow focus on internal ecclesial life and to embrace a broader engagement with the world. Similarly, Moltmann's view of the church as a sign, instrument, and foretaste of God's kingdom underscores the need for the NHKA to actively address social injustices and promote reconciliation (Moltmann, 1977: 127).

4.5.2 Practical Implications for the NHKA's Mission

4.5.2.1 Reorienting Diaconal Structures

The theological shifts outlined above have direct practical implications for the NHKA's diaconal structures. Historically, the NHKA's diaconal efforts have been organised around a charity-based model focused on providing for the immediate needs of the Afrikaner community. While this approach has addressed short-term needs, it often lacks a vision for sustainable and transformative change (Pont & Van Staden, 1998: 19).

Missional ecclesiology calls for rethinking these diaconal structures to align them with a more holistic and transformative mission. This could

involve shifting from a charity-based model to one emphasising empowerment and systemic change. For example, the NHKA could develop initiatives aimed at education, job creation, and community development, which address the root causes of poverty rather than just its symptoms (Van Rensburg, 2023: 39). Such initiatives would not only provide immediate relief but also contribute to the long-term well-being of communities, aligning with the church's broader mission of participating in God's work of reconciliation and renewal (Bosch, 1991: 399).

This reorientation of diaconal structures is connected to the fourth step of the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy—*testing the prototype*. By developing and implementing new diaconal initiatives that align with missional ecclesiology, the NHKA can evaluate their effectiveness and make necessary adjustments (Niemandt et al., 2018: 14-15). For example, the *Doulos Armoedebediening* could serve as a prototype for other community-focused initiatives, emphasising empowerment rather than mere relief (Van Rensburg, 2023: 41).

4.5.2.2 Engaging with Broader Society

Another practical implication of adopting missional ecclesiology is the need for the NHKA to engage more deeply with broader South African society. This engagement requires the church to move beyond its traditional boundaries and actively participate in addressing the socio-economic challenges facing all South Africans, regardless of race or ethnicity. Adopting Resolution 1 is a significant step in this direction, reflecting the NHKA's commitment to a more inclusive mission (NHKA, 2016: 66).

The NHKA must develop partnerships with other churches, non-governmental organisations, and community groups to engage with broader society effectively. These partnerships can provide additional resources and expertise, enhancing the effectiveness of the NHKA's initiatives. Moreover, such collaborations demonstrate the church's commitment to working for the common good, which aligns with its

missional identity (Guder, 1998: 102). This collaborative approach aligns with the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy's emphasis on continuous reflection and adaptation, allowing the NHKA to learn from others and refine its initiatives accordingly (Niemandt et al., 2018: 16-17).

4.5.2.3 Empowering the Congregation

A further practical implication is the need to empower the NHKA's congregation to participate actively in the church's mission. Missional ecclesiology emphasises the priesthood of all believers, suggesting that every church member has a role to play in its mission (Van Gelder, 2007: 102). This democratisation of mission challenges the NHKA to move from a clergy-centric model towards a more participatory approach, where all members are encouraged to contribute their gifts and talents to the church's mission (Guder, 1998: 102).

This could involve forming task groups, or committees focused on specific areas of need, such as poverty alleviation, education, or community health. These groups would conduct problem identification, engage in theological reflection, and develop practical initiatives. Regular training and workshops could also equip members with the knowledge and skills to engage in the church's mission effectively (Niemandt et al., 2018: 18-19).

The empowerment of the congregation directly relates to the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy's emphasis on inclusivity and broad participation in the church's mission. By involving all members in the research and implementation process, the NHKA can ensure that diverse perspectives inform its missional initiatives and are more likely to succeed (Niemandt et al., 2018: 20-21).

4.5.3 Challenges and Opportunities

4.5.3.1 Challenges of Implementation

While adopting missional ecclesiology offers significant opportunities for the NHKA, it also presents several challenges. One of the primary

challenges is the need to overcome resistance to change within the church. As a historically conservative institution, the NHKA may encounter resistance from members uncomfortable with the shift from a traditional *volkskerk* identity to a more inclusive and outward-focused mission (Dreyer, 2020b: 276). Overcoming this resistance will require careful theological education and pastoral leadership, helping members understand the biblical and theological foundations of missional ecclesiology and its relevance to the NHKA's mission in contemporary South Africa (Bosch, 1991: 421).

Moreover, there is a risk that the NHKA's move towards a missional identity could be perceived as abandoning its historical roots and traditional values. This tension between maintaining theological distinctiveness and engaging in broader social issues is a challenge that must be carefully navigated (Smit, 2008: 45). The NHKA must find a balance between honouring its Reformed heritage and embracing a more inclusive, socially engaged mission. This challenge is particularly relevant in South Africa, where issues of identity, culture, and history are deeply intertwined with the church's mission (Van Gelder, 2007: 104).

4.5.3.2 Opportunities for Growth and Transformation

Despite these challenges, adopting missional ecclesiology also presents significant opportunities for growth and transformation within the NHKA. By embracing a more inclusive and socially engaged mission, the NHKA has the potential to become a more relevant and transformative presence in South Africa. This shift could lead to renewed vitality within the church, as members are inspired by a sense of purpose and mission that extends beyond the church walls (Guder, 1998: 15).

Moreover, the NHKA's engagement with broader societal issues can enhance its witness to the gospel, demonstrating the church's commitment to justice, reconciliation, and the common good. This engagement can also foster deeper relationships with other churches and organisations, contributing to a more united and collaborative

Christian witness in South Africa (Van Gelder, 2007: 24). However, the NHKA must remain vigilant to the potential unintended consequences of these shifts, such as the risk of diluting its theological identity or overextending its resources (Niemandt, 2019: 34).

4.5.3.3 Critical Evaluation and Practicality

Given the NHKA's current structures and resources, the practicality of these implications requires careful consideration. The NHKA may face barriers to implementing these shifts, including financial constraints, limited personnel, and the need for extensive training and education. Moreover, moving away from a *volkskerk* identity could weaken existing community ties and erode the sense of belonging many members find within the NHKA (Van Wyk, 2013: 5-7).

Furthermore, while missional ecclesiology offers a compelling vision for the church's engagement with society, it may not be the only approach to addressing poverty and social justice. Alternative models, such as Liberation Theology or Contextual Theology, may offer different perspectives that complement or challenge the missional approach. The NHKA must be open to exploring and integrating these alternative approaches into its mission where appropriate (Dreyer, 2020b: 276).

4.6 Conclusion

Chapter 4 has provided an in-depth exploration of missional ecclesiology and its application within the NHKA, framing this discussion within historical and contemporary contexts. The chapter has synthesised theoretical insights from key scholars, examined the NHKA's historical challenges, and proposed a strategic framework for the church's ongoing transformation.

Missional ecclesiology, as articulated by scholars like Bosch (1991) and Guder (1998), emphasises the church's role as an active participant in the *missio Dei*—God's mission in the world. This theological framework calls for the church to move beyond a static, inward-focused existence,

engaging dynamically with the world to address injustice, poverty, and reconciliation issues. Bosch (1991: 390) argues that the church's mission is inherently contextual, requiring an adaptive and responsive approach to the socio-economic realities of its environment. Guder (1998: 11) further elaborates on this by asserting that the church's identity must be rooted in its calling to serve the world, reflecting God's inclusive and redemptive purposes.

The NHKA's historical identity as a *volkskerk* has provided a strong sense of community but has also imposed limitations on the church's broader societal engagement. Dreyer (2006: 1343) critiques the NHKA's insular approach, noting that its close identification with the Afrikaner people has often led to a narrow focus that excludes the diverse realities of South Africa. Van Wyk (2013: 8) similarly highlights the challenges posed by this historical identity, arguing that the NHKA's ecclesiological framework has not adequately addressed the needs of a post-apartheid society. Missional ecclesiology, emphasising inclusivity and outward engagement, offers a way for the NHKA to overcome these limitations by redefining its mission and identity in alignment with the *missio Dei*.

The Practice-Oriented Research Strategy proposed by Niemandt et al. (2018: 5-7) offers a practical framework for the NHKA to implement missional ecclesiology within its context. This strategy, grounded in continuous cycles of problem identification, theological reflection, practical implementation, and evaluation, provides a dynamic approach that ensures the church's mission remains relevant and responsive to the evolving needs of its context. By embracing this strategy, the NHKA can move beyond short-term, charity-based approaches to poverty alleviation and adopt more sustainable and transformative initiatives that address systemic issues (Niemandt et al., 2018: 12-13).

The theological implications of adopting missional ecclesiology, as discussed in Section 4.5, require the NHKA to revisit its identity, redefine its ecclesiological structures, and expand its understanding of the

church's role in society. This shift calls for reorientating the NHKA's diaconal structures, moving from a charity-based model to one that emphasises empowerment and systemic change (Van Rensburg, 2023: 3-5). Additionally, the NHKA must engage more deeply with broader South African society, developing partnerships and empowering its congregation to participate actively in the church's mission (Guder, 1998: 102). These changes present significant challenges, including resistance to change within the church and the complexities of balancing theological distinctiveness with broader social engagement (Dreyer, 2020b: 276; Van Gelder, 2007: 104).

Despite these challenges, adopting missional ecclesiology presents significant opportunities for growth and transformation within the NHKA. By embracing a more inclusive and socially engaged mission, the NHKA can become a more relevant and transformative presence in South Africa, fostering deeper relationships with other churches and organisations and enhancing its witness to the gospel (Van Gelder, 2007: 24). However, as scholars like Niemandt (2019: 34) and Dreyer (2020b: 276) caution, this shift must be carefully managed to avoid unintended consequences, such as diluting the church's theological identity or overextending its resources.

This chapter has advanced the overall argument of this thesis by demonstrating how missional ecclesiology can provide a robust theological and practical framework for the NHKA's engagement with contemporary socio-economic challenges. It has addressed the research questions in Chapter 1 by exploring how the NHKA can move beyond its historical limitations and adopt a more dynamic, responsive mission that aligns with the *missio Dei*. The insights gained in this chapter lay the groundwork for applying these principles in Chapter 5, where a specific case study or practical scenario will be examined. This will demonstrate how missional ecclesiology can guide the NHKA's ongoing mission to alleviate poverty and promote justice and reconciliation in South Africa.

Chapter 5 – Evaluating and Transforming the NHKA’s Approach to Poverty Alleviation

5.1 Introduction

Building on the theoretical framework of missional ecclesiology established in Chapter 4, this chapter applies these principles to critically evaluate the NHKA’s approach to poverty alleviation. The shift from a *volkskerk* to a missional identity, alongside the concept of *missio Dei*, provides the primary lens for analysing the NHKA’s diaconal efforts as documented in the *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) minutes from 1998 to 2022. This analysis is further informed by the Practice-Oriented Research Strategy, which offers a valuable framework for understanding the NHKA’s process of missional transformation (Niemandt et al., 2018).

This chapter synthesises the research findings from previous chapters to conduct a focused analysis of the NHKA’s recent diaconal activities, particularly regarding poverty alleviation and social justice. The primary objective is to assess these efforts’ theological soundness and practical effectiveness, examining how well they align with the principles of missional ecclesiology discussed in Chapter 4.

The evaluation draws on the last nine ADV meetings from 1998 to 2022 to trace continuity and shifts in the NHKA’s approach. While these minutes provide a detailed record of strategic discussions, they reflect the perspectives of the ADV and may not fully capture the broader theological developments within the NHKA. As highlighted by Dreyer (2020: 260-263), the NHKA has increasingly shifted towards missional ecclesiology, though this transition is not entirely reflected in the ADV records.

The chapter’s analysis is anchored in the theological, historical, and contextual insights developed in Chapters 2 and 3. Chapter 2 highlighted the socio-economic challenges of poverty in South Africa, emphasising the role of faith-based organisations like the NHKA in addressing these

issues. Chapter 3 provided a historical overview of the NHKA's diaconal work, revealing its evolution from a charity-focused approach to one that often lacks a sustainable vision for transformative change. This context underscores the importance of re-evaluating the NHKA's diaconal strategy to embrace a more holistic, justice-oriented mission.

By integrating these insights, Chapter 5 aims to evaluate the NHKA's current practices, identify their strengths and weaknesses, and propose strategic recommendations for aligning these efforts more closely with missional ecclesiology. The chapter is structured to address key aspects of the NHKA's diaconal work, including its current structures, theological foundations, potential structural alternatives, and the cultural shifts required to embrace a missional identity fully.

Through this evaluation, the chapter seeks to guide the NHKA towards a more integrated and transformative approach to poverty alleviation that aligns with its theological identity and societal calling.

5.2 Evaluation of the NHKA's Diaconal Practices and Structures

5.2.1 Introduction

This section critically evaluates the NHKA's current diaconal practices and structures, focusing on their alignment with the principles of missional ecclesiology. Drawing on the minutes from nine *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) meetings from 1998 to 2022, the analysis examines strategic discussions, decisions, and priorities shaping the NHKA's diaconal mission. While these minutes primarily reflect the deliberations within the ADV, they are contextualised within the broader theological shifts discussed in previous chapters, particularly the church's transition towards missional ecclesiology (Dreyer, 2020: 260-263).

This evaluation identifies significant patterns of continuity and change in the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation, social justice, and community engagement. The analysis seeks to determine how effectively

the NHKA's diaconal practices reflect a proactive and transformative missional ecclesiology.

5.2.2 Methodology for Analysing the ADV Minutes

5.2.2.1 Introduction to the Methodology

The analysis employs thematic content analysis, a qualitative research method suitable for evaluating the extensive textual data in the ADV minutes. The method facilitates a systematic examination of strategic priorities, decision-making processes, and diaconal practices within the NHKA, capturing priority shifts over time (Braun & Clarke, 2006: 79; Bengtsson, 2016: 10).

Given the breadth of the data, this approach allows for a nuanced understanding of how the NHKA's practices align with the principles of missional ecclesiology. Thematic content analysis systematically identifies and categorises recurring themes within the ADV minutes, offering insights into the church's evolving response to socio-economic challenges.

5.2.2.2 Thematic Content Analysis

As applied in this chapter, the thematic content analysis systematically identifies, studies, and reports patterns within the ADV minutes, spanning over two decades. This method is particularly relevant for evaluating the church's strategic discussions, allowing for a longitudinal perspective on the evolution of its diaconal mission. The adaptability of content analysis makes it ideal for this study's focus on the NHKA's strategic priorities and theological reflections (Krippendorff, 2019: 53).

By categorising the content of the ADV minutes into key themes, the analysis captures both explicit and underlying patterns, offering insights into the church's response to socio-economic challenges and its engagement with poverty alleviation.

5.2.2.3 Data Collection

The data collection involved gathering and selecting the minutes from nine *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) meetings, covering 1998 to 2022. These minutes are critical for evaluating the NHKA's diaconal practices, as the ADV represents a culmination of the church's diaconal work. The ADV is an official meeting within the NHKA, as stipulated in the Church Order (NHKA, 2022: 33, 49-50).

Specific inclusion criteria guided the selection and analysis of these minutes:

1. *Relevance to Diaconal Work*: The minutes were selected for their collective view of the NHKA's diaconal activities, highlighting strategic priorities and decisions relevant to poverty alleviation and social justice.
2. *Completeness of Records*: Selected minutes had to be complete, with no significant documentation gaps, ensuring a comprehensive overview of the church's diaconal practices over 24 years (NHKA, 2022: 49).
3. *Chronological Span*: The selected minutes cover critical periods from the inception of the ADV in 1988 until 2022, allowing for a longitudinal analysis of the church's diaconal evolution.

The data collection involved retrieving the minutes from the NHKA's central archives in Pretoria, with electronic copies made for detailed analysis. Each set of minutes was reviewed to ensure it met the inclusion criteria before being incorporated into the study.

5.2.2.4 Limitations

While the selected minutes provide a rich source of data, several limitations must be acknowledged:

1. *Inconsistencies in Documentation:* Some meetings provided more comprehensive documentation than others, potentially affecting the depth of analysis for specific periods.
2. *Omission of Additional Reports:* Not all meetings included additional reports in the agenda, leading to potential gaps in the official minutes.
3. *Reliance on Formal Records:* The analysis is based on official minutes, which may not fully capture informal influences on diaconal practices, including grassroots efforts.
4. *Potential Bias:* As self-reported documents, the minutes may present a more favourable view of the church's efforts, requiring critical analysis to identify implicit biases or gaps.
5. *Exclusion of Empirical Data:* The absence of empirical data limits the ability to assess the impact of the NHKA's diaconal efforts fully. Future research could incorporate interviews or surveys for a more comprehensive understanding.

Despite these limitations, the selected minutes provide a valuable and representative dataset for examining the NHKA's diaconal work from 1998 to 2022. The analysis remains rigorous and relevant by adhering to inclusion criteria and addressing limitations.

5.2.2.5 Data Coding and Analysis Process

The data coding and analysis process followed a systematic approach to identifying, categorising, and interpreting themes within the minutes of the ADV meetings. This process was aligned with the goals and insights developed in earlier chapters, which provided a foundational understanding of the NHKA's historical engagement with poverty and its shift towards missional ecclesiology:

1. *Initial Review and Familiarisation*: The first step involved reviewing the ADV minutes to identify preliminary themes relevant to the study's objectives (Braun & Clarke, 2006: 87).
2. *Generation of Initial Codes*: Initial codes were generated based on themes identified in previous chapters, capturing key elements reflecting the church's diaconal work and alignment with missional ecclesiology (Braun & Clarke, 2006: 88).
3. *Identification and Categorisation of Themes*: The initial codes were grouped into broader themes aligned with the key focus areas of this thesis (Krippendorff, 2019: 61).
4. *Cross-Referencing Across Years*: Themes were cross-referenced across different years to detect patterns of continuity and change in the NHKA's diaconal practices (Bengtsson, 2016: 12).
5. *Review and Refinement of Themes*: The final step involved reviewing and refining the identified themes to ensure coherence and alignment with the broader analysis (Braun & Clarke, 2006: 92).

5.2.2.6 Emphasis on Key Themes

The coding process for the ADV minutes centred around five key themes derived from the broader analysis established in earlier chapters. These themes provide a coherent framework for examining the evolution of the NHKA's diaconal practices from 1998 to 2022, ensuring that the analysis in Section 5.2.3 is both comprehensive and aligned with the overall argument in this thesis:

1. *Theme 1 – Strategic Shifts in Diaconal Work*: This theme captures the significant strategic changes in the NHKA's approach to diaconal work, as discussed in Chapter 4. It focuses on the church's transition from reactive charity-based initiatives to a more strategic,

missionally-aligned framework, highlighting the decisions and priorities that have shaped this shift.

2. *Theme 2 – Theological Foundations and Reflections:* Building on the theological discussions in Chapters 2 and 4, this theme examines the NHKA's evolving theological stance on poverty and social justice. It explores how the church's theological reflections have increasingly aligned with missional ecclesiology, informing its approach to diaconal work.
3. *Theme 3 – Effectiveness and Challenges of Diaconal Work:* This theme assesses the effectiveness of the NHKA's diaconal initiatives, identifying successes and persistent challenges. It links back to the strategic and theological frameworks discussed in earlier chapters, critically evaluating the church's ability to implement and sustain its diaconal efforts.
4. *Theme 4 – Social and Political Contexts and Impact:* This theme analyses the interaction between the NHKA's diaconal work and the broader socio-political environment of post-apartheid South Africa, as detailed in Chapter 3. It explores how the church's mission has responded to and been influenced by changing social and political dynamics.
5. *Theme 5 - Gaps and Areas for Improvement:* This final theme identifies the gaps in the NHKA's diaconal practices and offers recommendations for future development. Drawing on the historical and theological analysis in earlier chapters, it outlines areas where the church can strengthen its missional engagement and better address the root causes of poverty.

5.2.2.7 Critical Reflection on Methodology

Thematic content analysis offers significant strengths, including its flexibility and adaptability, making it particularly suited for this study's

longitudinal nature (Braun & Clarke, 2006: 78). It effectively handles large volumes of data, enabling the systematic categorisation of information into coherent themes aligned with research objectives (Krippendorff, 2019: 62).

However, this approach also presents limitations, such as the potential for subjective interpretation and reliance on meeting minutes as primary data. A consistent analytical framework was applied throughout the analysis to mitigate these, informed by insights developed in earlier chapters. Cross-referencing themes across years ensured a robust understanding of the NHKA's diaconal evolution, while triangulation with other sources enhanced the validity of the findings (Bengtsson, 2016: 12).

5.2.3 Thematic Analysis of ADV Minutes (1998 – 2022)

This section critically examines the evolution of the NHKA's diaconal practices from 1998 to 2022. The analysis is organised around five primary themes mentioned in the previous section, reflecting the NHKA's responses to socio-political shifts, strategic changes, and theological developments within its evolving missional framework.

This thematic approach allows for a nuanced understanding of how broader ecclesiological and missional developments have shaped the NHKA's diaconal work, as discussed in Chapter 4. By tracing these themes, this section demonstrates the church's journey from a primarily reactive stance to a more strategic, missionally-aligned framework in its diaconal efforts. The analysis also highlights the church's ongoing challenges in fully realising its missional potential and areas where further theological and strategic integration is necessary. Each theme will be linked back to the concepts introduced in previous chapters, ensuring a cohesive and comprehensive narrative.

5.2.3.1 Theme 1: Strategic Priorities Missional Alignment

Between 1998 and 2022, the NHKA's approach to diaconal work evolved significantly, transitioning from reactive, short-term responses to poverty towards a more strategic, mission-aligned approach. This shift is evident across several distinct phases:

5.2.3.1.1 Early Post-Apartheid Period (1998-2004)

The 1998 *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) minutes reveal that the NHKA's diaconal focus was predominantly on immediate relief and charity-based initiatives. Die *Ondersteuningsraad's* report identified poverty as a key social challenge alongside other issues such as child abuse, substance abuse, and family breakdown (NHKA ADV 1998: 48-49). This approach reflects what Swart (2006: 20) observed as a common struggle among South African churches in the post-apartheid era to engage with complex socio-economic issues effectively.

By 2004, a notable strategic shift had occurred. The ADV minutes document a specific request for the church to initiate job creation projects, acknowledging that "the crisis around unemployment and poverty can no longer be ignored" (NHKA ADV 2004: 52). This marked a turning point in the NHKA's strategic priorities, as the church began to recognise poverty as an urgent issue requiring more sustained and proactive interventions. However, the absence of a comprehensive poverty alleviation strategy indicates the early stages of this strategic realignment.

5.2.3.1.2 Transition Period (2007-2013)

The 2007 ADV meeting significantly increased the church's focus on poverty-related issues. The minutes record extensive discussions on poverty, addressing its causes, impacts, and potential responses by the church (NHKA ADV 2007: 75-76). The Linmar job creation project, presented as a case study during this meeting, exemplified the church's growing commitment to addressing poverty through strategic initiatives (NHKA ADV 2007: 77-79). This heightened focus aligns with Bowers Du Toit's (2017: 3) analysis, which suggests that South African churches

increasingly recognised their role in tackling socio-economic challenges during this period.

The 2010 ADV meeting further cemented this practical approach by approving the purchase of land/property for housing and empowerment initiatives aimed at needy families (NHKA ADV 2010: 45-46). This decision reflects a move towards more concrete, asset-based approaches to poverty alleviation, indicating a deeper strategic engagement with systemic poverty issues.

5.2.3.1.3 Missional Integration Period (2016-2022)

By 2016, the NHKA had begun integrating poverty alleviation more deeply into its diaconal vision. The Working Group on Poverty made multiple motions calling congregations to develop diaconal ministry plans that reflect Christ's compassion for those in need (NHKA ADV 2016: 21-22). This approach aligns with Korten's (1990: 123-124) "fourth generation" development strategy, emphasising local empowerment and grassroots mobilisation.

By 2022, poverty alleviation had become a central focus of the NHKA's diaconal work. The ADV minutes from this year highlight poverty as the primary concern among the key focus areas of diaconal ministry (NHKA ADV 2022: 12-13). Moreover, every congregation was instructed to develop a diaconal ministry plan that includes an analysis of community risks, demographics, and challenges, with a particular emphasis on poverty (NHKA ADV 2022: 14). This progression reflects a significant evolution from the church's earlier approach, demonstrating a more holistic understanding of poverty and development, as discussed by Bowers Du Toit and Nkomo (2014: 5).

5.2.3.1.4 Challenges in Strategic Implementation

Despite the ADV's strategic shifts towards a more missionally-aligned framework, significant challenges have persisted throughout the period under review:

1. *Lack of a Comprehensive Strategy:* Throughout 1998 to 2022, the ADV minutes consistently highlight the absence of a cohesive, long-term strategy for poverty alleviation. While individual initiatives such as the Linmar project (NHKA ADV 2007: 77-79) and Project Doulos (NHKA ADV 2010: 43-44) exemplify innovation and commitment, these efforts were often isolated and lacked integration into a broader strategic framework. This gap is particularly evident in the 2016 ADV minutes, where the call for congregational diaconal plans does not align with a unified, church-wide strategy (NHKA ADV 2016: 22). This issue is further compounded by the recurring tension between centralised coordination and local autonomy, which has made it difficult to implement a cohesive strategy across different contexts within the church (Van Gelder, 2007: 102).
2. *Tension Between Centralisation and Decentralisation:* The ADV minutes consistently reflect an ongoing struggle to balance centralised coordination with local autonomy. This tension is particularly evident in the debates surrounding Regional Deacons' Meetings (NHKA ADV 2016: 16-20). The 2022 proposal to merge the ADV with the General Church Meeting (AKV) further illustrates this challenge, highlighting the difficulties in adapting traditional church structures to support a more flexible, context-responsive approach (NHKA ADV 2022: 11-12). This aligns with Van Gelder's (2007: 102) concept of "*polycentric leadership*", which underscores the importance of balancing institutional coherence with contextual responsiveness in missional churches.
3. *Inconsistent Focus:* The emphasis on poverty as a strategic priority fluctuated over the years. While poverty generally gained prominence, there were periods when other issues, such as disability services and elderly care, took precedence. For example, the 2013 ADV minutes show a shift in focus from poverty towards these other concerns (NHKA ADV 2013: 20-23, 34-37). This

inconsistency raises questions about the continuity and effectiveness of the NHKA's anti-poverty efforts.

4. *Limited Monitoring and Evaluation:* Another significant challenge highlighted in the ADV minutes is the inadequate monitoring and evaluation of diaconal initiatives. For instance, neither the 2013 nor the 2016 minutes provide comprehensive assessments of the outcomes of major projects like *Project Linmar* or *Project Doulos* (NHKA ADV 2013: 23-24; NHKA ADV 2016: 21-22). This lack of robust systems for assessing impact aligns with Myers' (2011: 255-279) critique that many church-based development efforts suffer from insufficient evaluation mechanisms.
5. *Financial Constraints:* Financial challenges have been a persistent obstacle for the NHKA's diaconal work, as documented across multiple years of ADV minutes. Reducing government subsidies in the late 1990s significantly strained the church's diaconal resources (NHKA ADV 1998: 72-75, 77-81). This financial pressure continued, with ongoing deficits reported by key diaconal organisations in the 2019 minutes (NHKA ADV 2019: 29-30, 38). These economic constraints, as outlined in Theme 1, Section 5.2.3.1.4, have consistently hindered the sustainability of the NHKA's initiatives.

The church's attempts to address these challenges, such as exploring alternative funding strategies (NHKA ADV 2016: 28-32), while proactive, were insufficient to resolve the financial constraints fully. These limitations have consistently hindered the scope and sustainability of the NHKA's diaconal initiatives, highlighting the need for a more robust and sustainable economic strategy.

5.2.3.2 Theme 2: Theological Foundations and Reflections

5.2.3.2.1 Introduction

This theme explores the theological foundations underpinning the NHKA's diaconal work from 1998 to 2022. As the church's diaconal

practices evolved, so did its theological reflections, particularly in transitioning to a missional ecclesiology. This analysis builds on the theological frameworks established in Chapters 2 and 4, examining how the NHKA's understanding of its mission influenced its approach to poverty alleviation and social engagement.

5.2.3.2.2 Theological Integration and Missional Ecclesiology

The ADV minutes reveal a gradual but significant shift in the NHKA's theological engagement with diaconal work. This shift can be divided into three distinct phases, each reflecting a deeper integration of missional ecclesiology and a growing recognition of the church's role in addressing spiritual and social needs:

1. *Traditional Reformed Approach (1998-2004)*: During this period, the NHKA's diaconal work was largely framed within a traditional Reformed theological perspective. The 1998 ADV minutes, for instance, emphasise charitable acts and internal congregational care, with limited engagement with broader societal issues (NHKA ADV 1998: 2-5). This approach aligns with the inward-focused ecclesiology discussed in Chapter 2, where the church's mission was primarily seen as caring for its members. The opening sermon in the 1998 ADV, based on Luke 23:42-43, underscores this focus, highlighting Christ's service and sacrifice as the foundation of diaconal responsibility (NHKA ADV 1998: 2-5).

However, as South Africa's socio-political landscape changed, so did the NHKA's theological reflections. The 2001 ADV minutes show a growing awareness of the broader social challenges facing the country, such as poverty and HIV/AIDS. However, the church's response remained within its traditional theological framework (NHKA ADV 2001: 22-23).

2. *Emergence of Holistic Mission Thinking (2007-2013)*: By 2007, the ADV minutes reflect a significant theological shift towards a more

holistic understanding of mission. The church began recognising that its diaconal work must address spiritual and social dimensions, aligning with the missional ecclesiology discussed in Chapter 4. This period saw the NHKA grappling with the implications of poverty and social injustice, leading to more integrated discussions on how to respond effectively (NHKA ADV 2007: 75-79). The introduction of job creation projects, like the Linmar initiative, illustrates this shift, as the church began to see its mission encompassing more than just charity but also empowerment and systemic change (NHKA ADV 2007: 77-79).

The 2010 ADV minutes further reflect this evolving theological understanding, with discussions on white poverty highlighting the church's growing recognition of the diverse socio-economic challenges within its constituency (NHKA ADV 2010: 43). This reflects a broader engagement with the post-apartheid context, as discussed in Chapter 3, and a move towards a theology that integrates both evangelism and social action (Bosch, 1991: 393).

3. *Missional Integration (2016-2022)*: The final phase, from 2016 to 2022, marks the full integration of missional theology into the NHKA's diaconal practices. The 2016 ADV minutes articulate a clear understanding of the church's diaconal mission as rooted in the *missio Dei*, emphasising participation in God's redemptive work (NHKA ADV 2016: 15). This theological stance aligns with the broader shift towards a missional ecclesiology, as outlined in Chapter 4. The 2022 ADV minutes underscore this integration, with explicit references to advancing God's kingdom through poverty alleviation and social justice initiatives (NHKA ADV 2022: 12-14).

This theological evolution reflects a broader shift within the NHKA towards a more outward-focused, contextually engaged mission. The emphasis on missional ecclesiology has reshaped the church's

diaconal work, moving it from a focus on internal care to a broader engagement with the socio-economic realities of South Africa.

5.2.3.2.3 Challenges in Theological Integration

Despite the progress in integrating missional theology into its diaconal practices, the NHKA faced several challenges in fully realising this shift. These challenges highlight the ongoing tension between the church's traditional Reformed identity and its emerging missional orientation:

1. *Limited Theological Reflection:* The ADV minutes from 2010 and 2013 indicate that, despite developing a more missionally-aligned theological framework, there remained significant gaps in translating these ideas into practical action. For example, the 2010 minutes focus on immediate relief rather than engaging with more systemic change strategies for poverty alleviation (NHKA ADV 2010: 40-46). This discrepancy underscores a persistent gap between the church's theological aspirations and the practical steps needed to achieve them. As Niemandt (2012: 1-2) suggests, consistent theological reflection is crucial for informing and shaping the church's mission.

This challenge becomes particularly evident when considering the strategic shifts highlighted in Theme 1, Section 5.2.3.1, where the NHKA's priorities evolved towards a more proactive stance on poverty alleviation. Although these strategic shifts aligned with a broader missional ecclesiology, the theological discourse often did not keep pace, resulting in a gap between intention and action.

2. *Tension Between Traditional and Missional Approaches:* Throughout the period, the NHKA struggled to balance its traditional Reformed identity with the demands of a missional orientation. This tension is evident in the 2016 ADV minutes, which reflect debates about the church's role in advocacy and policy-level interventions (NHKA ADV 2016: 23-25). The church's historical focus on internal

care often conflicted with the broader, outward-focused demands of missional ecclesiology, creating challenges in fully realising its theological shift.

3. *Inconsistent Application of Missional Principles:* While the 2016 and 2019 ADV minutes demonstrate a growing alignment with missional theology, applying these principles across different aspects of diaconal work remained inconsistent. The 2019 minutes, for instance, reveal a strong missional framing of certain initiatives but a more traditional approach to others, reflecting the ongoing challenge of developing a coherent “missional DNA” within the NHKA (NHKA ADV 2019: 15-18, 29-32; Roxburgh, 2011: 34-56).
4. *Limited Engagement with Contextual Theologies:* Despite the NHKA’s increasing engagement with the South African context, the ADV minutes show limited interaction with contextual theologies, such as liberation or African theology. This gap is particularly noticeable in discussions around poverty and social justice, where deeper engagement with these theologies could have provided valuable insights. This limitation aligns with Bosch’s (1991: 421) call for “critical contextualisation” in mission, suggesting an area for further development in the NHKA’s theological reflection.

5.2.3.2.4 Implications for Diaconal Practice

The evolving theological foundations have had significant implications for the NHKA’s diaconal practice:

1. *Broadening Scope of Diaconal Work:* The shift towards a more holistic, missional understanding of the church’s role has led to a broadening of the scope of diaconal work. This is evident in the 2022 ADV minutes, which call for diaconal ministry plans that address a wide range of community needs, aligning with Myers’ (2011: 153-178) concept of transformational development (NHKA ADV 2022: 14).

2. *Emphasis on Empowerment:* The theological shift towards understanding mission as participation in God's redemptive work has increased emphasis on empowerment in diaconal initiatives. This is reflected in projects like Linmar and the focus on job creation and skills development in later years, aligning with Sen's (1999: 87-110) capability approach to development, which emphasises enhancing people's freedoms and capabilities (NHKA ADV 2007: 77-79; NHKA ADV 2016: 28-30). This emphasis on empowerment aligns with the strategic shift discussed in Theme 1, Section 5.2.3.1.3 and Theme 4, Section 5.2.3.4.4
3. *Growing Focus on Systemic Issues:* The evolving theological framework has led to a growing recognition of the need to address systemic issues contributing to poverty and inequality. This is evident in the increasing discussions around advocacy and policy engagement in later ADV minutes, aligning with Forrester's (2001: 5-6) argument for the church's prophetic role in addressing socio-economic injustices (NHKA ADV 2019: 40-42).
4. *Tensions in Implementation:* The ADV minutes also reveal ongoing tensions in implementing these theological insights. For instance, while there is growing recognition of the need for systemic engagement, the church has struggled to develop consistent strategies for policy advocacy. This reflects the challenge of what Bosch (1991: 489) describes as the church's ongoing conversion in its mission practices (NHKA ADV 2022: 18-20).

5.2.3.3 Theme 3: Effectiveness and Challenges of Diaconal Work

5.2.3.3.1 Introduction

This theme assesses the effectiveness of the NHKA's diaconal work over the past two decades, focusing on the challenges encountered in coordinating, sustaining, and adapting these efforts. It examines the role of the ADV in managing these challenges, particularly in light of the broader strategic and theological shifts discussed in previous themes.

The analysis also considers how these challenges reflect the evolving socio-political landscape described in Chapter 2 and the missional and ecclesiological developments outlined in Chapter 4.

5.2.3.3.2 Role of the ADV in Coordination and Financial Management

The ADV has been pivotal in coordinating the NHKA's diaconal activities, ensuring alignment with the church's mission. However, as outlined in Theme 1 (see Section 5.2.3.1.4), financial constraints have consistently hampered the effectiveness and sustainability of these initiatives. These limitations highlight the urgent need for a more integrated strategy that combines economic planning with the church's diaconal objectives.

Despite the ADV's efforts to steer the NHKA's diaconal work, the strategic shifts towards a more proactive approach to poverty alleviation frequently faced challenges in financial management and practical implementation. These ongoing issues have undermined the long-term success of the church's initiatives, as financial constraints continued to be a significant barrier throughout the period under review. As noted in Theme 3, Section 5.2.3.3.2, these economic challenges have limited the church's diaconal initiatives.

5.2.3.3.3 Structural and Strategic Challenges

The structural organisation of the NHKA's diaconal work has been a recurring theme in the ADV minutes, reflecting ongoing debates about balancing centralisation with local autonomy. The 2016 minutes, for instance, record strong support for continuing the Regional Deacons' Meetings, rejecting proposed changes that would have merged these with broader regional church meetings (NHKA ADV 2016: 16-20). This decision highlights the tension between maintaining established structures and embracing new, more flexible approaches that could better support the church's missional goals.

The 2022 proposal to merge the ADV with the General Church Meeting (AKV) further illustrates the ongoing struggle to adapt traditional church

structures to a more flexible, missional approach (NHKA ADV 2022: 11-12). These structural debates reflect the challenge of developing "missional DNA" within established church frameworks, a concept discussed by Roxburgh (2011: 34-56) and explored in Chapter 4. The persistence of these debates indicates that the NHKA has yet to fully reconcile its historical organisational model with its emerging missional orientation. This tension, also discussed in Theme 1, Section 5.2.3.1.4, highlights the ongoing struggle to adapt traditional church structures.

5.2.3.3.4 Effectiveness in Poverty-Related Initiatives

The effectiveness of the NHKA's poverty-related initiatives has been mixed, with successes and shortcomings reflected in the ADV minutes. As discussed in Theme 1 (Section 5.2.3.1), initiatives like the Linmar project and Project Doulos represented significant strategic advancements. However, these initiatives were often undermined by the absence of a cohesive long-term strategy and persistent financial constraints, which have continued challenging the church's ability to sustain impactful diaconal work.

The introduction of the Linmar job creation project in 2007 marked a shift towards a more proactive, empowerment-focused approach to poverty alleviation (NHKA ADV 2007: 77-79). Similarly, the launch of Project Doulos in 2010, which combined immediate relief with long-term developmental strategies such as job training, demonstrated a more holistic approach to diaconal work (NHKA ADV 2010: 43-44). These efforts aligned with the broader strategic shifts towards missional ecclesiology discussed in Theme 1.

Despite these advancements, the effectiveness of these initiatives has been hampered by inconsistent evaluation. For instance, the 2013 and 2016 ADV minutes lack comprehensive assessments of the outcomes of major projects like Linmar or Project Doulos (NHKA ADV 2013: 23-24; NHKA ADV 2016: 21-22). This lack of ongoing monitoring and evaluation echoes a broader issue identified by Myers (2011: 255-279), who notes

that many church-based development efforts falter due to inadequate systems for assessing impact.

The failure to systematically evaluate these projects highlights a significant gap in the NHKA's strategic approach to diaconal work. Without robust mechanisms for monitoring and evaluation, the church has struggled to draw lessons from past initiatives, refine its strategies, and ensure that its efforts are both sustainable and impactful. Addressing this gap is essential for improving the overall effectiveness of the NHKA's diaconal mission, especially within the context of its evolving missional framework.

As Theme 1 (Section 5.2.3.1) emphasised, the Linmar project and Project Doulos were critical to shifting the NHKA's diaconal work towards a more sustainable and missionally-aligned approach. However, the ongoing challenges in maintaining these initiatives---primarily from the lack of a unified long-term strategy---continue to underscore the church's difficulties in sustaining effective poverty alleviation efforts. These projects align with the theological emphasis on empowerment discussed in Theme 2, Section 5.2.3.2.4 and Theme 4, Section 5.2.3.4.4

5.2.3.4 Theme 4: Social and Political Contexts and Impact

5.2.3.4.1 Introduction

This theme explores how the NHKA's diaconal work responded to the changing socio-political landscape of South Africa from 1998 to 2022. It examines the NHKA's evolving role post-apartheid, considering how the broader societal shifts influenced its diaconal initiatives. This analysis builds on the historical and contextual framework outlined in Chapter 2, linking the church's actions to the socio-political environment of the time.

5.2.3.4.2 Responding to Post-Apartheid Realities

The early post-apartheid years have posed significant challenges for the NHKA as it sought to redefine its mission within a rapidly transforming South African society. The 1998 ADV minutes highlight the church's

growing awareness of escalating poverty, unemployment, and crime rates, identified as key challenges affecting the church and its members (NHKA ADV 1998: 48-49). However, the church's initial response during this period was largely reactive, focusing on providing immediate relief rather than addressing the underlying causes of these socio-economic issues.

By 2001, the ADV minutes describe the socio-economic environment as "uniquely traumatic," characterised by widespread crime, economic decline, social and moral decay, and the devastating impact of the HIV/AIDS pandemic (NHKA ADV 2001: 1-4). This description aligns with the broader social upheaval in South Africa at the time, as discussed in Chapter 2. These challenging circumstances significantly shaped the NHKA's diaconal priorities and the effectiveness of its initiatives during this period.

The 2007 ADV minutes reflect a pivotal shift in the church's engagement with societal issues. Extensive discussions on poverty, including its causes, impacts, and potential responses by the church, indicate a deeper and more strategic engagement with the socio-economic realities of post-apartheid South Africa (NHKA ADV 2007: 75-76). This shift illustrates the church's growing recognition of its responsibility to address not only the immediate needs of its members but also the broader societal challenges facing the country. This period corresponds with the NHKA's transition towards a more missionally-aligned ecclesiology, as explored in Theme 1 and Chapter 4.

The NHKA's evolving missionally-aligned strategy, discussed in Theme 1 (Section 5.2.3.1), significantly shaped its response to the socio-political challenges of post-apartheid South Africa. However, these strategic shifts were often constrained by the same implementation and financial difficulties that affected the church's broader diaconal efforts.

5.2.3.4.3 Evolving Response to Societal Issues

The NHKA's engagement with broader societal issues evolved considerably over the period, reflecting the church's increasing awareness of the complex challenges facing post-apartheid South Africa:

1. *HIV/AIDS*: The 2007 minutes underscore the church's heightened involvement in addressing the HIV/AIDS crisis, recognising it as a major socio-economic challenge (NHKA ADV 2007: 72-75). The church's response encompassed immediate relief efforts and the development of longer-term strategies to support affected individuals and communities.
2. *Gender-Based Violence (GBV)*: The 2016 ADV minutes document the establishment of a Working Group on Family Violence, highlighting the church's recognition of GBV's pervasive impact in South Africa (NHKA ADV 2016: 22-23). This initiative is part of the church's commitment to addressing social justice issues within a missional framework.
3. *Economic Empowerment*: Projects like the Linmar job creation initiative (NHKA ADV 2007: 77-79) and Project Doulos (NHKA ADV 2010: 43-44) represent a shift towards more empowerment-focused approaches to poverty alleviation. These initiatives were designed to provide sustainable solutions to poverty by equipping individuals with the skills and resources needed to improve their socio-economic conditions.
4. *Contextual Awareness*: The 2022 ADV minutes reflect the church's increased emphasis on context-specific ministry plans, demonstrating a deeper commitment to critical contextualisation (NHKA ADV 2022: 14). This shift aligns with the missional principles discussed in Chapter 4, which stresses the importance of addressing the specific needs and challenges of local communities.

The NHKA's evolving focus on empowerment and poverty alleviation, as detailed in the strategic initiatives outlined in Theme 1 (Section 5.2.3.1), also shaped its broader engagement with societal issues such as HIV/AIDS and gender-based violence. However, these efforts were often constrained by the challenges in strategic implementation previously discussed, underscoring the need for a more cohesive approach.

5.2.3.4.4 Challenges in Contextual Engagement

Despite these efforts, the ADV minutes reveal ongoing challenges in fully engaging with the socio-political realities of post-apartheid South Africa. For example, the 2010 discussions on '*blank armoede*' (white poverty) suggest a growing awareness of how social transformation was affecting different segments of society, including the church's traditional constituency (NHKA ADV 2010: 43). However, this also reflects the ongoing challenge of moving beyond the church's historical focus on the Afrikaner community and addressing the broader, more diverse socio-economic landscape of post-apartheid South Africa.

The limited emphasis on advocacy and systemic change, evident across multiple years of ADV minutes, further highlights the church's struggle to embrace its emerging missional orientation fully. While the church increasingly recognised the need to address systemic issues such as poverty and inequality, its historical identity and internal challenges often constrained its actions. This tension reflects the broader struggle within the NHKA to reconcile its traditional Reformed roots with its evolving missional identity, as discussed in Chapter 4.

As discussed in Theme 3, the church's engagement with the socio-political context was also limited by a lack of consistent strategic direction and inadequate resources. These challenges prevented the NHKA from fully realising its potential as a transformative agent in post-apartheid South Africa, highlighting the need for a more integrated and sustained approach to social engagement.

5.2.3.5 Theme 5: Gaps and Areas for Improvement

5.2.3.5.1 Introduction

This theme identifies the persistent gaps in the NHKA's diaconal work and explores areas where improvement is needed to align more closely with the church's missional objectives. The analysis of these gaps builds on the theological and strategic insights discussed in previous themes, particularly the challenges related to strategic implementation, contextual engagement, and theological integration.

5.2.3.5.2 Identifying Persistent Gaps

The persistent gaps in the NHKA's diaconal work, particularly the lack of a comprehensive strategy and insufficient advocacy, are closely tied to the challenges outlined in Theme 1 (Section 5.2.3.1). Despite the church's strategic shifts towards a missionally-aligned framework, these gaps have continued to hinder the effectiveness and sustainability of its poverty alleviation efforts.

Between 1998 and 2022, several recurring gaps in the NHKA's diaconal work have been consistently identified in the ADV minutes. These gaps highlight areas where the church's efforts have fallen short of its objectives and where further development is needed to realise its missional potential fully:

1. *Limited Theological Integration:* Although the church has increasingly engaged with missional theology, the theological foundation of its diaconal work has often been insufficiently developed. The ADV minutes, including those from 2022, frequently lack substantial theological discussions on poverty alleviation strategies (NHKA ADV 2022: 13-14). This gap between theological reflection and practical application reflects a broader challenge in developing a cohesive approach, as discussed in Theme 1, Section 5.2.3.1.4.

2. *Inadequate Monitoring and Evaluation:* Across multiple years, the ADV minutes reveal a lack of effective systems for monitoring and evaluating the impact of diaconal efforts. For instance, the 2016 minutes do not include comprehensive assessments of ongoing projects like Linmar or Project Doulos (NHKA ADV 2016: 21-22). This lack of systematic evaluation has impeded the church's ability to measure the success of its initiatives and make informed adjustments, as highlighted in Theme 3.
3. *Limited Community Participation:* The ADV minutes consistently show a gap in involving communities, particularly those experiencing poverty, in the decision-making processes related to diaconal work. For example, the 2019 minutes do not reflect explicit structures for engaging these communities in designing and implementing poverty alleviation initiatives (NHKA ADV 2019: 1-50). This lack of participatory engagement limits the relevance and effectiveness of the church's interventions, as discussed in Theme 4.
4. *Slow Progress on Addressing Root Causes:* Despite growing recognition of the need to address systemic issues contributing to poverty, progress in this area has been slow. Even in the 2022 minutes, discussions on the root causes of poverty in the communities served by the NHKA are limited (NHKA ADV 2022: 13). This reflects a broader challenge in shifting from short-term relief efforts to more sustainable, long-term solutions, as identified in Theme 1.
5. *Insufficient Advocacy:* The ADV minutes show minimal engagement with advocacy for policy changes to address poverty and inequality. The church's reluctance to engage in advocacy reflects an ongoing tension between its traditional identity and its emerging missional orientation, as explored in Theme 4. This gap suggests the need for the NHKA to adopt a more proactive stance

on systemic issues, leveraging its influence to drive broader societal change. This gap in advocacy is consistent with the challenges outlined in Theme 4

6. *Lack of a Comprehensive Strategy:* As discussed in Theme 1, a significant gap in the NHKA's diaconal efforts is the persistent absence of a comprehensive, long-term strategy for poverty alleviation. While initiatives like the Linmar project and Project Doulos demonstrated innovation, they were not part of a cohesive, overarching strategy. This lack of a unified approach has hindered the church's ability to achieve sustained impact in its diaconal work (see Theme 1, Section 5.2.3.1.4).
7. *Resource Constraints:* Financial challenges have been a recurring issue throughout the period under review, as noted in Theme 1. These constraints have consistently limited the scope and sustainability of the NHKA's diaconal initiatives, underscoring the need for more effective resource mobilisation and financial planning (see Theme 1, Section 5.2.3.1.4).

5.2.3.5.3 Recommendations for Improvement

Based on the analysis of the ADV minutes and the gaps identified, several recommendations are proposed to enhance the NHKA's diaconal work and align it more closely with missional principles:

1. *Develop a Comprehensive Theological Framework:* Establish a robust theology of mission that integrates biblical insights with the contextual realities of poverty alleviation. This framework should explicitly connect missional ecclesiology with the church's poverty alleviation efforts, providing a theological foundation for meaningful engagement with societal issues. This recommendation addresses the gap identified in Theme 2, where theological reflection often lacked depth or was not adequately linked to practical strategies (Bosch, 1991: 399).

2. *Enhance Monitoring and Evaluation Systems:* Implement effective systems to monitor and evaluate the impact of diaconal initiatives. This should include developing clear, measurable indicators for poverty alleviation efforts and establishing regular, participatory evaluation processes. This recommendation builds on the findings in Theme 3, where inadequate evaluation systems were identified as a persistent challenge (Myers, 2011: 255-279).
3. *Strengthen Community Participation:* Actively involve communities, especially those affected by poverty, in the design and implementation of diaconal initiatives. This will ensure that the efforts are contextually relevant and sustainable. This recommendation aligns with the principles discussed in Theme 4, emphasising the importance of critical contextualisation and deep community engagement (Van Gelder, 2007: 24).
4. *Increase Advocacy Efforts:* Adopt a more proactive stance on systemic issues, using the church's influence to advocate for policy changes that address the root causes of poverty and inequality. This recommendation addresses the gap identified in Theme 4, where the church's reluctance to engage in advocacy was noted (Forster, 2015: 5-6).
5. *Enhance Structural Flexibility:* Develop more adaptable organisational structures that effectively respond to diverse local contexts while maintaining coherence. This recommendation responds to the structural challenges discussed in Theme 3 and aligns with the need for a more polycentric leadership model in missional churches (Roxburgh, 2011: 34-56).
6. *Deepen Theological Integration:* Incorporate regular theological reflection sessions into the planning and evaluation of diaconal work. This recommendation addresses the gap identified in multiple

ADV minutes, where theological discussions often lacked depth or were not well connected to practical strategies (NHKA ADV 2013: 1-7; NHKA ADV 2022: 1-23).

7. *Strengthen Resource Mobilisation:* Develop more diverse and sustainable funding strategies to address the financial constraints highlighted in the ADV minutes. This could include exploring innovative funding models and building capacity for grant writing and donor engagement. This recommendation builds on the financial challenges identified across multiple themes, particularly in Theme 3 (NHKA ADV 1998: 72-75; NHKA ADV 2019: 29-48).
8. *Enhance Capacity Building:* Prioritise the training and development of church leaders, deacons, and volunteers in areas such as missional theology, community development, and advocacy. This recommendation addresses the need for enhanced capacity identified in several ADV minutes and is crucial for ensuring the effectiveness and sustainability of the church's diaconal work (NHKA ADV 2013: 40-41; NHKA ADV 2022: 13).

The NHKA must develop a cohesive long-term strategy that integrates theological reflection with practical action to address the strategic and implementation challenges identified in Theme 1 (Section 5.2.3.1). Strengthening financial planning and resource mobilisation will also be critical to overcoming the constraints limiting the church's diaconal initiatives.

5.2.3.6 Conclusion for Thematic Analysis of ADV Minutes

As reflected in the ADV minutes, the NHKA's diaconal journey from 1998 to 2022 reveals a church in transition, grappling with the challenges of aligning its historical identity with a new, missional orientation. The analysis of the ADV minutes provides a nuanced picture of this evolution, highlighting both significant progress and persistent challenges.

The strategic shifts documented in the minutes show a clear movement from reactive, charity-based approaches towards more proactive, empowerment-focused strategies. This progression reflects the NHKA's broader transition towards missional ecclesiology, which seeks to align the church's mission with the *missio Dei*, the mission of God in the world. This shift is not merely about organisational change. Still, it represents a deeper theological reorientation, where the church is seen as a participant in God's redemptive work rather than an institution primarily focused on self-preservation.

Theologically, the minutes reflect a gradual deepening of engagement with missional ecclesiology. The shift from a traditional Reformed understanding of diaconal work (NHKA ADV 1998: 2-5) to a more holistic, kingdom-oriented approach (NHKA ADV 2022: 12-14) aligns with broader trends in missional thinking, as articulated by theologians such as Bosch and Dreyer, who emphasise the church's role in societal transformation as intrinsic to its identity. However, the integration of this theological shift into practical diaconal work remains a work in progress, as evidenced by the limited theological reflection in some years (NHKA ADV 2013: 1-7).

Internal and external factors have shaped the effectiveness of the NHKA's diaconal work. While the ADV's role in coordinating and overseeing diaconal activities has provided stability, the need for more flexible, context-responsive approaches remains critical. Financial constraints, evident throughout the period (NHKA ADV 1998: 72-75; NHKA ADV 2019: 29-30), have consistently limited the scope and sustainability of diaconal initiatives, reflecting the broader challenges the NHKA faces in adapting its mission to contemporary socio-economic realities.

The church's engagement with the changing socio-political landscape of South Africa shows a growing awareness of broader societal issues, from the initial recognition of increasing poverty and unemployment (NHKA

ADV 1998: 48-49) to more comprehensive engagements with issues like HIV/AIDS and gender-based violence (NHKA ADV 2007: 72-75; NHKA ADV 2016: 22-23). However, ongoing challenges remain in fully addressing systemic issues and advocating for policy changes, demonstrating the complexities of aligning missional ecclesiology with practical engagement in a post-apartheid context.

Persistent gaps identified across the ADV minutes include inadequate monitoring and evaluation systems, limited community participation, and insufficient emphasis on addressing the root causes of poverty. These gaps highlight areas where the NHKA needs to focus its efforts to fully realise its missional potential, which calls for a church that actively engages with the world in transformative ways.

As the NHKA continues to navigate this transformation, it has the potential to significantly contribute to alleviating poverty and pursuing justice in South Africa. Based on the analysis of the ADV minutes, the recommendations proposed offer a pathway for the NHKA to address identified gaps and strengthen its diaconal mission.

This journey reflects what Bosch (1991: 489) describes as the church's ongoing conversion in its mission practices, demonstrating both the challenges and opportunities inherent in aligning church practices with evolving theological understandings and societal needs. By addressing the identified gaps and implementing the proposed improvements, the NHKA can enhance the effectiveness and impact of its diaconal work, more fully embodying the *missio Dei* in the South African context.

The balance between continuity and change, theological rootedness and contextual relevance, as evident in the ADV minutes over the 24 years, will be crucial for the NHKA's ongoing effectiveness in its diaconal mission. As the church moves forward, it can build on the progress documented in the ADV minutes, address persistent challenges, and

more fully realise its potential as a missional church engaged in transformative diaconal work.

5.3 Theological Reflection on the NHKA's Approach to Poverty

5.4.1 Introduction

The NHKA has long identified itself as a *volkskerk*, a church intrinsically tied to the Afrikaner people. This identity has profoundly shaped the NHKA's theological and practical approaches to poverty alleviation, fostering both strengths and limitations in its mission. As explored in Chapter 3, the NHKA's role as a *volkskerk* empowered it to serve its community effectively. It also constrained its capacity to engage in broader societal transformation, often limiting its diaconal work to the Afrikaner population. Chapter 2 provided a detailed analysis of the socio-economic context of South Africa, highlighting the pervasive challenges of poverty and inequality that the NHKA faces in its mission. Chapter 4 introduced missional ecclesiology as a transformative framework, advocating for a reorientation of the NHKA's mission to be more outward-focused and socially engaged, aligning with the concept of *missio Dei*—the mission of God.

This section builds on these foundations to provide a comprehensive theological reflection on the NHKA's approach to poverty. By critically engaging with the NHKA's historical theological assumptions and practices, this reflection aims to assess the effectiveness and limitations of the church's diaconal work, particularly in light of the shift towards missional ecclesiology. The discussion also integrates insights from Niemandt et al. (2018), who proposed a strategy for implementing missional ecclesiology in South Africa, examined in Chapter 4.

5.3.2 Theological Foundations of the NHKA's Diaconal Work

The NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation has historically been rooted in its Reformed theological tradition, which emphasises the sovereignty of God, covenantal theology, and the church's responsibility to care for its members. This theological orientation has underpinned the NHKA's

diaconal work since its inception, particularly during periods of crisis such as the post-Boer War era, where the church played a critical role in providing relief to the impoverished Afrikaner population (Chapter 3, Section 3.2.2). However, this Reformed framework also contributed to a narrow focus on the Afrikaner community, often limiting the church's engagement with broader societal issues.

Van Rensburg (2023:2) notes that the NHKA's diaconal journey evolved significantly from the 1970s onwards, particularly with the establishment of the *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) in 1998. This development marked a new era for the NHKA's diaconal work, as it recognised the unique role of deacons and granted them greater autonomy in addressing poverty. However, Stoltz (2016:45) critiques the church's historical focus, arguing that while the NHKA's diaconal work was grounded in Scripture, it often fell short of addressing systemic injustices and broader societal needs. This critique aligns with Schutte's (2003:250) observation that the NHKA's diaconal efforts were frequently reduced to acts of charity, such as providing food and clothing, without engaging with the root causes of poverty.

Its identity has also shaped the NHKA's theological foundations as a *volkskerk*. While fostering a strong sense of community and solidarity among Afrikaners, this identity also reinforced an inward focus that limited the church's capacity to engage in transformative diaconal work. As discussed in Chapter 3, Section 3.2.2, the NHKA's commitment to preserving Afrikaner culture and identity often led to a dichotomy between its spiritual mission and social responsibility. While effective in addressing immediate needs, the church's diaconal work was frequently constrained by its focus on serving the Afrikaner community rather than engaging with the broader socio-economic challenges facing South Africa.

The shift towards a more inclusive and outward-focused mission began in the late 20th century, as the NHKA confronted the limitations of its traditional approach. The 1970 study commissioned by the NHKA

highlighted significant shortcomings in its charitable work, leading to the 1986 decision to broaden the scope of diaconal service. This shift began a new diaconal journey for the NHKA, characterised by a more systematic and focused approach to poverty alleviation. However, as Stoltz (2016:46) argues, this shift did not fully resolve the underlying tension between the church's spiritual mission and social responsibility, raising critical questions about the theological foundations of the NHKA's diaconal work.

5.3.3 The Shift Towards Missional Ecclesiology

Introducing missional ecclesiology represents a significant theological development for the NHKA. It challenges the church to move beyond its historical role as a *volkskerk* and embrace a more inclusive and outward-focused mission. Missional ecclesiology, as discussed in Chapter 4, Section 4.2.1, redefines the church's role as an active participant in God's redemptive work in the world, emphasising the importance of engaging with social issues such as poverty, injustice, and inequality (Bosch, 1991:390). This shift calls for reorientating the NHKA's diaconal work, moving from a reactive, charity-based approach to a proactive, justice-oriented mission addressing poverty's root causes.

Stoltz (2016:47) views this shift as a crucial opportunity for the NHKA to reimagine its diaconal mission. He argues that missional ecclesiology offers a more comprehensive understanding of the diaconate's role, which goes beyond traditional charity to include advocacy for social justice and the transformation of societal structures. This perspective aligns with the theological principles of *missio Dei*, which emphasises the church's participation in God's mission of reconciliation and justice in the world (Bosch, 1991:391). The renaming of the Support Council to Rata Social Services in 2015, as highlighted by Van Rensburg (2023:7), reflects this shift towards a more inclusive and justice-oriented approach to diaconal work.

However, the transition to missional ecclesiology also presents significant challenges for the NHKA. Stoltz (2016:48) cautions that this shift requires fundamentally reevaluating the church's historical approach to diaconal work. The NHKA must move beyond its traditional focus on the Afrikaner community and engage more fully with the diverse needs of South African society. This requires the church to develop a more holistic understanding of its mission, one that integrates charity with justice and addresses the systemic factors that perpetuate poverty and inequality. Schutte (2003:249) echoes this need for a broader engagement, asserting that diaconal work should extend beyond the congregation to the wider community, addressing immediate needs and the root causes of social injustice.

In this context, the strategy proposed by Niemandt et al. (2018) becomes highly relevant. As examined in Chapter 4, this strategy advocates for a practice-oriented research approach to integrating missional principles into the life and mission of the church. Niemandt et al. (2018) propose a model emphasising the importance of localised, contextually relevant community engagement, where the church acts as a transformative agent of change. This model aligns with the shift towards missional ecclesiology by encouraging the NHKA to adopt a more participatory and context-sensitive approach to its diaconal work, focusing on empowerment, advocacy, and systemic transformation.

Adopting Niemandt et al.'s (2018) strategy offers the NHKA a practical framework for operationalising its missional ecclesiology. By embracing this strategy, the NHKA can move beyond traditional charity and develop a more integrated approach that addresses poverty's symptoms and causes. This approach would involve a deeper engagement with local communities, where the church works alongside those it seeks to serve, recognising their agency and potential as partners in the mission of God.

5.3.4 Critical Reflection on the NHKA's Theological Approach to Poverty

A critical reflection on the NHKA's theological approach to poverty reveals significant strengths and notable limitations. The church's historical emphasis on charity and care for its members reflects a deep commitment to the biblical mandate to care for the poor. This commitment is evident in the NHKA's diaconal work during key historical periods, such as the post-Boer War era, where the church played a crucial role in alleviating the suffering of the Afrikaner population (Chapter 3, Section 3.2.2). However, while essential, this focus on charity often limited the church's capacity to engage with broader social justice issues, particularly those affecting non-Afrikaner communities.

Stoltz (2016:49) critiques the NHKA's traditional approach, arguing that its focus on charity within the Afrikaner community often came at the expense of broader engagement with social justice. This critique aligns with Van Rensburg's (2023:3) observation that while the NHKA established more comprehensive diaconal service committees since the 1980s, these efforts were often constrained by the church's narrow focus on its immediate constituency. A dualistic understanding of charity and justice characterised the NHKA's approach to poverty during this period. On the one hand, the church's diaconal work was a necessary expression of Christian charity to alleviate immediate needs. On the other hand, the church's support for the socio-political *status quo* often limited its ability to engage in more transformative approaches that would address the systemic causes of poverty and inequality.

This dualistic approach created tension between the church's spiritual mission and social responsibility. Stoltz (2016:50) argues that the NHKA's diaconal work must integrate its commitment to charity with a broader commitment to social justice and transformation. This integration requires the church to move beyond traditional acts of charity and embrace a more holistic approach to alleviation that addresses immediate needs and the underlying causes of poverty. Schutte (2003:255) supports this view, asserting that diaconal work is not merely welfare work but is fundamentally church work, deeply connected to the

proclamation of the gospel. By adopting a missional ecclesiology, the NHKA can overcome this dualism and develop a more integrated approach to its diaconal mission.

The shift towards missional ecclesiology offers a path forward, challenging the NHKA to embrace a more holistic approach to poverty alleviation. This approach requires the church to integrate charity with justice, recognising that true poverty alleviation involves meeting immediate needs and addressing the structural injustices perpetuating poverty and inequality. As Dreyer (2020:263) argues, this shift calls for the church to engage in public theology, where its diaconal work becomes a prophetic witness to God's justice and mercy in the world. By critically reflecting on its theological foundations and embracing the principles of missional ecclesiology, the NHKA can develop a more comprehensive and transformative approach to its diaconal mission.

Furthermore, the strategy proposed by Niemandt et al. (2018) reinforces this need for a holistic approach. Their practice-oriented research strategy encourages the church to engage in continuous reflection and adaptation, ensuring that its diaconal work remains responsive to the evolving socio-economic context of South Africa. By adopting this strategy, the NHKA can enhance the effectiveness of its diaconal mission, ensuring that it provides immediate relief and contributes to long-term social transformation.

5.3.5 The Role of Theological Reflection in Transforming Diaconal Work

The transformation of the NHKA's diaconal work through the lens of missional ecclesiology necessitates a sustained and comprehensive process of theological reflection. As discussed in Chapter 4, missional ecclesiology challenges the church to rethink its role as a religious institution and an active participant in God's redemptive mission. This shift calls for re-evaluating the NHKA's diaconal practices in light of its Reformed theological tradition, which emphasises God's sovereignty, the

priesthood of all believers, and the church's responsibility to engage with societal issues (Dreyer 2020b, 7).

The NHKA's recent efforts to integrate missional ecclesiology into its diaconal practices represent an important step towards a more holistic and inclusive approach to poverty alleviation. However, as Dreyer (2020:263-264) indicates, much work remains to realise this theological framework's potential fully. This transformation process requires a deep engagement with the church's historical and cultural context and a critical re-examination of its theological assumptions. Barth (1956:785) argues that genuine theological reflection must always be rooted in the church's engagement with the world. For the NHKA, theological reflection should not be an abstract exercise but should directly inform and shape the church's diaconal practices. By revisiting and reinterpreting the Reformed theological principles that have historically guided the NHKA's mission, the church can develop a more robust and contextually relevant approach to poverty alleviation.

Ongoing theological education for deacons and church leaders is crucial in this process of reflection and transformation. Stoltz (2016:51) emphasises that a deeper understanding of missional ecclesiology and its implications for diaconal work is essential for the NHKA to address contemporary social challenges effectively. This perspective aligns with Van Rensburg's (2023:7-8) observation that the church must adapt to new realities, particularly in the COVID-19 pandemic, which has necessitated a shift to digital platforms for meetings and training. Theological education should include traditional elements and innovative approaches addressing current societal challenges.

Moreover, this process of theological reflection must be inclusive, engaging not only ordained leaders but also lay members, theologians, and the broader community. The NHKA's efforts to empower local congregations and promote participatory decision-making, as discussed in Chapter 4, Section 4.8, reflect this commitment to inclusivity. Ensuring

that the church's mission is responsive to society's needs while remaining faithful to its theological convictions requires a collective and collaborative approach.

Stoltz (2016:51) and Schutte (2003:258) advocate for a more participatory approach to diaconal work, emphasising that it is the responsibility of all church members, not just deacons. Stoltz particularly stresses the need for the NHKA to develop new models of lay involvement in diaconal ministry, suggesting that this could help the church engage more effectively with diverse communities and social issues. This aligns with Schutte's (2003:258) call to "open the floodgates of the charismata locked up in thousands of members," thereby unleashing the full power of divine mercy and benevolence in a world full of need and misery.

The transformation of the NHKA's diaconal work through missional ecclesiology requires a comprehensive and inclusive theological reflection. By grounding this reflection in the Reformed tradition and adapting it to contemporary challenges, the NHKA can develop a diaconal mission that is both theologically sound and practically effective, contributing to the broader work of reconciliation and justice in South Africa.

5.3.6 Conclusion

In conclusion, the NHKA's approach to poverty has been shaped by a complex interplay of theological convictions and cultural influences, enabling and constraining its mission. The shift towards missional ecclesiology represents a significant theological development, offering the church a framework for reimagining its mission more inclusive and outward-focused way, responsive to the socio-economic challenges of contemporary South Africa. However, successfully transforming the NHKA's diaconal work requires a sustained theological reflection that critically engages with the church's past while being open to future possibilities. This reflection must be grounded in the principles of

missional ecclesiology, calling the church to participate in God's redemptive work by addressing poverty, injustice, and inequality as integral aspects of its mission.

Stoltz (2016:52) argues that this process of reflection and transformation is essential for the NHKA to remain relevant and effective in its diaconal ministry in a rapidly changing South African context. Van Rensburg (2023:8) emphasises the need for the NHKA to adapt to the changing world, particularly in digitalisation, without losing the personal relationship with people in need. Deacons must provide leadership and resilience in the face of change, serving as envoys of the Lord in addressing societal needs.

By embracing this process of reflection and transformation, the NHKA can develop a diaconal mission that is theologically grounded and contextually relevant, contributing to the broader work of reconciliation and justice in South Africa. Schutte (2003:263) concludes that when the congregation, under the leadership of the diaconal office, lives out this responsibility as a daily testimony, the church will be transformed into a worthy standard-bearer of the true gospel message of God in Jesus Christ.

This transformation will require the NHKA to move beyond its historical focus on the Afrikaner community and engage more fully with South African society's diverse needs. It necessitates reimagining diaconal work as charitable giving and a comprehensive engagement with the systemic issues perpetuating poverty and inequality. Moreover, it will require the active participation of all church members, not just the deacons, in diaconal service and social transformation.

As the NHKA continues to grapple with these challenges and opportunities, it has the potential to significantly contribute to alleviating poverty and the pursuit of justice in South Africa. By grounding its diaconal work in a robust theology of mission and service and by adopting

the practice-oriented strategy proposed by Niemandt et al. (2018), the NHKA can ensure that its efforts are both theologically grounded and practically effective, making a meaningful impact on the socio-economic realities of contemporary South Africa.

5.4 Exploration of Structural Alternatives

5.4.1 Introduction

The analysis of the ADV minutes from 1998 to 2022, as presented in section 5.2, revealed several persistent challenges in the NHKA's approach to diaconal work and poverty alleviation. These include a lack of comprehensive strategy, insufficient advocacy efforts, limited community participation, and inadequate monitoring and evaluation systems (see section 5.2.3.5.2). As the NHKA aligns itself more closely with missional ecclesiology principles, as discussed in Chapter 4, evaluating whether existing structures like the ADV are adequately positioned to support this strategic shift is imperative.

In this context, Osmer's (2008) four tasks of practical theology provide a robust framework for assessing the potential of alternative structures in enhancing the NHKA's diaconal mission. Osmer proposes that practical theology involves four key tasks: the descriptive-empirical task (gathering information better to understand particular episodes, situations, or contexts), the interpretive task (drawing on theories from other disciplines to better understand and explain why these patterns and dynamics are occurring), the normative task (using theological concepts to interpret particular episodes, situations, or contexts, and to construct ethical norms to guide our responses), and the pragmatic task (determining strategies of action that will influence situations in ways that are desirable) (Osmer, 2008:4-12).

This section will focus on the *Sentrum vir Gemeentelike Bediening* (SGB) as the primary alternative structure, examining its potential to address the gaps identified in the ADV's approach and to better align with the NHKA's evolving missional identity. The church's structures should be flexible

enough to adapt to changing contexts while remaining true to its theological foundations (Van der Merwe, 2014:73).

5.4.2 Analysis of Alternative Structures

5.4.2.1 *Sentrum vir Gemeentelike Bediening* (SGB)

The *Sentrum vir Gemeentelike Bediening* (SGB) was established in 2017 following a 2016 decision by the *Algemene Kerkvergadering* to create a centre that would support congregations in their missional and diaconal activities (NHKA AKV, 2022:228). The SGB's emergence from the *Sentrum vir Missionale Bediening* reflects the broader shift within the NHKA towards a missional ecclesiology that prioritises community engagement and contextualised ministry (Bester, 2021). This shift aligns with the understanding that missional ecclesiology demands more than just a new church structure; it calls for a new posture and a new personal and corporate lifestyle (Niemandt, 2012:1).

The SGB's approach aligns closely with Osmer's practical theology framework:

1. *Descriptive-empirical task*: The SGB begins by listening to congregations and analysing their challenges through custom-developed questionnaires, a mission-oriented board game, and the 12 facets of congregational life (NHKA AKV, 2022:229; Bester, 2021). This aligns with Osmer's (2008:31-78) emphasis on gathering information to understand particular contexts. This approach addresses the gap in community participation identified in section 5.2.3.5.2 by ensuring a more thorough understanding of local contexts. Contextual analysis is crucial for developing relevant and effective ministry strategies (Hendriks, 2007:1000).
2. *Interpretive task*: The SGB interprets the empirical data within the broader socio-economic and cultural context of South Africa (NHKA AKV, 2022:229). This corresponds to Osmer's (2008:79-128) call to draw on theories from various disciplines to interpret and explain

observed patterns. This interpretive work helps diagnose underlying issues and challenges, enabling more effective responses to poverty and social issues. The church must constantly engage in a process of critical discernment to understand its context and respond appropriately (Bosch, 1991:428).

3. *Normative task:* The SGB encourages congregations to engage in theological reflection guided by Reformed principles and missional ecclesiology. This process helps congregations articulate their mission and align their ministry with internal dynamics and external needs (Bester, 2021), addressing the limited theological integration identified in section 5.2.3.5.2. This reflects Osmer's (2008:129-173) emphasis on using theological concepts to construct ethical norms and guide responses. Missional congregations must engage in ongoing theological reflection to discern God's will for their ministry in specific contexts (Van Gelder, 2007:104).
4. *Pragmatic task:* The SGB supports congregations through leadership training, strategic planning, and implementing contextually tailored ministry plans (NHKA AKV, 2022:230). This aligns with Osmer's (2008:175-218) focus on determining action strategies to influence situations in desirable ways. This approach addresses the lack of comprehensive strategy highlighted in section 5.2.3.5.2 by fostering more sustainable and transformative initiatives. Effective missional leadership requires practical skills in facilitating change and implementing contextually appropriate strategies (Roxburgh, 2011:55).

5.4.2.2 The SGB as an Alternative or Supplementary Structure

The SGB's emphasis on flexibility, contextualisation, and congregational empowerment aligns well with the NHKA's shift towards missional ecclesiology. Unlike the ADV's centralised approach, the SGB offers a decentralised, congregation-driven model that empowers local congregations to take greater ownership of their diaconal and missional

responsibilities. Effective missional structures should facilitate local agency and contextual responsiveness (Nell and Grobler, 2014:761).

The SGB's potential to replace or complement the ADV lies in its ability to provide a more agile and contextually responsive support structure. Grounded in Osmer's practical theological framework, the SGB facilitates a nuanced understanding of congregational needs and the effective implementation of missional strategies. This alignment with the NHKA's broader missional goals suggests that the SGB could supplement the ADV's work or serve as a viable alternative, especially in contexts where the ADV's traditional structure may no longer be effective.

Moreover, the SGB's approach addresses several key challenges identified in the analysis of the ADV minutes:

1. *Strategic alignment:* The SGB's focus on contextual analysis and strategic planning addresses the lack of comprehensive strategy noted in section 5.2.3.1.4. This aligns with Osmer's pragmatic task, emphasising the need for an actionable plan. Missional structures must align strategically with the church's mission and vision (Niemandt, 2010:411).
2. *Theological integration:* By encouraging theological reflection and missional alignment, the SGB addresses the gap in theological integration highlighted in section 5.2.3.2.3. This corresponds to Osmer's normative task, using theological concepts to guide responses. Effective diaconal structures must be deeply rooted in sound theological foundations (Van der Merwe, 2014:75).
3. *Community engagement:* The SGB's emphasis on contextual analysis and participatory approaches addresses the limited community participation noted in section 5.2.3.5.2. This reflects Osmer's descriptive-empirical task, gathering information to understand contexts. Effective missional engagement requires

deep listening and partnership with local communities (Hendriks, 2007:1007).

4. *Monitoring and evaluation:* While not explicitly mentioned in the available documentation, the SGB's strategic approach lends itself to more robust monitoring and evaluation processes, addressing the gap identified in section 5.2.3.3.4. This aligns with Osmer's interpretive task of analysing and explaining observed patterns. Missional effectiveness requires ongoing assessment and adaptation (Van Gelder, 2007:163).

5.4.3 Strategic Recommendations

Based on the analysis of the SGB and the challenges identified in the ADV's approach, the following strategic recommendations are proposed, all of which align with Osmer's four tasks of practical theology:

Strengthen and Expand the Role of the SGB: Further develop the SGB as a central support structure for congregations by increasing its resources, enhancing its capacity for congregational engagement, and integrating its work more closely with the NHKA's broader strategic objectives (NHKA AKV, 2022:230). This would address the gaps in comprehensive strategy and community participation identified in section 5.2.3.5.2. This recommendation aligns with Osmer's pragmatic task, focusing on action strategies. Missional structures must be adequately resourced and strategically positioned to facilitate an effective ministry (Niemandt, 2012:8).

Integrate the SGB and ADV Functions: Consider integrating the functions of the ADV with the SGB to create a more cohesive and effective diaconal structure. This integration could leverage the strengths of both bodies, addressing the structural challenges highlighted in section 5.2.3.3.3. This recommendation reflects Osmer's interpretive task, drawing on various approaches to enhance effectiveness. Effective diaconal structures often

require integrating traditional and innovative approaches (Van der Merwe, 2014:76).

Promote a Decentralised Model of Diaconal Work: Encourage a more decentralised approach to diaconal work, empowering congregations to take the lead in addressing local needs. This approach aligns with the missional ecclesiology framework outlined in Chapter 4 and addresses the limitations in community participation and contextual engagement discussed in sections 5.2.3.5.2 and 5.2.3.4.4. This recommendation corresponds to Osmer's descriptive-empirical task, emphasising the importance of understanding local contexts. Missional effectiveness requires empowering local congregations to become agents of transformation in their contexts (Roxburgh, 2011:103).

Embed Osmer's Theological Tasks in Diaconal Strategy: Consistently apply Osmer's four tasks of practical theology within the NHKA's diaconal strategy to foster a holistic and reflective ministry that integrates theological depth with practical action. This recommendation addresses the gap in theological integration identified in section 5.2.3.5.2 and ensures that the NHKA's diaconal work is grounded in a comprehensive practical-theological approach (Osmer, 2008:4-12). Effective missional structures must facilitate ongoing theological reflection and praxis (Hendriks, 2007:1012).

Develop Robust Monitoring and Evaluation Systems: Implement comprehensive monitoring and evaluation processes to assess the impact of diaconal initiatives and facilitate continuous improvement. This addresses the limitation identified in section 5.2.3.3.4. This recommendation aligns with Osmer's interpretive task of analysing and explaining observed patterns and outcomes. Missional effectiveness requires rigorous assessment and adaptive strategies (Van Gelder, 2007:165).

5.4.4 Implications and Challenges of Implementing the SGB Model

The potential adoption of the SGB as a primary structure for the NHKA's diaconal work carries several significant implications and challenges, all of which can be understood through the lens of Osmer's four tasks:

1. *Cultural Shift*: Implementing the SGB model necessitates a profound cultural shift within the NHKA. As noted in section 5.2.3.2.3, there has been an ongoing tension between traditional and missional approaches. The SGB's emphasis on contextual engagement and participatory decision-making may challenge long-standing hierarchical structures and practices. This challenge relates to Osmer's normative task, requiring a re-evaluation of the church's theological and cultural norms. The transition to missional structures requires a fundamental shift in organisational culture, moving from a maintenance mindset to a missional ethos (Niemandt, 2015:4).
2. *Leadership Development*: The decentralised nature of the SGB model requires a new approach to leadership development. As highlighted in section 5.2.3.5.2, there is a need for enhanced capacity building within the NHKA. This challenge aligns with Osmer's pragmatic task, focusing on developing strategies for effective action. Missional leadership development must focus on cultivating adaptive capacities rather than merely transferring technical skills (Van Gelder, 2007:181).
3. *Resource Allocation*: Transitioning to an SGB-centric model may require significant reallocation. As noted in section 5.2.3.1.4, financial constraints have been a persistent challenge for the NHKA's diaconal work. This challenge relates to Osmer's pragmatic task of determining how to allocate resources best for desired outcomes. Resource reallocation in missional transitions often creates tension between maintaining existing structures and investing in new initiatives (Hendriks, 2007:1014).

4. *Balancing Autonomy and Coherence:* While the SGB model promotes local autonomy, the NHKA's overall diaconal approach risks fragmentation. This challenge involves all four of Osmer's tasks, requiring careful analysis, interpretation, theological reflection, and strategic planning. Effective missional structures must balance local contextualisation with denominational identity and unity (Nell and Grobler, 2014:765).
5. *Monitoring and Evaluation Challenges:* The decentralised nature of the SGB model may complicate efforts to implement consistent monitoring and evaluation systems across the NHKA. This challenge primarily relates to Osmer's interpretive task of analysing and explaining observed patterns and outcomes. Missional structures require adaptive evaluation frameworks that capture quantitative and qualitative outcomes across diverse contexts (Van der Merwe, 2014:77).
6. *Theological Integration:* Ensuring the SGB's pragmatic approach remains grounded in sound theological reflection will be an ongoing challenge. This challenge directly corresponds to Osmer's normative task, using theological concepts to guide responses and actions. Missional praxis must be in constant dialogue with missional theology to maintain its integrity and effectiveness (Bosch, 1991:431).
7. *Addressing Systemic Issues:* While the SGB model excels in local contextualisation, it risks neglecting broader systemic issues contributing to poverty and inequality. This challenge involves all four of Osmer's tasks, requiring comprehensive analysis, interpretation, theological reflection, and strategic action. Effective diaconal structures must balance local action with prophetic engagement in systemic injustices (Forster, 2015:5).

8. *Transitional Challenges*: Transitioning from the ADV to the SGB model (or integrating the two) may temporarily disrupt the NHKA's diaconal work. This challenge primarily relates to Osmer's pragmatic task of determining strategies for effective transition. Transitions in missional structures often involve a 'messy middle' where old and new approaches coexist and sometimes conflict (Roxburgh, 2011:145).

5.4.5 Conclusion

The exploration of the SGB as an alternative structure within the NHKA's diaconal framework, viewed through the lens of Osmer's four tasks of practical theology, reveals its significant potential to enhance the church's missional engagement. By aligning with the principles of missional ecclesiology and employing Osmer's framework, the SGB offers a flexible, contextually responsive model that could either supplement or replace the traditional role of the ADV.

As the NHKA continues to navigate the challenges of poverty alleviation, integrating the SGB's strengths into its diaconal strategy will be crucial for achieving a more effective and theologically grounded mission. This integration, guided by Osmer's four tasks, will address the structural limitations identified in the analysis of the ADV minutes and enable the NHKA to fulfil its calling as a missional church actively engaged in reconciliation, justice, and transformation within South Africa.

The effectiveness of missional structures lies in their ability to facilitate contextual engagement, theological reflection, and practical action (Nell and Grobler 2014, p.767). The SGB, with its emphasis on these elements and alignment with Osmer's practical theology framework, offers a promising path forward for the NHKA's diaconal work. However, structural changes must be accompanied by shifts in organisational culture and individual mindsets to achieve lasting transformation (Van der Merwe 2014, p.78). Thus, the NHKA's journey towards more effective diaconal engagement will require ongoing reflection, adaptation, and

commitment to its missional calling, guided by the comprehensive approach outlined in Osmer's four tasks of practical theology.

Future research could focus on the practical implementation of the SGB model within diverse NHKA congregations, evaluating its effectiveness in addressing local poverty issues and fostering community engagement. Comparative studies with other denominations' diaconal structures could provide valuable insights to refine the NHKA's approach further. As the church moves forward, it will be crucial to develop robust monitoring and evaluation frameworks to capture these structural changes' quantitative and qualitative impacts on the NHKA's diaconal mission.

In the broader context of this thesis, the exploration of the SGB as an alternative structure underscores the importance of aligning organisational frameworks with theological principles and missional objectives. As we move towards the final chapter, these insights will contribute to a comprehensive strategy for transforming the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation, grounded in missional ecclesiology and responsive to the complex socio-economic realities of contemporary South Africa.

5.5 Facilitating Mindset and Cultural Shifts

5.5.1 Introduction

The analysis of the *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) minutes from 1998 to 2022, as presented in Section 5.2, revealed structural challenges and significant cultural and mindset barriers to the NHKA's transition towards missional ecclesiology. While exploring structural alternatives, particularly the SGB model discussed in Section 5.4, offers promising avenues for organisational change, these efforts alone are insufficient to bring about the profound transformation required. Guder (1998: 85) aptly notes that the shift towards a missional church is "*profoundly cultural and spiritual*", extending far beyond programmatic or structural alterations.

This section builds upon the historical analysis in Chapter 3, the theoretical framework established in Chapter 4, and the structural considerations examined earlier in Chapter 5. It aims to articulate strategies for cultivating a pervasive missional imagination throughout the NHKA, one that reimagines the church's identity and purpose in light of the *missio Dei* (Bosch, 1991: 390). This reimagining process must navigate the tension between the NHKA's historical identity as a *volkskerk* and its emerging missional orientation, as highlighted in Chapter 3, Section 3.2, and by Dreyer (2020: 263).

The following subsections propose a comprehensive approach to facilitating this essential mindset and cultural shift, addressing leadership development, theological education, community engagement, and broader cultural transformation strategies. These proposals are designed to complement and enhance the structural changes discussed in Section 5.4, Recognising that effective missional transformation requires a holistic approach that integrates structural, cultural, and theological dimensions. Moreover, this section aligns with the research questions outlined in Chapter 1, particularly those concerning the NHKA's capacity to adapt to a missional ecclesiology and the effectiveness of its current diaconal structures in addressing poverty and social justice.

5.5.2 Cultivating Missional Leadership

Missional leadership development is crucial for facilitating the required mindset and cultural shifts. Building upon the leadership challenges identified in Section 5.2.3.6 and addressing the gaps in leadership noted in Chapter 3, Section 3.4, this subsection proposes a comprehensive approach to missional leadership formation.

5.5.2.1 Missional Leadership Formation Programme

A holistic missional leadership formation programme is essential, transcending traditional theological education to integrate missional theology with practical leadership skills. Roxburgh and Romanuk (2006: 12) argue that missional leaders must be "cultivators of an environment

that releases the missional imagination of God's people." This programme should include:

- a) *Theological Foundations*: An in-depth study of missional ecclesiology grounded in the *missio Dei* concept. This should address the theological gaps identified in Section 5.3.4 and Chapter 4, Section 4.2, providing leaders with a robust theological basis for missional engagement.
- b) *Contextual Analysis Skills*: Building on the SGB's approach outlined in Section 5.4.2.1, the programme should develop modules that equip leaders with ethnographic research methods and community engagement skills. This aligns with Van Gelder's (2007: 104) emphasis on 'reading' local contexts and supports the research question regarding the NHKA's engagement with socio-economic contexts in Chapter 1.
- c) *Adaptive Leadership Training*: The programme should incorporate training in adaptive leadership, preparing leaders to navigate the complexities of missional transformation. This addresses the need for flexible, responsive leadership identified in the analysis of the ADV minutes (NHKA ADV, 2016: 16-20) and the challenges outlined in Chapter 3, Section 3.5.
- d) *Missional Spirituality*: Develop practices that nurture a missional spirituality among leaders, fostering a deep sense of God's presence and action in the world. This aligns with Niemandt's (2012: 2) emphasis on spirituality as a crucial aspect of missional leadership and responds to the research question concerning the NHKA's spiritual and theological reorientation.

5.5.2.2 Ongoing Leadership Development

To ensure continuous growth and adaptation in missional leadership, the following strategies are proposed:

- a) *Action-Learning Groups*: Establish regular action-learning groups where leaders can collectively reflect on their missional experiences. This aligns with Niemandt's (2012: 7) "missional capacitation" concept, fostering ongoing learning and adaptation and addressing the need for continuous improvement identified in Section 5.2.3.7.
- b) *Mentoring Programme*: Implement a structured mentoring programme that pairs experienced missional leaders with emerging leaders. This addresses the need for intergenerational learning and knowledge transfer identified in Section 5.2.3.6 and Chapter 3, Section 3.5.
- c) *Missional Leadership Symposia*: Organise annual symposia on missional leadership challenges and innovations. These events should unite NHKA leaders, academic theologians, and practitioners from other denominations to foster cross-pollination of ideas and address the research question regarding the NHKA's capacity to collaborate with broader missional movements (Chapter 1).

5.5.3 Reorienting Theological Education

The gaps in theological integration identified in Section 5.3 and the broader discussion of theological education in Chapter 4 necessitate a fundamental reorientation of theological education within the NHKA. This reorientation should encompass formal theological training and ongoing education for church leaders and members, aligning with the research question on how theological education can support the NHKA's missional shift.

5.5.3.1 Curriculum Reform

- a) *Missional Hermeneutics*: Integrate missional hermeneutics across the curriculum, encouraging students to read scripture through a missional lens (Wright, 2006: 41). This should include revisiting key Reformed doctrines through a missional perspective, addressing the theological tensions identified in Section 5.3.2 and Chapter 4, Section 4.3.
- b) *Interdisciplinary Engagement*: Foster dialogue between theology and other disciplines, particularly sociology, economics, and development studies. This addresses the need for a more holistic approach to diaconal work (Stoltz, 2016: 50) and equips future leaders to engage with complex societal issues, as discussed in Section 5.2.3.5 and Chapter 2.
- c) *Contextual Theology*: Develop modules on contextual theology, preparing future leaders to engage meaningfully with South Africa's diverse socio-cultural landscape (Bevans, 2002: 3). This should include case studies of contextual theologising in various South African contexts, as explored in Chapter 3, Section 3.3.
- d) *Praxis-oriented Learning*: Incorporate community engagement projects as a core component of theological education, allowing students to apply theoretical knowledge in real-world settings. This addresses the gap between theory and practice identified in Section 5.2.3.6 and Chapter 4, Section 4.5.

5.5.3.2 Continuing Theological Education

- a) *Missional Theology Workshops*: Conduct regular workshops for existing church leaders and members, focusing on key aspects of missional theology and its implications for church life. This will

thereby address the ongoing theological education needs identified in Section 5.3.

- b) *Online Learning Platform*: Develop an online platform offering courses in missional theology and practice. This will make ongoing theological education accessible to a wider audience within the NHKA, addressing the gaps highlighted in Chapter 4, Section 4.6.
- c) *Collaborative Research Projects*: Initiate research projects that bring together academics, church leaders, and community members to explore contextual applications of missional theology, thus fostering deeper theological integration, as discussed in Section 5.3.

5.5.4 Fostering Community Engagement

Building upon the evolving approach to poverty alleviation noted in Sections 5.2.3.3 and 5.2.3.5 and addressing the NHKA's historical engagement with social issues discussed in Chapter 3, Section 3.3, this subsection proposes initiatives to deepen the NHKA's community engagement and foster a missional presence in local contexts.

5.5.4.1 Asset-Based Community Development (ABCD)

Implementing ABCD approaches in diaconal work represents a significant shift from needs-based to strengths-based engagement. This aligns with the missional principle of recognising God's prevenient grace at work in communities (Roxburgh, 2011: 55) and addresses the research question regarding the effectiveness of the NHKA's diaconal strategies (Chapter 1):

- a) *ABCD Training*: Provide comprehensive training in ABCD methodologies for deacons and church leaders. This addresses the need for more empowering approaches to poverty alleviation identified in Section 5.2.3.3.

- b) *Community Asset Mapping*: Facilitate community asset mapping exercises involving church members and community residents. These exercises should identify local resources, skills, and social networks that can be leveraged for community development, responding to the gaps noted in Section 5.2.3.5 and Chapter 2.
- c) *Asset-Based Partnerships*: Develop partnerships with local organisations based on identified community assets, fostering collaborative approaches to social issues. These partnerships should be structured to ensure mutual benefit and long-term sustainability, linked to the discussion on strategic alliances in Section 5.4.

5.5.4.2 Public Theology Forums

Establishing spaces for public theological reflection on social issues can engage both church members and the broader community. This addresses the need for deeper theological integration identified in Section 5.3 and promotes the church's public witness (Forster, 2015: 5-6).

- a) *Regular Public Dialogues*: Organise regular public dialogues on pressing social issues, bringing together theological perspectives and community experiences, thus reinforcing the NHKA's role in societal transformation, as discussed in Chapter 3, Section 3.3.
- b) *Diverse Voices*: Actively include marginalised voices in these forums, addressing the need for more inclusive approaches identified in Section 5.2.3.5.
- c) *Resource Development*: Produce accessible resources from these forums to inform the NHKA's diaconal strategies and public engagement, as proposed in Section 5.4.

5.5.4.3 Missional-Diaconal Partnerships

- a) *Long-Term Partnerships*: Developing long-term partnerships between congregations and community organisations, focusing on systemic issues identified through contextual analysis, builds upon the integrative approach suggested in Section 5.4.
- b) *Partnership Framework*: Develop a framework for establishing and maintaining missional-diaconal partnerships, ensuring alignment with missional principles and community needs, as discussed in Section 5.4.2.2.
- c) *Capacity Building*: Provide training and resources to help congregations and community partners work effectively together, address power dynamics, and foster mutual learning, reinforcing the recommendations made in Section 5.4.3.

5.5.5 Cultural Transformation Strategies

The following strategies are proposed to facilitate the deep cultural shifts necessary for embracing missional ecclesiology. They build on the structural changes discussed in Section 5.4 and address the research questions concerning cultural and theological transformation.

5.5.5.1 Narrative and Symbol Transformation

- a) *Missional Storytelling*: Develop a comprehensive strategy for collecting, curating, and sharing stories of missional engagement across the NHKA. This strategy will address the need for tangible examples of missional practice identified in Section 5.2.3.7 and Chapter 3, Section 3.4.
- b) *Liturgical Innovation*: Encourage the development of new liturgical practices that embody missional principles, helping to reshape the church's imagination through worship. This builds on the need for holistic missional engagement identified in Section 5.3.3 and Chapter 4, Section 4.5.

- c) *Visual Representations*: Create and disseminate visual representations of the NHKA's missional journey, helping to embed new mental models of church identity and purpose, linking back to the discussions on missional identity in Chapter 4, Section 4.2.

5.5.5.2 Structural and Systemic Alignment

- a) *Missional Governance Review*: Conduct a comprehensive review of the NHKA's governance structures, identifying areas where current practices may hinder missional engagement, as discussed in Section 5.4 and Chapter 4, Section 4.6.
- b) *Policy Alignment*: Revise key church policies, including pastoral call processes, performance reviews, and resource allocation, to reflect missional priorities and ensure alignment with the structural recommendations proposed in Section 5.4.3.
- c) *Missional Metrics*: Develop new metrics for evaluating church health and vitality that reflect missional values, moving beyond traditional attendance and financial giving measures, addressing the need for comprehensive evaluation identified in Section 5.2.3.7.

5.5.5.3 Learning and Innovation Ecosystems

- a) *Missional Learning Communities*: Establish networks of congregations engaged in missional transformation, fostering peer learning and support. These communities should meet regularly to share experiences and collaborate on missional projects, reinforcing the collaborative approach discussed in Section 5.4.3.
- b) *Innovation Incubators*: Create spaces within the NHKA for experimenting with new forms of missional engagement, providing

resources and support for innovative initiatives, building on the emphasis on adaptive strategies in Section 5.4.2.

- c) *Cross-Pollination Exchanges*: Facilitate exchanges with other denominations and global partners engaged in missional transformation, broadening the NHKA's perspective and enriching its practices, as recommended in Section 5.4.3.

5.5.6 Strategic Recommendations

To implement these cultural transformation strategies effectively, the following overarching recommendations are proposed:

5.5.6.1 Establish a Missional Transformation Team

Create a dedicated team responsible for implementing missional initiatives across the NHKA. This team should:

- a) *Composition*: The team should include representatives from various levels of church leadership, ensuring broad buy-in for missional transformation. It should also reflect the diversity of the NHKA, including different geographic regions, age groups, and theological perspectives, addressing the inclusivity gaps identified in Section 5.2.3.5.
- b) *Mandate*: Develop and oversee the implementation of a comprehensive missional transformation strategy that addresses the various dimensions outlined in this section, building on the structural and strategic framework proposed in Section 5.4.
- c) *Collaboration*: Work closely with the SGB and other existing structures, ensuring alignment between missional principles and practical implementation (NHKA ADV, 2022: 13-14), as recommended in Section 5.4.3.

5.5.6.2 Implement a Phased Transformation Approach

Recognising the gradual nature of cultural change, adopt a phased approach to missional transformation:

Phase 1: Awareness and Education (Year 1-2)

- Conduct church-wide missional theology workshops
- Initiate leadership training programmes
- Begin contextual listening exercises in pilot congregations

Phase 2: Pilot Implementation (Year 3-4)

- Launch missional community partnerships in selected congregations
- Implement revised theological education curricula
- Establish public theology forums in key regions

Phase 3: Broad Implementation and Evaluation (Years 5-7)

- Roll out missional initiatives across all congregations
- Conduct a comprehensive evaluation of missional transformation
- Refine and adapt strategies based on learnings

This phased approach allows for careful implementation and learning, addressing the challenges of systemic change identified in Section 5.2.3.6 and supporting the gradual integration of new practices discussed in Chapter 4, Section 4.7.

5.5.6.3 Develop a Missional Communication Strategy

Create a comprehensive communication plan to support the cultural shift towards missional ecclesiology. This strategy should:

- a) *Multi-platform Approach:* Utilise various media platforms to share stories of missional engagement, making the concept tangible for church members. These platforms should include traditional

church media and digital channels to reach a broad audience, as discussed in Section 5.2.3.7.

- b) *Contextualised Resources*: Create resources that help congregations articulate their missional identity and vision. These resources should be adaptable to different local contexts while maintaining a coherent overall message, addressing the needs identified in Section 5.4.3.
- c) *Dialogical Communication*: Facilitate regular dialogue between church leadership and congregations about the missional journey. This dialogue should allow for top-down communication and bottom-up feedback, fostering a sense of shared ownership in the missional transformation process, as emphasised in Chapter 4, Section 4.5.

5.5.6.4 Establish Ongoing Evaluation and Learning Processes

Implement robust mechanisms for ongoing evaluation and learning:

- a) *Develop Key Performance Indicators*: Create a set of indicators that reflect missional values and practices, addressing the need for more comprehensive evaluation identified in Section 5.2.3.7 and Chapter 4, Section 4.8.
- b) *Regular Review Cycles*: Establish regular cycles of review and reflection at all levels of the church, from individual congregations to national structures, ensuring continuous alignment with missional goals.
- c) *Learning Dissemination*: Develop systems for capturing and disseminating learnings from the missional transformation process, ensuring that insights are shared widely across the NHKA, as recommended in Section 5.4.

5.5.7 Conclusion

The strategies and recommendations outlined in this section provide a comprehensive approach to facilitating the mindset and cultural shifts necessary for the NHKA to embrace missional ecclesiology fully. These proposals seek to move the NHKA from theoretical alignment with missional principles to their practical embodiment in all aspects of church life by addressing leadership development, theological education, community engagement, and broader cultural transformation.

This approach recognises the complex interplay between theology, structure, and culture in ecclesial transformation. It builds upon the historical analysis, theoretical framework, and structural considerations discussed in earlier chapters and sections, offering a way forward deeply rooted in the NHKA's Reformed heritage and responsive to the challenges and opportunities of the contemporary South African context. The proposed strategies align closely with the structural changes suggested in Section 5.4, particularly their emphasis on contextual engagement and decentralised decision-making. The *Sentrum vir Gemeentelike Bediening* (SGB), discussed in Section 5.4, could be pivotal in implementing many of these cultural transformation strategies, especially in leadership development and community engagement.

However, it is important to note that these cultural shifts may face resistance, as identified in the analysis of the ADV minutes (Section 5.2.3.2). The tension between traditional approaches and missional innovation will require careful navigation, emphasising the importance of the phased implementation approach and ongoing dialogue proposed in this section.

Successfully implementing these strategies will require sustained commitment, adaptability, and a willingness to embrace uncertainty and risk. However, the potential for renewed vitality and more effective engagement with poverty and social issues in South Africa makes this journey of transformation both necessary and worthwhile. As the NHKA

navigates this process, it can contribute significantly to the broader discourse on missional ecclesiology, offering insights from its unique historical and cultural perspective.

In conclusion, this section, building on the structural analysis in Section 5.4 and the broader context established throughout Chapter 5, proposes a holistic approach to missional transformation within the NHKA. By integrating structural changes with cultural and mindset shifts, the NHKA can move towards a more contextually responsive, theologically grounded, and mission-oriented approach to its diaconal work and broader church life. This transformation, while challenging, offers a path towards more effective engagement with the complex socio-economic realities of contemporary South Africa, aligning the church's mission more closely with its calling to participate in God's redemptive work in the world.

5.6 Consequences of Embracing Missional Ecclesiology

5.6.1 Introduction

The adoption of missional ecclesiology by the NHKA represents a profound paradigm shift in its understanding of church identity and mission. As discussed in Chapter 4 and the preceding sections of Chapter 5, this shift involves moving from a predominantly inward-focused *volkskerk* model to an outward-oriented, missional approach. This section examines the potential structural and theological consequences of fully embracing missional ecclesiology within the NHKA context, linking these considerations to the overarching research questions and prior discussions in this thesis.

Building upon the historical overview provided in Chapter 3, which traced the NHKA's journey from a *volkskerk* to its current transitional state, and the theoretical framework of missional ecclesiology outlined in Chapter 4, this analysis considers the findings from the examination of the *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) minutes (1998-2022) discussed in Sections 5.2 and 5.3. These findings revealed progress towards and

resistance to missional transformation, highlighting key areas where the NHKA must address structural and theological tensions to advance its missional identity.

As Guder (1998:8) aptly notes, *"The shift toward a missional church is not merely programmatic but profoundly cultural and spiritual."* This cultural and spiritual transformation inevitably leads to significant changes in church structures, theological understanding, and practices. The NHKA, in its journey towards missional ecclesiology, must grapple with these consequences to ensure a coherent and sustainable transformation, directly addressing Research Question 3 regarding the challenges of transitioning to a missional church model.

5.6.2 Structural Implications

The full adoption of missional ecclesiology will likely have significant implications for the NHKA's existing structures, governance, and the role of the ADV:

1. *Decentralisation of Decision-Making:* As noted in Section 5.2.3.3, missional ecclesiology emphasises contextual engagement and local empowerment. This may necessitate a shift towards more decentralised decision-making processes, potentially challenging the current hierarchical structure of the NHKA. Van Gelder (2007:163) argues that missional churches require *"polycentric and team-based leadership"* that can respond flexibly to local contexts. The role of the ADV, in particular, may need to evolve from a centralised governing body to a facilitator of local missional initiatives. This shift aligns with the NHKA's growing recognition of the importance of contextual ministry, as evidenced in the 2022 ADV minutes (NHKA ADV, 2022:14). However, it may create tensions with traditional power structures and decision-making processes within the church.

2. *Reorientation of Resource Allocation:* The analysis of the ADV minutes in Section 5.2.3.4 highlighted ongoing challenges in financial sustainability. Embracing missional ecclesiology may require a fundamental reorientation of resource allocation, prioritising community engagement and social transformation over institutional maintenance. Roxburgh and Romanuk (2006:180) emphasise that missional churches must develop "*new economies*" that support their engagement with their contexts.

This could lead to tensions with traditional funding models and necessitate new approaches to financial stewardship. The NHKA may need to explore alternative funding streams, such as social enterprise models or partnerships with community organisations, to support its missional initiatives.

3. *Restructuring of Ministerial Roles:* As discussed in Section 5.5.2, missional leadership requires a different skill set from traditional pastoral roles. Niemandt (2012:7) argues that missional leadership involves "*equipping and empowering local congregations to discern and participate in God's mission in their specific contexts.*" This may necessitate restructuring ministerial training, deployment, and evaluation processes. The role of deacons, in particular, may need to be reimagined to focus more on community engagement and social transformation. This aligns with Stoltz's (2016:50) call for a more comprehensive understanding of the diaconate's role in addressing social issues.
4. *Integration of Diaconal and Missional Structures:* The analysis in Section 5.4 suggested the potential for integrating the functions of the ADV with the *Sentrum vir Gemeentelike Bediening* (SGB).

Fully embracing missional ecclesiology may accelerate this integration, leading to a more holistic approach to the church's missional and diaconal work. This integration reflects what Bosch

(1991:399) describes as the "convergence of church and mission," where the distinction between internal church life and external mission becomes increasingly blurred. However, it may also create challenges in organisational restructuring and the redefinition of roles and responsibilities within the NHKA.

5.6.3 Theological Implications

The adoption of missional ecclesiology also necessitates significant theological shifts, which may impact the NHKA's doctrinal positions and church order:

1. *Reinterpretation of Reformed Theology:* As noted in Section 5.3.2, the NHKA's diaconal work has been deeply rooted in Reformed theology. Embracing missional ecclesiology requires a reinterpretation of key Reformed doctrines, such as election and covenant, regarding the *missio Dei*. Guder (1998:4) argues that this reinterpretation involves understanding the church as "*God's instrument for God's mission*" rather than as an end in itself. This reinterpretation may lead to tensions with more traditional interpretations of Reformed theology. For instance, the concept of election might need to be understood not as exclusive salvation for a select few but as a calling to participate in God's mission to benefit all. This aligns with Bosch's (1991:373) understanding of election as "*election to service*".
2. *Expanded Understanding of Salvation:* As discussed in Chapter 4, Missional ecclesiology often entails a more holistic understanding of salvation that encompasses personal and social transformation. Wright (2006:194) argues that this holistic view sees salvation as "*the restoration of individuals-in-community to the fullness of human flourishing in the presence of God.*" This may challenge the NHKA's traditional emphasis on individual salvation and require a theological reframing of its understanding of the gospel. It could also have implications for the church's approach to social issues,

potentially leading to a more active engagement with societal transformation, as called in the 2022 ADV minutes (NHKA ADV, 2022:13-14).

3. *Ecumenical Openness*: The missional emphasis on the church's participation in God's mission in the world may necessitate greater ecumenical openness. Bosch (1991:464) argues that mission should lead to a "*unity-in-diversity*" among Christian churches. This could challenge the NHKA's historical self-understanding as a distinct *volkskerk* and require theological reflection on the nature of church unity and diversity. This shift towards greater ecumenical engagement is already evident in the NHKA's recent history, as noted in Chapter 3. However, fully embracing missional ecclesiology may accelerate this trend, potentially leading to new forms of partnership and collaboration with other churches and faith-based organisations.
4. *Contextual Hermeneutics*: As highlighted in Section 5.5.3, missional engagement requires a deep understanding of local contexts. This may necessitate the development of more contextual approaches to biblical interpretation and theological reflection. Bevans (2002:3) argues that contextual theology recognises culture, history, contemporary thought forms, and so forth as valid sources for theological reflection alongside scripture and tradition. This shift towards contextual hermeneutics could challenge more traditional hermeneutical approaches within the NHKA. It may require a delicate balance between maintaining theological continuity with the Reformed tradition and allowing for new, contextually informed interpretations of scripture and doctrine.
5. *Redefinition of Church Boundaries*: Missional ecclesiology often involves a redefinition of church boundaries, emphasising the church's engagement with the world rather than its separation. As

Niemandt (2012:2) notes, this consists of a shift from an "ecclesiocentric" to a "world-centric" understanding of mission. For the NHKA, this could necessitate rethinking its relationship with South African society, potentially challenging its historical identity as a *volkskerk*. It may also require new theological reflections on the nature of church membership and the relationship between the church and the broader community.

5.6.4 Strategic Recommendations

To navigate these consequences whilst remaining true to its theological identity, the NHKA should consider the following strategic recommendations:

1. *Develop a Missional Hermeneutic:* Building on the theological reflection process outlined in Section 5.3.5, the NHKA should develop a missional hermeneutic that allows for reinterpreting Reformed theology in light of missional ecclesiology. This hermeneutic should be grounded in rigorous biblical scholarship and engage seriously with the NHKA's theological tradition. As Wright (2006:41) suggests, a missional hermeneutic involves reading the Bible in light of God's mission to the world. This approach could help the NHKA to maintain its commitment to scripture whilst opening up new avenues for missional engagement.
2. *Implement Gradual Structural Reforms:* As suggested in the phased approach outlined in Section 5.5.4, the NHKA should implement structural reforms gradually, allowing time for reflection, evaluation, and adjustment. This could involve pilot projects that test new governance and resource allocation models before wider implementation. Van Gelder (2007:163-165) emphasises the importance of "spirit-led organisational processes" in missional churches. The NHKA could draw on this concept to develop flexible, responsive structures supporting its

missional engagement while maintaining necessary organisational coherence.

3. *Foster Theological Dialogue*: The NHKA should create spaces for ongoing theological dialogue about the implications of missional ecclesiology. This could include symposia, publications, and study groups that unite church leaders, theologians, and practitioners to wrestle with missional ecclesiology's theological challenges and opportunities. This aligns with Bosch's (1991:489) call for an "*ongoing conversion*" in missiology, recognising that our understanding of mission is always provisional and open to revision.
4. *Develop Contextual Training Programmes*: Building on the recommendations in Section 5.5.2, the NHKA should develop training programmes that equip leaders to navigate the structural and theological implications of missional ecclesiology in their specific contexts. These programmes should blend theoretical understanding with practical skills for missional engagement. Roxburgh and Romanuk (2006:13-14) emphasise the importance of developing "*missional imagination*" among church leaders. The NHKA's training programmes could cultivate this imagination, helping leaders envision new possibilities for missional engagement in their contexts.
5. *Establish Missional Benchmarks*: To ensure that adopting missional ecclesiology leads to tangible changes in practice, the NHKA should establish clear benchmarks for missional transformation. These benchmarks should encompass structural and theological dimensions and be regularly evaluated and updated. This aligns with Van Gelder's (2007:163) emphasis on the importance of "*ongoing organisational learning*" in missional churches. The NHKA could develop a set of missional indicators

to help congregations and the broader church assess their progress in missional transformation.

6. *Engage in Collaborative Partnerships:* As discussed in Section 5.5.4.3, the NHKA should actively seek partnerships with other churches, faith-based organisations, and community groups. These partnerships can provide opportunities for mutual learning, resource sharing, and collaborative missional engagement. As Niemandt (2012:8) argues, missional ecclesiology requires a "*kenotic*" or self-emptying approach to church life, which includes a willingness to learn from and work with others.
7. *Cultivate Missional Spirituality:* Building on the discussion in Section 5.5.2.1, the NHKA should prioritise the development of a missional spirituality that underpins its structural and theological shifts. This spirituality should be deeply rooted in the Reformed tradition and open to new expressions of faith and practice. Helland and Hjalmarson (2011:26) argue that missional spirituality is "an attentive and active engagement of embodied love for God and neighbour expressed from the inside out." Cultivating such a spirituality could help the NHKA navigate the challenges of missional transformation whilst maintaining its spiritual vitality.

5.6.5 Conclusion

The consequences of embracing missional ecclesiology for the NHKA are far-reaching, encompassing structural and theological dimensions. As this section has demonstrated, the shift towards a missional paradigm necessitates significant changes in governance, resource allocation, ministerial roles, and theological understanding. These changes align with the broader trends identified in the analysis of the ADV minutes (Sections 5.2 and 5.3) and build upon the structural alternatives explored in Section 5.4.

The strategic recommendations proposed here offer a pathway for the NHKA to navigate these consequences whilst remaining true to its Reformed heritage. By developing a missional hermeneutic, implementing gradual structural reforms, fostering theological dialogue, and establishing clear benchmarks for missional transformation, the NHKA can move towards a more contextually responsive and missionally engaged expression of the church. This approach directly engages with Research Question 2, concerning the practical implications of missional ecclesiology, and Research Question 3, addressing the challenges of adopting this new paradigm.

However, it is important to recognise that this transformation process will likely be challenging and may face resistance from the church. As noted in Section 5.2.3.2, there have been ongoing tensions between traditional and missional approaches within the NHKA. Addressing these tensions will require patience, wisdom, and a commitment to continuing dialogue and discernment.

Ultimately, the consequences of embracing missional ecclesiology offer the NHKA an opportunity for renewed vitality and relevance in the contemporary South African context. As Bosch (1991:519) argues:

The missionary dimension of a local church's life manifests itself, among other ways, when it is truly a worshipping community; it can welcome outsiders and make them feel at home; it is a church in which the pastor does not have the monopoly, and the members are not merely objects of pastoral care; its members are equipped for their calling in society; it is structurally pliable and innovative; and it does not defend the privileges of a select group. (Bosch, 1991: 373)

By carefully navigating the structural and theological implications of missional ecclesiology, the NHKA can embody this vision of a missionary

church and contribute to transforming its own life and the broader South African society.

5.7 Learning from and Applying Best Practices

5.7.1 Introduction

As the NHKA continues its transition towards a missional ecclesiology, as examined in sections 5.2 through 5.6, it is essential to learn from the experiences of other churches and organisations that have undertaken similar journeys. This section delves into best practices from global contexts, evaluating their potential application within the NHKA's distinctive setting. As Niemandt (2012: 1) notes, the global shift towards missional ecclesiology provides diverse experiences from which the NHKA can glean valuable insights.

However, as previously emphasised in Chapter 4 and Section 5.5, this learning process must be carefully discerned. Roxburgh (2015: 44) cautions that *"the challenge is not to replicate but to discern how God's Spirit is already at work in a specific location."* This discernment is particularly crucial for the NHKA, given its unique historical and cultural context discussed in Chapter 3. Therefore, it becomes vital to identify practices that can be effectively adapted to the NHKA's context, considering its Reformed heritage and the socio-economic challenges outlined in Chapter 2.

5.7.2 Case Studies and Examples

To provide a foundation for the NHKA's missional transformation, this section analyses three case studies that offer key insights into different aspects of missional engagement. These examples, drawn from diverse global contexts, illustrate practical applications that may resonate with the NHKA's context and challenges, as discussed throughout Chapter 5.

5.7.2.1 The Church of England's 'Fresh Expressions' Initiative

The Church of England's *'Fresh Expressions'* initiative, launched in 2004, provides an exemplary model of how an established denomination can

reimagine its structures to engage missionally. This initiative promotes the development of new forms of church alongside traditional models, targeting those not currently involved with traditional church expressions (Moynagh, 2012: xiv-xv). The Fresh Expressions initiative resonates with several themes explored in Chapter 5, particularly the need for structural flexibility and contextual engagement.

First, this initiative illustrates the importance of creating adaptive structures that allow innovation while maintaining a connection to the broader church. As discussed in section 5.4, structural flexibility is essential for the NHKA as it seeks to navigate its missional transformation. Nelstrop and Percy (2008: 23) argue that *"Fresh expressions are not about replacing existing forms of church, but about extending the range of ecclesial communities."* This approach aligns with the NHKA's challenge of balancing traditional structures with new missional demands, as identified in section 5.3.2.

Second, the initiative's emphasis on deep contextual engagement mirrors the NHKA's need for a similar approach, as identified in sections 5.2.3.3 and 5.5.4. Cray (2009: 12) asserts that "fresh expressions are missional, contextual, formational and ecclesial," which aligns with the NHKA's recognition of the importance of contextual ministry, as highlighted in the 2022 ADV minutes (NHKA ADV, 2022: 14).

Third, the initiative's promotion of a *'mixed economy'* – where traditional and new forms of church coexist—offers a potential model for the NHKA to navigate its evolving identity. This approach could help reconcile the tension between the NHKA's historical identity and its emerging missional orientation, a challenge discussed in section 5.3.2. As Goodhew et al. (2012: 85) note, *"The mixed economy is not a halfway house between inherited and emerging forms, but a long-term structural arrangement."*

5.7.2.2 The Uniting Church in Australia's 'Congress' Model

The Uniting Church in Australia's 'Congress' model for Indigenous ministry provides a valuable example of how a church can empower marginalised communities within its structures. The Congress operates as a semi-autonomous body within the Uniting Church, with its decision-making processes and culturally appropriate practices (Uniting Church in Australia, 2021). This model is particularly relevant to the NHKA, given South Africa's diverse cultural landscape and the church's historical role as a *volkskerk*, as explored in Chapter 3.

First, the Congress model demonstrates how a church can create space for marginalised communities to lead and shape ministry, a principle that could significantly benefit the NHKA's inclusivity efforts, as highlighted in section 5.2.3.5. Budden (2009: 178) asserts, "*The Congress has been a place where Indigenous people have been able to find their voice and express their faith in culturally appropriate ways.*"

Second, the Congress allows for culturally appropriate expressions of faith, aligning with the NHKA's growing recognition of the need for contextual approaches, as discussed in section 5.5.3. Pattel-Gray (1991: 26) notes that "*the Congress has enabled Aboriginal people to worship God in meaningful ways.*"

Last, the Congress's semi-autonomous structure reflects the structural flexibility the NHKA requires to support missional engagement, as explored in section 5.4. Dutney (2011: 87) highlights that "*The Congress model represents a significant structural innovation in Australian church life,*" which resonates with the NHKA's need to reimagine its organisational structures.

5.7.2.3 The Christian Reformed Church in North America's Office of Social Justice

The Christian Reformed Church in North America's Office of Social Justice (OSJ) exemplifies how a denomination can integrate advocacy

and systemic change into its missional work. The OSJ engages in policy advocacy, education, and mobilisation around poverty, immigration, and environmental justice (Christian Reformed Church in North America, 2022). This model offers insights into the NHKA's evolving approach to diaconal work, as discussed in sections 5.2 and 5.3.

First, the OSJ demonstrates how advocacy can be integrated into missional work, aligning with the NHKA's growing recognition of the need to address systemic issues, as noted in section 5.2.3.5 and evidenced in the 2022 ADV minutes (NHKA ADV, 2022: 13-14). Kuperus (2018: 215) observes, *"The Office of Social Justice has played a crucial role in helping the CRC engage with structural issues of injustice."*

Second, the OSJ's focus on educating and mobilising church members mirrors the NHKA's need to cultivate a missional imagination among its members, as identified in section 5.5.5. Hogema (2011: 132) highlights that *"the OSJ has been instrumental in raising awareness about social justice issues among CRC members."*

Last, the OSJ's systemic approach to addressing social issues beyond individual charity resonates with the NHKA's need to move from reactive charity to proactive engagement with poverty and social transformation, a theme explored throughout Chapter 5. Bouma-Prediger and Walsh (2008: 178) argue, *"The OSJ's work represents a shift from ameliorative to transformative approaches to social issues."*

5.7.3 Application to the NHKA's Context

Applying these best practices to the NHKA requires careful consideration and contextual adaptation. As Van Gelder and Zscheile (2011: 149) note, "Contextualisation is not about uncritical adaptation to culture, but about discerning the gospel's distinctive message within a particular setting." This process of discernment and adaptation must be guided by principles that align with the insights developed throughout Chapter 5 and are

consistent with the NHKA's Reformed heritage and current socio-economic realities.

5.7.3.1 Contextual Appropriateness

Adopted practices must be contextually appropriate for the NHKA and South Africa. This principle aligns with the emphasis on contextual engagement discussed in section 5.5.4. Ensuring contextual appropriateness involves:

1. *Theological Alignment:* Adopted practices must align with the NHKA's Reformed theology. As Smit (2008: 263) suggests, "Reformed churches must always seek to balance continuity with their theological heritage and responsiveness to their current context." This aligns with the need for theological integration identified in section 5.3.2.
2. *Cultural Sensitivity:* Practices must be adapted to suit the diverse cultural contexts within the NHKA. Kritzing (2013: 37) stresses the importance of "*developing a missional praxis deeply rooted in the South African soil*," echoing the call for contextual hermeneutics in section 5.6.3.
3. *Socio-Economic Relevance:* Adopted practices must address the socio-economic challenges specific to South Africa. Bowers Du Toit (2017: 3) highlights the need for "diaconal practices that engage with the structural dimensions of poverty in the South African context," aligning with the NHKA's evolving approach to poverty alleviation discussed in sections 5.2.3.3 and 5.2.3.5.

5.7.3.2 Structural Integration

New practices must be integrated into the NHKA's existing structures to support missional transformation without causing unnecessary disruption. As Hendriks (2009: 115) notes, "*Structural change in the church must be both bold and sensitive to existing realities*." This principle

aligns with the discussion of structural alternatives in section 5.4 and the need for gradual implementation highlighted in section 5.5.6.2.

5.7.3.3 Capacity Building

The successful implementation of new practices requires building capacity within the NHKA. Niemandt (2019: 148) emphasises that "missional leadership development is crucial for the successful implementation of missional practices." This aligns with the focus on leadership development in section 5.5.2 and the need for ongoing learning discussed in section 5.5.6.4.

5.7.4 Strategic Recommendations

Building on insights from the case studies and considering the NHKA's unique context, the following strategic recommendations are proposed:

5.7.4.1 Establish an Innovation Fund for Missional Engagement

Inspired by the 'Fresh Expressions' initiative, the NHKA should establish a dedicated fund to support congregations experimenting with new forms of missional engagement. This fund could:

1. *Provide Seed Funding for Innovative Diaconal Projects:* Moynagh (2012: 156) argues that "Financial support for innovation is crucial in enabling new missional initiatives to take root," aligning with the need for resource reallocation discussed in section 5.6.2.
2. *Support Learning Exchanges with Other Churches:* Niemandt (2019: 195) emphasises the value of "*cross-pollination of ideas in fostering missional innovation*," resonating with the emphasis on collaborative partnerships in section 5.6.4.
3. *Fund Research into the Effectiveness of New Approaches:* Van Gelder (2007: 181) underscores the importance of "*robust evaluation mechanisms in refining missional practices*," aligning

with the need for ongoing evaluation and learning discussed in section 5.5.6.4.

5.7.4.2 Develop a Missional Advocacy Initiative

Drawing on the Christian Reformed Church's Office of Social Justice, the NHKA should establish an initiative to address systemic issues through advocacy and education. This initiative could:

1. *Research Key Social Issues Affecting South Africa:* Bowers Du Toit (2017: 5) notes that "*Rigorous research is essential for effective engagement with structural injustice,*" aligning with the need for a comprehensive understanding of poverty and social issues highlighted in section 5.2.3.5.
2. *Develop Educational Resources for Congregations:* Swart (2013: 9) emphasises the need for "*theological education that equips church members to engage critically with social issues,*" resonating with the focus on reorienting theological education in section 5.5.3.
3. *Engage in Policy Advocacy at Local and National Levels:* Forster (2015: 7) argues that "*public theology must move beyond critique to constructive engagement with policy formulation,*" aligning with the need to address systemic issues in section 5.6.3.

5.7.4.3 Create Empowerment Structures for Marginalised Communities

Inspired by the Uniting Church in Australia's Congress model, the NHKA should develop structures that empower marginalised communities within the church. This could involve:

1. *Establishing Semi-Autonomous Bodies for Specific Communities:* Budden (2009: 180) observes that "*Structural autonomy can be a powerful tool for empowering marginalised voices within the*

church," aligning with the need for inclusive approaches identified in section 5.2.3.5.

2. *Developing Leadership Pipelines for Marginalised Communities:* Hendriks (2009: 117) stresses the importance of *"intentional leadership development strategies that prioritise diversity,"* resonating with the focus on cultivating missional leadership discussed in section 5.5.2.
3. *Creating Culturally Appropriate Expressions of Faith and Ministry:* Kritzinger (2013: 40) highlights the need to *"cultivate a missional praxis deeply rooted in diverse cultural contexts,"* aligning with the emphasis on contextual engagement in Chapter 5.

5.7.4.4 Implement a 'Mixed Economy' Approach

Inspired by the Church of England's Fresh Expressions initiative, the NHKA should adopt a 'mixed economy' approach that values traditional and innovative church forms. This could involve:

1. *Developing Criteria for Recognising New Forms of Church:* Goodhew et al. (2012: 87) emphasise the need for *"clear frameworks that allow for innovation while maintaining theological integrity,"* aligning with the need for theological integration discussed in section 5.3.2.
2. *Creating Mentoring Relationships between Traditional Congregations and New Initiatives:* Nelstrop and Percy (2008: 25) highlight the value of *"intergenerational learning in fostering missional renewal,"* resonating with the emphasis on ongoing learning discussed in section 5.5.6.4.
3. *Adapting Church Policies to Accommodate Diverse Expressions:* Van Gelder and Zscheile (2011: 153) argue the need to *"develop flexible ecclesial structures that can accommodate diverse,*

missional expressions," aligning with the structural implications discussed in section 5.6.2.

5.7.4.5 Establish a Best Practices Learning Network

To facilitate ongoing learning and adaptation, the NHKA should create a network for sharing and learning from best practices within the denomination and with other churches. This network could:

1. *Organise Regular Conferences on Missional Practices:* Niemandt (2012: 8) emphasises the importance of "creating spaces for collective reflection on missional experiences," aligning with the need for fostering theological dialogue in section 5.6.4.
2. *Facilitate Learning Exchanges with Other Churches:* Roxburgh (2015: 46) underscores the value of "cross-contextual learning in refining missional practices," resonating with the emphasis on collaborative partnerships in section 5.6.4.
3. *Develop a Database of Case Studies on Missional Practices:* Van Gelder (2007: 184) highlights the importance of "systematic knowledge management in supporting missional transformation," aligning with the need for ongoing evaluation and learning in section 5.5.6.4.

5.7.5 Conclusion

Learning from best practices in other contexts offers valuable insights for the NHKA as it navigates its missional transformation. The strategic recommendations proposed in this section, informed by global experiences and scholarly insights, provide pathways for the NHKA to deepen its missional engagement while remaining true to its Reformed heritage and responsive to the South African context.

Implementing these recommendations, in conjunction with the strategies outlined in previous sections of Chapter 5, can significantly enhance the

NHKA's capacity for effective poverty alleviation and social transformation. However, this process must be approached with discernment, recognising that each practice must be carefully adapted to the NHKA's unique context.

As the NHKA moves forward in its missional journey, it can learn from others and contribute distinctive insights to the global conversation on missional ecclesiology. The church's experience in navigating the transition from a *volkskerk* to a missional identity within the complex socio-economic landscape of post-apartheid South Africa offers valuable lessons for other churches facing similar challenges.

Ultimately, as Bosch (1991: 519) reminds us:

It is not the church which 'undertakes' mission; it is the missio Dei, which constitutes the church. The mission of the church needs constantly to be renewed and reconceived. (Bosch, 1991: 519)

These recommendations aim to facilitate the NHKA's fuller participation in this divine mission, empowering the church to be an effective agent of God's transformative work in South African society and beyond.

5.8 Conclusion and Strategic Recommendations

5.8.1 Summary of Critical Insights

Chapter 5 has provided an in-depth evaluation of the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation, focusing on the effectiveness of its diaconal practices, the exploration of alternative structures, and the role of theological reflection. This chapter has critically examined the church's historical and current diaconal efforts through the analysis of the *Algemene Diakensvergadering* (ADV) minutes from 1998 to 2022, and it has explored how well these efforts align with the principles of missional ecclesiology.

The analysis of the ADV minutes (Section 5.2.3) highlighted significant progress in the NHKA's shift from a reactive, charity-based model to a more proactive, missionally aligned approach. However, persistent challenges were identified, including a lack of a comprehensive long-term strategy, inconsistent monitoring and evaluation processes, and difficulties balancing centralised and decentralised leadership (Section 5.2.3.1.4). These challenges have limited the NHKA's ability to fully realise its missional potential and effectively address the root causes of poverty.

This chapter explored alternative structures, particularly the *Sentrum vir Gemeentelike Bediening* (SGB) (Section 5.4). It demonstrated the potential for more flexible and contextually responsive models to support the NHKA's evolving mission better. The SGB's focus on contextual analysis, participatory engagement, and strategic flexibility aligns well with missional ecclesiology, offering a promising pathway to address the structural limitations identified in the ADV's approach.

The theological reflection (Section 5.3) underscored the need for the NHKA to deepen its engagement with missional ecclesiology. Historically, the NHKA's diaconal practices have been shaped by a Reformed theological framework that prioritised care for its members, often at the expense of broader societal engagement. The shift towards missional ecclesiology challenges this inward focus, calling the church to embrace a more holistic, justice-oriented mission that addresses spiritual and social needs. This reorientation is essential for transforming the NHKA's identity from a *volkskerk* focused primarily on its community to a missional church actively participating in God's redemptive work.

5.8.2 Contribution to Research Questions

This chapter has contributed significantly to answering key research questions regarding the NHKA's diaconal practices and their alignment with missional ecclesiology. Specifically, it has addressed:

1. The effectiveness of the NHKA's current practices (addressed in Section 5.2.3) reveals progress and ongoing challenges.
2. The structural and cultural shifts necessary for the NHKA to embrace a missional identity (explored in Section 5.4) demonstrate the potential of alternative structures like the SGB.
3. The role of theological reflection in transforming diaconal work (discussed in Section 5.3) underscores the need for a deeper integration of missional principles.
4. These insights lay the foundation for the broader synthesis and final recommendations discussed in Chapter 6, where the research questions will be revisited comprehensively.

5.8.3 Strategic Recommendations

Based on the findings and insights presented in this chapter, the following strategic recommendations are proposed to guide the NHKA in its continued transformation towards a missional ecclesiology:

1. *Develop a Comprehensive Diaconal Strategy:*
 - The NHKA must create a cohesive long-term strategy for poverty alleviation that integrates missional ecclesiology principles. This strategy should encompass immediate relief and long-term systemic change, aligning the church's mission with the *missio Dei*. Robust monitoring and evaluation mechanisms should be established to ensure the strategy's effectiveness.
2. *Enhance Theological Integration and Reflection:*
 - Regular theological reflection sessions should be incorporated into the planning and evaluation of diaconal work. This will ensure that the NHKA's diaconal practices

are theologically grounded and contextually relevant, fostering a more holistic and justice-oriented approach to the mission.

3. *Strengthen Structural Flexibility:*

- The NHKA should explore adopting more flexible and contextually responsive structures like the SGB to support its missional objectives better. These structures should facilitate participatory engagement and enable the church to respond effectively to its communities' diverse socio-economic challenges.

4. *Increase Community Participation:*

- The NHKA must actively involve local communities in the decision-making processes related to diaconal work. This participatory approach will enhance the relevance and impact of the church's initiatives, ensuring that they are responsive to the specific needs of those they serve.

5. *Adopt a Proactive Advocacy Stance:*

- The NHKA should leverage its influence to advocate for policy changes that address the systemic causes of poverty and inequality. This aligns with the missional call to engage prophetically with societal issues and to be a leading voice for justice and transformation in South Africa.

6. *Invest in Capacity Building:*

- Prioritising the ongoing training and development of church leaders, deacons, and volunteers in missional theology, community development, and advocacy will ensure the NHKA's diaconal work is effective, sustainable, and aligned with its missional identity.

7. *Foster Cultural Transformation:*

- The NHKA must promote a cultural shift that embraces a missional identity, moving from a *volkskerk* mindset to a church actively engaged with broader society. This transformation will require rethinking the church's narratives, symbols, and structures to align them with the principles of missional ecclesiology.

5.8.4 Call to Action

To fully embrace its missional calling, the NHKA must commit to a transformative journey that reimagines its identity and mission. This journey involves structural changes and a deep cultural shift toward becoming a church actively participating in God's redemptive work. Establishing a Missional Transformation Team will be crucial to guide the implementation of these recommendations. Additionally, a phased approach to transformation and ongoing evaluation and learning processes will ensure continuous improvement and sustained impact.

In conclusion, Chapter 5 critically evaluates the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation and provides strategic recommendations for aligning the church's mission more closely with missional ecclesiology. These recommendations serve as a blueprint for the NHKA's continued transformation, positioning the church to make a meaningful impact on the socio-economic challenges facing South Africa.

5.8.5 Looking Forward to Chapter 6

Chapter 6 will combine the findings and insights from all previous chapters, offering a comprehensive synthesis of how the NHKA can move forward in its mission. This final chapter will revisit the research questions in detail, drawing on the evidence and arguments presented throughout this thesis. Chapter 6 will also provide a conclusive discussion on the implications of adopting a missional ecclesiology for the NHKA's future, offering final recommendations for how the church can fully integrate these principles into its identity, structure, and mission.

Through this synthesis, this thesis will conclude with a clear vision for the NHKA's path toward a more just and transformative engagement with the challenges of poverty in South Africa.

Chapter 6 – Conclusion and Recommendations

6.1 Introduction

This chapter concludes the study by integrating the key findings from the preceding chapters into a comprehensive synthesis. It reflects on the implications of these findings for the NHKA's diaconal mission, particularly within the framework of missional ecclesiology. Additionally, the chapter offers strategic recommendations to enhance the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation, addresses the study's limitations, and suggests avenues for future research. The chapter consolidates the study's contributions and provides a roadmap for ongoing development within the NHKA and the wider ecclesiastical community.

The chapter is structured as follows: First, it revisits the research objectives and questions, summarising how they were addressed throughout the study. Next, it synthesises the key findings, integrating insights from the theological, historical, and practical analyses. This is followed by a discussion of the findings' theoretical and practical implications. The chapter then presents strategic recommendations for improving the NHKA's diaconal practices and concludes by acknowledging the study's limitations and proposing directions for future research.

6.2 Revisiting the Research Objectives and Questions

This section revisits the key research objectives and questions that guided the study, summarising how each was addressed throughout the thesis. It provides a brief reflection on how the findings from each chapter contributed to answering these questions, ensuring that the study's original goals are linked to its outcomes.

6.2.1 Restatement of the Research Objectives

The primary objectives of this study were to critically evaluate the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation within the framework of missional ecclesiology and to propose strategic recommendations for enhancing

the effectiveness of the church's diaconal mission. Specifically, the research aimed to:

1. *Assess the Historical and Theological Foundations:* To examine the historical and theological underpinnings of the NHKA's diaconal work, identifying how these have shaped the church's approach to poverty alleviation.
2. *Evaluate the Current Diaconal Practices:* To critically evaluate the NHKA's current diaconal practices, focusing on their alignment with the principles of missional ecclesiology and their effectiveness in addressing poverty within the South African context.
3. *Identify Gaps and Areas for Improvement:* Identify the strategic, structural, and theological gaps in the NHKA's diaconal work that hinders its effectiveness and explores potential areas for improvement.
4. *Propose Strategic Recommendations:* Develop actionable recommendations that will enable the NHKA to integrate missional ecclesiology more effectively into its diaconal mission, enhancing its impact on poverty alleviation.

These objectives guided the research throughout the study, ensuring a comprehensive analysis that assessed the NHKA's current practices and provided a foundation for practical, forward-looking recommendations.

6.2.2 Review of the Research Questions

The study focused on how adopting a missional ecclesiology could improve the NHKA's efforts in poverty alleviation. It explored this through a primary research question and several secondary questions.

6.2.2.1 Primary Research Question

1. **Transformation Potential:** How can a shift towards a missional ecclesiology enhance the NHKA's engagement with poverty alleviation in South Africa?

6.2.2.2 Secondary Research Questions

2. **Socio-Economic Impact:** How does the socio-economic context of poverty in South Africa influence the NHKA's mission and diaconal ministry?
3. **Historical Context:** What are the historical and current ecclesiological understandings within the NHKA regarding the church's role in poverty alleviation?
4. **Theological Foundations:** What theological and practical foundations underpin missional ecclesiology, and how are they applicable to the NHKA's context?
5. **Ministry Optimisation:** How can diaconal ministry within the NHKA be optimised or transformed to better respond to the needs of the impoverished in South Africa?
6. **Integration Challenges:** What are the potential challenges and opportunities associated with integrating a missional ecclesiology into the NHKA's operational and theological framework?
7. **Model Potential:** How can the NHKA's engagement with poverty through a missional ecclesiology serve as a model for other churches in South Africa and beyond?

These questions were crucial in guiding the study, ensuring a thorough analysis of the NHKA's diaconal mission and its potential transformation through missional ecclesiology.

6.2.3 Addressing the Research Questions

The study systematically addressed the research questions through a comprehensive analysis of historical, theological, and practical perspectives. Each chapter contributed uniquely to answering the primary and secondary research questions, ensuring a coherent exploration of how missional ecclesiology could enhance the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation.

6.2.3.1 Primary Research Question

The primary research question explored how a shift towards missional ecclesiology could enhance the NHKA's engagement with poverty alleviation in South Africa. This was addressed across multiple chapters:

- **Chapter 2:** Provided a detailed contextual analysis of poverty in South Africa, highlighting the socio-economic challenges the NHKA must address.
- **Chapter 3:** Traced the NHKA's historical engagement with poverty, revealing how its identity as a *volkskerk* influenced its diaconal practices.
- **Chapter 4:** Introduced the theoretical underpinnings of missional ecclesiology, assessing its potential to reorient the NHKA's mission towards a more inclusive and transformative engagement with society.
- **Chapter 5:** Applied these insights to a practical evaluation of the NHKA's recent diaconal activities, identifying areas where

missional principles could drive more effective poverty alleviation strategies.

6.2.3.2 Secondary Research Question

The secondary research questions were explored through a detailed examination of historical, socio-economic, and theological dimensions, providing a comprehensive framework for understanding the NHKA's mission and potential transformation:

- **Socio-Economic Impact:** Explored in Chapter 2, this question focused on the socio-economic realities of poverty in South Africa. The findings underscored the NHKA's need to address both immediate needs and systemic inequalities through a more robust diaconal mission.
- **Historical Context:** Addressed in Chapter 3, this question examined how the NHKA's ecclesiology, particularly its identity as a *volkskerk*, shaped its historical approach to poverty alleviation. The analysis revealed a strong ethnocentric focus, which limited the church's broader engagement with societal issues.
- **Theological Foundations:** Chapter 4 was dedicated to discussing the theological principles that underpin missional ecclesiology and their relevance to the NHKA's context. The chapter underscored the necessity for a more outward-focused mission that aligns with the *missio Deo*.
- **Ministry Optimisation:** Chapter 5 tackled this question by critically evaluating the NHKA's diaconal practices. The analysis identified gaps and proposed strategic recommendations for enhancing the church's poverty alleviation efforts.

- **Integration Challenges:** Throughout Chapters 4 and 5, we explored the potential challenges and opportunities associated with integrating a missional ecclesiology within the NHKA. The findings underscored the necessity for cultural and structural shifts within the church to fully embrace this paradigm.
- **Model Potential:** Chapter 5 concluded with a reflection on how the NHKA's experience could serve as a model for other churches facing similar socio-economic challenges. The study suggested that the NHKA's journey towards missional ecclesiology could offer valuable lessons for broader ecclesiastical engagement with poverty.

The study effectively addressed the research questions through this structured approach, offering a comprehensive evaluation of the NHKA's diaconal mission and providing actionable insights for enhancing it through missional ecclesiology.

6.3 Synthesis of Key Findings

This section integrates the principal findings from the preceding chapters, offering a comprehensive analysis of the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation and the potential impact of adopting a missional ecclesiology. The synthesis is organised into the following subsections, each reflecting on different aspects of the NHKA's historical, theological, and practical evolution as explored throughout this thesis.

6.3.1 Historical Context and Evolution of the NHKA's Approach to Poverty

The historical analysis in Chapter 3, sections 3.2.2 to 3.3.4, revealed a complex trajectory in the NHKA's engagement with poverty. Initially, during the pre-apartheid era, the church's efforts were primarily inward-focused, addressing the needs of the Afrikaner community, particularly in the aftermath of the Anglo-Boer War. During this period, they established

an ethnocentric approach deeply embedded in the church's identity as a *volkskerk*, or ethnic church, significantly shaping its diaconal practices (Chapter 3, section 3.2.2).

During the apartheid era, as discussed in Chapter 3, the NHKA's alignment with Afrikaner nationalism further constrained its diaconal mission. The church's support for apartheid policies not only limited its engagement with broader societal issues but also contributed to systemic inequalities that exacerbated poverty among non-white populations (Chapter 3, sections 3.3.2-3.3.4). This period was marked by a tension between the church's theological principles of compassion and its socio-political alignment, resulting in a narrow and often inadequate response to the multifaceted challenges of poverty in South Africa.

In the post-apartheid era, explored in Chapters 3 and 5, the NHKA grappled with its historical legacy while attempting to redefine its role in a rapidly changing society. Despite some efforts to broaden its social engagement, the church's implementation of more inclusive diaconal practices has been inconsistent, often hindered by institutional inertia and lingering vestiges of its *volkskerk* identity (Chapter 5, section 5.2).

6.3.2 Theological Foundations and the Shift Towards Missional Ecclesiology

Chapter 4, sections 4.2.1 to 4.3.3, the NHKA's theological foundations, highlighting its roots in traditional Reformed ecclesiology, which has historically emphasised the maintenance of church structures and doctrinal purity. While this ecclesiological framework has provided stability and continuity, it has often resulted in an inward-focused ministry that struggled to effectively address societal challenges such as poverty (Chapter 4, section 4.2.2).

The introduction of missional ecclesiology, as discussed in Chapter 4, represents a paradigm shift for the NHKA. This theological approach, grounded in the concept of *missio Dei*, reframes the church's identity and

purpose as fundamentally mission-oriented, calling for more active societal engagement that aligns the church's mission with God's ongoing work in the world (Chapter 4, sections 4.2.1-4.3.1). However, the integration of missional principles within the NHKA has been met with enthusiasm and resistance, as highlighted in Chapters 4 and 5. The study revealed tensions between traditional ecclesiological models and the more dynamic, outward-focused approach of missional ecclesiology, manifesting in debates over the church's role in society and the nature of its diaconal work (Chapter 5, section 5.3).

6.3.3 Current Diaconal Practices and Their Effectiveness

Chapter 5, sections 5.2 to 5.4, evaluated the NHKA's current diaconal practices, revealing a mixed landscape of achievements and shortcomings. The church has initiated various poverty alleviation efforts, including feeding schemes, educational support, and community development projects. These initiatives demonstrate a growing awareness of the church's social responsibility and have positively impacted local communities (Chapter 5, section 5.2).

However, the analysis also identified significant limitations in the NHKA's approach. Many diaconal efforts remain fragmented and lack strategic coherence, often failing to address the root causes of poverty. Instances were found where well-intentioned programmes inadvertently perpetuated dependency rather than fostering sustainable community development (Chapter 5, section 5.3). Moreover, the alignment of current practices with missional principles was inconsistent. While some initiatives reflected a more holistic, community-centred approach, others remained entrenched in traditional models of charity that do not fully embody the transformative potential of missional ecclesiology.

6.3.4 Socio-Economic Realities and Their Impact on the NHKA's Mission

The contextual analysis of poverty in South Africa, presented in Chapter 2, sections 2.2 to 2.7, underscored the country's complex and persistent socio-economic challenges. High unemployment rates, income inequality, and the legacy of spatial apartheid continue to shape the landscape of poverty, presenting multifaceted challenges that require comprehensive responses.

These socio-economic realities have profound implications for the NHKA's mission. As discussed in Chapter 5, many NHKA congregations are in communities grappling with severe poverty, creating opportunities and obligations for meaningful engagement. Additionally, there is growing societal expectation for religious institutions to be more active in addressing social issues, placing pressure on the NHKA to expand and deepen its diaconal work (Chapter 5, section 5.2).

6.3.5 Opportunities and Challenges in Adopting Missional Ecclesiology

The research identified significant opportunities for the NHKA in adopting a missional ecclesiology, as discussed in Chapters 4 and 5. This approach offers the potential for enhanced community engagement, allowing the church to respond more effectively to local needs and contribute to sustainable development (Chapter 4, sections 4.3.1-4.3.2). Missional ecclesiology also provides a theological framework for addressing systemic injustices, aligning the church's efforts with broader movements for social transformation (Chapter 4, section 4.3.3).

However, substantial challenges in this transition were also highlighted. Structural barriers within the NHKA, including rigid hierarchies and centralised decision-making processes, often impede the flexibility required for missional engagement. Cultural resistance among congregations accustomed to more traditional ecclesial models presents another significant obstacle (Chapter 5, section 5.4). Furthermore, the

adoption of missional ecclesiology necessitates new approaches to leadership and theological education within the NHKA, requiring a recalibration of pastoral training and ongoing educational initiatives to equip church leaders for missional ministry (Chapter 5, section 5.3).

6.3.6 Integrative Analysis: Towards a Holistic Missional Approach

The synthesis of historical, theological, and practical insights from this study points towards the need for a holistic missional approach within the NHKA. As discussed throughout Chapters 3 to 5, this approach would integrate the church's Reformed heritage with the dynamic, contextually responsive orientation of missional ecclesiology (Chapter 4, section 4.3).

Such an integrative framework would address poverty as an economic issue and a multidimensional challenge requiring theological reflection, structural reform, and practical action. It calls for a diaconal ministry deeply rooted in local communities, responsive to systemic injustices, and collaborative in its approach to social transformation (Chapter 5, sections 5.3-5.4). The findings collectively suggest that the NHKA's effectiveness in poverty alleviation is intrinsically linked to its ability to embrace and embody missional ecclesiology, representing a change in strategy and a fundamental reorientation of the church's identity and purpose in society.

6.4 Implications of the Findings

The findings of this study have significant implications for both theoretical understanding and practical application within the context of the NHKA and broader ecclesiastical engagement with poverty alleviation. These implications are drawn from synthesising historical, theological, and useful analyses conducted in Chapters 1 to 5. This section delineates these implications, considering their impact on theological discourse, ecclesial practice, and societal engagement.

6.4.1 Theoretical Implications

6.4.1.1 Advancements in Missional Ecclesiology

The research contributes to the theoretical understanding of missional ecclesiology, particularly within the NHKA's context. The study revealed that adopting a missional ecclesiology framework can address the limitations of the NHKA's historical *volkskerk* identity, which has traditionally been inward-focused and ethnocentric (Chapter 4, Section 4.2.1 to Section 4.3.3). By integrating missional ecclesiology, the NHKA can redefine its role as an outward-looking, a socially engaged institution that aligns more closely with the concept of *missio Dei*—God's mission in the world. This theoretical advancement challenges the traditional Reformed ecclesiological model and offers a renewed theological basis for the NHKA to engage effectively with socio-economic issues like poverty.

6.4.1.2 Reconceptualising Church-Society Relations

The findings also necessitate rethinking church-society relations, particularly in post-apartheid South Africa. The study underscored the need for the NHKA to transition from a preservationist stance to one that actively participates in societal transformation (Chapter 3, Section 3.7.5 – Section 3.8). This re-conceptualisation aligns with the broader ecclesiological shift from a *volkskerk* to a missional church model, where the church is viewed as an active agent in addressing societal issues rather than merely preserving its doctrinal purity and institutional integrity.

6.4.1.3 Interdisciplinary Approach to Ecclesiology

The research highlights the importance of an interdisciplinary approach to ecclesiology, integrating insights from theology, sociology, and development studies. This multidisciplinary perspective enriches the NHKA's theological reflection and provides a more comprehensive framework for understanding its mission in a complex socio-economic context (Chapter 2, Section 2.6). The study's approach demonstrates that a robust ecclesiological framework must consider the social realities and

historical contexts in which the church operates, making it more responsive and relevant.

6.4.2 Practical Implications

6.4.2.1 Reorientation of Diaconal Ministry

The findings suggest that the NHKA needs to reorient its diaconal ministry fundamentally. The analysis in Chapter 5, Sections 5.3.5 – 5.4, indicated that while the NHKA has initiated various poverty alleviation efforts, these initiatives often lack strategic coherence and fail to address the root causes of poverty. The church must adopt a more holistic, community-centred approach that meets immediate needs and fosters sustainable development. This reorientation involves shifting from charity-based models to more transformative approaches that empower communities and address systemic injustices.

6.4.2.2 Structural Reforms within the NHKA

The research highlights the necessity for structural reforms within the NHKA to enhance its engagement with poverty alleviation. Centralised decision-making processes and rigid hierarchies have been identified as barriers to effective missional engagement (Chapter 5, Section 5.3.6). Decentralising these processes and empowering local congregations to respond to their specific community needs can foster a more dynamic and contextually relevant diaconal ministry.

6.4.2.3 Theological Education and Leadership Development

The findings underscore the pressing need for revising theological education and leadership development within the NHKA. The study suggests integrating missional theology into the curriculum of theological institutions and offering continuing education programmes for existing leaders (Chapter 4, Section 4.5.2). This would equip church leaders with the necessary skills and knowledge to navigate the complexities of social engagement while remaining grounded in Reformed theology.

6.4.2.4 Ecumenical and Inter-sectoral Collaboration

The study also points to the importance of enhancing ecumenical and inter-sectoral collaboration in addressing poverty. By fostering partnerships with other denominations, governmental agencies, and NGOs, the NHKA can leverage additional resources and expertise, thereby enhancing the effectiveness and reach of its poverty alleviation efforts (Chapter 5, Section 5.3.7).

6.4.3 Societal Implications

6.4.3.1 Enhancing the Church's Role in Social Transformation

The study's findings imply that the NHKA has the potential to play a more significant role in social transformation in South Africa. By adopting a missional ecclesiology, the church can be a key contributor to addressing societal challenges, moving beyond its traditional boundaries and engaging more deeply with issues such as poverty and inequality (Chapter 2, Section 2.7).

6.4.3.2 Addressing Historical Legacies

The study underscores the need for the NHKA to address its historical legacies, particularly its past complicity with apartheid. The church must acknowledge this history and actively work towards redress and reconciliation through its diaconal mission (Chapter 3, Section 3.7.6). This process is crucial for the NHKA's credibility and effectiveness in contemporary South Africa.

6.4.3.3 Fostering Social Cohesion

Finally, the NHKA's adoption of missional ecclesiology has implications for fostering social cohesion in South Africa. By engaging more actively and inclusively with diverse communities, the church can help build bridges across racial, ethnic, and socio-economic divides, contributing to a more unified and just society (Chapter 4, Section 4.5.1).

6.4.4 Conclusion

The implications of this study are far-reaching, encompassing theoretical advancements in ecclesiology, practical reforms within the NHKA, and broader societal impacts. They challenge the NHKA and similar churches to reimagine their roles and responsibilities in addressing poverty and inequality, pointing towards a more engaged, responsive, and transformative ecclesial presence in society. While challenging, the NHKA's journey towards adopting a missional ecclesiology offers a pathway to a more relevant and impactful ministry that resonates with the needs of 21st-century South Africa.

6.5 Strategic Recommendations

6.5.1 Theological Reorientation and Education

6.5.1.1 Missional Theology Integration

A fundamental shift in theological orientation is required to enhance the NHKA's engagement with poverty alleviation. As outlined in Chapter 4, adopting missional ecclesiology—rooted in the concept of *missio Dei*—provides a robust framework for this reorientation (Chapter 4, section 4.2). The NHKA must systematically integrate missional theology into its doctrinal framework and educational programmes. This can be achieved by:

1. *Developing Comprehensive Curricula:* Establish a curriculum that includes missional ecclesiology in seminaries and theological institutions affiliated with the NHKA, ensuring that clergy and lay leaders are well-versed in the principles of missional engagement (Chapter 4, section 4.3.3).
2. *Organising Continuous Education:* Regular workshops and seminars should be offered to clergy and lay leaders to deepen their understanding of missional concepts and practices. These educational initiatives should address the socio-economic challenges NHKA congregations face, as identified in Chapter 2 (Chapter 2, section 2.7).

3. *Promoting Theological Research:* Encourage scholarly research and publications that explore the intersection of Reformed theology and missional ecclesiology within the South African context. This should include case studies on the NHKA's engagement with poverty alleviation efforts (Chapter 5, section 5.1).

6.5.1.2 Contextual Hermeneutics

The NHKA must also adopt a more contextual approach to biblical interpretation, emphasising social justice and community engagement. This requires:

1. *Promoting Contextual Exegesis:* Foster exegetical practices that highlight biblical themes of justice, compassion, and societal transformation, aligning with the historical analysis of the NHKA's role during the apartheid and post-apartheid periods (Chapter 3, sections 3.3 and 3.4).
2. *Developing Study Materials:* Create study materials that connect scriptural teachings with contemporary socio-economic challenges in South Africa, thereby grounding diaconal work in a biblical mandate that is both relevant and responsive to the current context (Chapter 2, section 2.3).

6.5.2 Structural and Governance Reforms

6.5.2.1 Decentralisation of Decision-Making

The NHKA should decentralise its decision-making processes, significantly enhancing its responsiveness to local needs. As highlighted in Chapter 3, the church's historical centralisation has often limited its capacity to engage dynamically with local communities (Chapter 3, section 3.4.4).

Specific recommendations include:

1. *Empowering Local Congregations*: Grant greater autonomy to local congregations to develop and implement community-specific poverty alleviation initiatives. This approach aligns with the shift towards a more contextual and missional ecclesiology, as discussed in Chapter 4 (Chapter 4, section 4.3.1).
2. *Establishing Regional Coordination Bodies*: These bodies support local initiatives. By creating regional bodies to facilitate resource sharing and the exchange of best practices among congregations, the NHKA can ensure that local initiatives are supported by broader church structures while focusing on local relevance (Chapter 5, section 5.3).

6.5.2.2 Creation of Specialised Missional Units

The NHKA should establish dedicated units focused on missional engagement and poverty alleviation, drawing from the ecclesiological shift discussed in Chapter 4:

1. *Formation of a 'Missional Diaconate'*: At the national level, establish a Missional Diaconate to oversee and coordinate poverty alleviation efforts across the denomination. This aligns with the NHKA's evolving mission, as articulated in the General Church Assemblies reviewed in Chapter 3 (Chapter 3, section 3.4.8).
2. Furthermore, the role of the *Sentrum vir Gemeentelike Bediening* (SGB), as mentioned in Chapter 5, Section 5.4.2, should be considered integral to these structural reforms. The SGB, established to support congregations in their missional and diaconal efforts, offers a flexible and dynamic approach that aligns with the NHKA's shift towards missional ecclesiology. By providing tailored guidance and resources, the SGB enables local congregations to understand their unique contexts and develop strategic initiatives that effectively address community needs. Incorporating the SGB into the broader governance framework of

the NHKA could enhance its capacity to engage with local communities more dynamically, fostering a collaborative and context-sensitive mission that supports the church's theological objectives and practical outreach efforts. This collaborative approach ensures that all voices are heard and considered in the reform process.

3. The appointment of Community Engagement Officers is another crucial aspect of the proposed reforms. These officers, to be appointed by larger congregations or regional bodies, will play a pivotal and strategic role in spearheading local initiatives. Their role is to ensure that missional engagement is contextually grounded and effectively managed, as discussed in Chapter 5, section 5.4.

6.5.3 Leadership Development and Capacity Building

6.5.3.1 Missional Leadership Training

To equip NHKA leaders for effective missional engagement, a comprehensive leadership development programme should be implemented:

1. *Designing a 'Missional Leadership Certificate'*: Develop a certification programme for pastors and lay leaders, focusing on missional theology, community development, and leadership in complex socio-economic environments (Chapter 4, section 4.4). The SGB could help in this respect (Chapter 5, Section 5.4.2.1)
2. *Incorporating Community Development Modules*: Integrate modules on social entrepreneurship and community development into existing pastoral training curricula, as these skills are essential for addressing the systemic causes of poverty identified in Chapter 2 (Chapter 2, section 2.6).

6.5.3.2 Cross-Cultural Competence

Enhance the cultural competence of NHKA leaders to engage effectively with South Africa's diverse communities:

1. *Organising Immersive Experiences:* Provide leaders with opportunities to experience different cultural and socio-economic contexts firsthand, fostering empathy and a deeper understanding of the communities they serve (Chapter 2, section 2.3).
2. *Training in Intercultural Communication:* Develop training programmes in intercultural communication, equipping leaders to navigate the complexities of cultural diversity within their congregations and broader society (Chapter 5, section 5.2).

6.5.4 Programmatic Initiatives

6.5.4.1 Asset-Based Community Development (ABCD)

Adopt and implement Asset-Based Community Development (ABCD) approaches to poverty alleviation:

1. *Training Congregations in ABCD:* Equip congregations with the skills to identify and leverage community assets, fostering a sense of ownership and sustainability in poverty alleviation efforts (Chapter 5, section 5.4.2).
2. *Developing Pilot Projects:* Implement pilot projects that demonstrate the effectiveness of ABCD in different NHKA contexts, providing models for broader application across the denomination (Chapter 5, section 5.4.3).

6.5.4.2 Holistic Poverty Alleviation Programmes

Design and implement multifaceted programmes addressing various dimensions of poverty:

1. *Establishing Education Support Initiatives:* Focus on early childhood development programmes and adult literacy classes, as these are critical areas identified in the contextual analysis of poverty in South Africa (Chapter 2, section 2.7).
2. *Developing Economic Empowerment Projects:* Implement skills training and micro-enterprise support initiatives to address the economic dimensions of poverty, moving beyond mere charity to sustainable development (Chapter 5, section 5.4).
3. *Initiating Health and Wellness Programmes:* Address physical and mental health needs in impoverished communities, recognising the holistic nature of poverty as discussed in Chapter 2 (Chapter 2, section 2.3.3).

6.5.5 Partnerships and Collaboration

6.5.5.1 Ecumenical Cooperation

Strengthen collaboration with other denominations and ecumenical bodies:

1. *Active Participation in Ecumenical Forums:* Engage actively in forums focused on poverty alleviation and social justice, leveraging the collective strength of the Christian community (Chapter 3, section 3.6.4).
2. *Joint Projects with Other Churches:* Initiate joint poverty alleviation projects with other churches, pooling resources and expertise for greater impact (Chapter 5, section 5.4).

6.5.5.2 Inter-Sectoral Partnerships

Forge strategic partnerships with governmental and non-governmental organisations:

1. *Formal Collaborations with Government Departments:* Align NHKA initiatives with national poverty reduction strategies through formal partnerships with relevant government agencies (Chapter 5, section 5.3).
2. *Partnerships with NGOs:* Collaborate with NGOs and civil society organisations to enhance the reach and effectiveness of poverty alleviation efforts, ensuring that the church's work complements broader societal efforts (Chapter 5, section 5.4.2).

6.5.6 Monitoring, Evaluation, and Learning

6.5.6.1 Impact Assessment Framework

Develop a robust system for monitoring and evaluating the impact of missional initiatives:

1. *Creating Key Performance Indicators (KPIs):* Align KPIs with both missional objectives and poverty alleviation goals, ensuring that programmes are evaluated based on their effectiveness in achieving these aims (Chapter 5, section 5.3).
2. *Regular Impact Assessments:* Implement assessments to measure programme effectiveness and inform strategic decisions, enabling continuous improvement (Chapter 5, section 5.4).

6.5.6.2 Knowledge Management and Sharing

Establish mechanisms for capturing and disseminating learnings and best practices:

1. *Creating a Digital Platform:* Develop a platform for sharing case studies, resources, and experiences across the NHKA, fostering a culture of continuous learning (Chapter 5, section 5.4).
2. *Organising Annual Conferences:* Host conferences or symposia focused on missional engagement and poverty alleviation,

providing a forum for reflection and innovation (Chapter 5, section 5.4.3).

6.5.7 Cultural Transformation

6.5.7.1 Narrative and Symbol Transformation

Reimagine the NHKA's identity and mission through new narratives and symbols:

1. *Developing Missional Liturgical Resources:* Create liturgical materials that reflect a missional ecclesiology, emphasising the church's role in social engagement and transformation (Chapter 4, section 4.5).
2. *Creating Visual Communications:* Use visual materials to communicate the NHKA's evolving identity and mission, ensuring the church's public image aligns with its missional objectives (Chapter 4, section 4.5).

6.5.7.2 Congregational Renewal

Encourage a grassroots movement of missional renewal within congregations:

1. *Fostering Missional Communities:* Support the formation of small groups within congregations focused on living out missional principles in their daily lives (Chapter 4, section 4.3).
2. *Promoting Storytelling and Testimonies:* Encourage members to share stories of missional engagement, fostering a culture of inspiration and accountability (Chapter 5, section 5.4).

6.5.8 Conclusion

The strategic recommendations outlined in this section aim to align the NHKA's mission with the principles of missional ecclesiology, addressing the theological and practical dimensions of poverty alleviation. By

adopting these strategies, the NHKA can enhance its capacity to contribute meaningfully to the transformation of South African society, fulfilling its calling as a church actively engaged in God's redemptive work in the world. These recommendations build on the historical, theological, and practical analyses in Chapters 1 through 5, offering a comprehensive pathway for the NHKA to transition into a more mission-oriented and socially impactful institution.

6.6 Limitations of the Study

This section acknowledges the constraints encountered in this study, which focused on evaluating the NHKA's engagement with poverty alleviation through the lens of missional ecclesiology. While the research has provided significant insights, it is essential to highlight the limitations that may influence the generalisability and depth of the findings.

6.6.1 Methodological Limitations

One of the primary methodological limitations of this study is its focus on a single denomination, the NHKA. Although this approach allowed for an in-depth analysis of the NHKA's diaconal activities and ecclesiological development, it also means that the findings may not be directly applicable to other denominations or broader ecclesial contexts. The specific historical, cultural, and theological characteristics of the NHKA, as discussed in Chapter 3, particularly its identity as a *volkskerk* and its historical alignment with Afrikaner nationalism, limit the transferability of the study's conclusions to churches with different backgrounds (Chapter 3, Section 3.2.1 – Section 3.3.3).

Another methodological limitation stems from the heavy reliance on historical and documentary analysis, particularly concerning the NHKA's past engagements with poverty. While this approach provided valuable historical context, as explored in Chapter 2's contextual analysis of poverty in South Africa, it may not fully capture the nuances of contemporary practices or the lived experiences of church members and communities (Chapter 2, Section 2.2.1 – Section 2.3). The study would

have benefited from more extensive primary data collection, such as interviews or surveys, which could have provided a more comprehensive understanding of current attitudes and practices within the NHKA (Chapter 5, Section 5.1).

6.6.2 Contextual Limitations

The study's geographical and contextual focus on South Africa presents another limitation. While the NHKA operates primarily within this context, the socio-economic realities and the church's historical background are uniquely South African. This specificity limits the applicability of the findings to churches operating in significantly different socio-economic or cultural environments. For instance, the entrenched legacy of apartheid and its impact on poverty in South Africa, as discussed in Chapter 2, creates a unique context that might differ from the experiences of churches in other countries (Chapter 2, Section 2.3).

Furthermore, the study's focus on the NHKA's response to poverty within the South African context, particularly during the post-apartheid era, means that the findings' temporal relevance may diminish as the socio-economic landscape evolves. The analysis provides a snapshot of the current situation, but ongoing changes in poverty dynamics and social structures may necessitate continuous reassessment to maintain the study's relevance (Chapter 2, Section 2.2.4).

6.6.3 Theoretical Limitations

The field of missional ecclesiology, though well-established, is continually evolving. This study's theoretical framework, as outlined in Chapter 4, may not fully capture the most recent developments or emerging critiques in this dynamic theological domain. While the study attempted to integrate interdisciplinary perspectives, particularly from sociology and development studies, the depth of this integration might be limited, potentially overlooking some nuanced aspects of poverty alleviation strategies (Chapter 4, Section 4.2.1).

Moreover, the study's reliance on existing literature to frame the NHKA's transition towards a missional ecclesiology may not entirely reflect the on-the-ground realities within the church. As the NHKA continues to evolve, further empirical research will be necessary to explore how these theoretical frameworks are implemented in practice and their effectiveness in real-world settings (Chapter 4, Section 4.4.3).

6.6.4 Practical and Resource Constraints

Access to internal church documents, particularly those related to recent policy decisions or sensitive matters, was somewhat limited. Despite efforts to obtain comprehensive documentation, certain internal records were not accessible, which may have affected the completeness of the analysis. This limitation is particularly relevant to evaluating the NHKA's diaconal activities, as discussed in Chapter 5 (Chapter 5, Section 5.3.1).

Additionally, language barriers posed a potential limitation. Given the NHKA's Afrikaans-speaking context, some nuances in Afrikaans-language documents may have been lost in translation, potentially affecting the interpretation of certain historical or theological concepts. This could have implications for understanding the subtleties of the NHKA's ecclesiological evolution and its approach to poverty alleviation (Chapter 5, Section 5.3.2).

6.6.5 Researcher Positionality

The researcher's positionality as an insider—being a member of the Reformed tradition and a minister within the NHKA—may have influenced the interpretation of data and the framing of recommendations. While efforts were made to maintain objectivity, inherent biases are challenging to eliminate. While providing valuable insights into the NHKA's operations, this insider perspective may also have led to a partial view that emphasises the church's strengths while potentially underplaying its weaknesses (Chapter 1, Section 1.4 and Section 1.8).

Additionally, the focus on official church positions and academic literature may not fully capture the diverse voices within the NHKA, particularly those of marginalised groups or dissenting opinions. This limitation underscores the need for future research that includes a broader spectrum of perspectives, particularly from lay members and those directly affected by the church's diaconal work (Chapter 1, Section 1.5).

6.6.6 Scope of Impact Assessment

The study's critique of the NHKA's approach to poverty alleviation did not include a comprehensive evaluation of the effectiveness of existing diaconal programmes, which would require more extensive field research and quantitative analysis. While the study identified strategic areas for improvement, as discussed in Chapter 5, the lack of longitudinal data limits the ability to assess long-term trends and the sustainability of various approaches (Chapter 5, Section 5.4.4).

6.6.7 Ethical Considerations

The study touches upon sensitive issues related to the NHKA's historical involvement with apartheid and its current challenges in addressing poverty. While these topics were approached with the utmost sensitivity, there is always the potential for discomfort or disagreement among readers, particularly within the NHKA community. The ethical responsibility to present an accurate yet respectful critique was a constant consideration throughout the research (Chapter 3, Section 3.2.3).

Furthermore, the research process did not extensively engage with the communities that are the intended beneficiaries of the NHKA's diaconal work. This limitation may result in a partial understanding of the lived experiences and perspectives of those directly affected by poverty. Future research should prioritise community engagement to adequately represent these voices (Chapter 3, Section 3.7.2).

6.6.8 Conclusion

In conclusion, it's important to note that while these limitations constrain certain study aspects, they do not fundamentally undermine its value or contributions. Instead, they provide important context for interpreting the findings and highlight areas for future research. By acknowledging these limitations, the study enhances its transparency and integrity, allowing readers to engage critically with the conclusions and recommendations presented. These limitations underscore the need for ongoing research and reflection as the NHKA continues its journey towards a more missional engagement with poverty alleviation.

6.7 Future Research Directions

This section identifies future research directions that will build upon this study's findings. It aims to address the gaps identified throughout the thesis and explore new areas for investigation to enhance the NHKA's engagement with poverty alleviation through missional ecclesiology. The proposed directions draw from the theoretical, historical, and practical insights discussed in Chapters 1 to 5, offering a comprehensive agenda for future inquiry.

6.7.1 Comparative Ecclesiological Studies

6.7.1.1 Inter-denominational Comparisons

Future research should consider comparative studies among different South African denominations to examine how they engage with poverty through missional ecclesiology. This focus is particularly relevant given the unique ecclesiological contexts of each church, which shape their social engagement strategies. Research could explore how other Afrikaans Reformed churches, such as the *Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk* (NGK) and *Gereformeerde Kerke in Suid-Afrika* (GKSA), have navigated similar transitions toward missional ecclesiology and whether they have encountered challenges or successes that could inform the NHKA's ongoing transformation (Chapter 3, section 3.6.3).

6.7.1.2 International Comparative Studies

Expanding the scope of research to include churches in different socio-economic and cultural contexts, especially those in post-colonial societies, could provide valuable insights into how missional ecclesiology is applied in various settings. This would also offer a global perspective on the potential for missional ecclesiology to address poverty and inequality across diverse contexts (Chapter 4, section 4.2.2). Studies could investigate how churches in other countries have adapted their ecclesiological models to confront poverty and social justice issues, examining the successes and limitations of these adaptations.

6.7.2 Longitudinal Impact Studies

6.7.2.1 Long-term Efficacy of Missional Approaches

Conducting longitudinal studies would allow for a deeper understanding of the long-term impact of missional approaches to poverty alleviation. Such studies should track changes in community well-being over extended periods in areas where the NHKA has implemented missional initiatives (Chapter 5, section 5.1). This would help determine the sustainability and scalability of these programmes, providing empirical data to support the church's strategic decisions.

6.7.2.2 Organisational Transformation

Research should also focus on the NHKA's organisational transformation as it continues to integrate missional ecclesiology. This could involve documenting changes in church culture, leadership, and congregational engagement and assessing how these changes affect church growth, member participation, and community perception (Chapter 5, section 5.4).

6.7.3 Empirical Studies on Missional Praxis

6.7.3.1 Quantitative Impact Assessments

Future research should include rigorous quantitative assessments of the impact of the NHKA's missional initiatives. Developing standardised metrics for measuring the effectiveness of church-based poverty

alleviation programmes would provide concrete evidence of the success or limitations of these initiatives (Chapter 2, section 2.8). Such studies could employ statistical analyses to identify key factors contributing to successful missional engagement, offering valuable insights for optimising these strategies.

6.7.3.2 Qualitative Explorations of Lived Experiences

In-depth qualitative research is also needed to capture the nuanced experiences of various stakeholders involved in or affected by the NHKA's poverty alleviation efforts. Ethnographic research in communities where the NHKA operates could provide a richer understanding of the lived experiences of programme beneficiaries. At the same time, interviews and focus groups with church leaders and members would offer insights into attitudinal and behavioural changes (Chapter 3, section 3.7.6).

6.7.4 Theological and Missiological Developments

6.7.4.1 Contextual Theology

Further research should aim to develop a more robust contextual theology that integrates Reformed traditions with missional ecclesiology in the South African context. This could involve exploring how traditional Reformed doctrines can be reinterpreted through a missional lens and examining the theological implications of adopting missional approaches for church identity and practice (Chapter 4, section 4.2).

6.7.4.2 Missional Hermeneutics

Studies should also focus on developing and applying missional hermeneutical approaches to scriptural interpretation. This would involve examining how missional readings of key biblical texts might inform poverty alleviation strategies and exploring the implications of missional hermeneutics for preaching and congregational education (Chapter 4, section 4.3.2).

6.7.5 Interdisciplinary Research

6.7.5.1 Integration with Development Studies

Research should integrate missional ecclesiology with insights from development studies to explore how church-based initiatives can complement or enhance secular development approaches. Investigating the potential synergies between missional ecclesiology and sustainable development goals would provide a more holistic understanding of the church's role in societal transformation (Chapter 2, section 2.7).

6.7.5.2 Sociological Perspectives

Incorporating sociological analyses could deepen understanding of the church's role in social transformation. Research could examine how missional ecclesiology influences social capital formation in communities and investigate the church's potential role in addressing systemic inequalities through a sociological lens (Chapter 3, section 3.5).

6.7.6 Policy and Governance Studies

6.7.6.1 Church Polity and Missional Engagement

Further studies should explore how church governance structures can be optimised to facilitate missional engagement. This could involve analysing the effectiveness of different models of church polity in implementing missional initiatives and exploring innovative governance structures that enhance responsiveness to community needs (Chapter 5, section 5.4).

6.7.6.2 Church-State Relations

Research should also examine the implications of missional ecclesiology for church-state relations in addressing poverty. This could involve exploring collaboration models between churches and government agencies in poverty alleviation and analysing the policy implications of increased church involvement in social welfare programmes (Chapter 4, section 4.5).

6.7.7 Technology and Missional Engagement

6.7.7.1 Digital Missiology

Studies could investigate the intersection of technology and missional ecclesiology, particularly in poverty alleviation. Research could explore the potential of digital platforms for enhancing community engagement and programme delivery and examine how social media and other technologies can be leveraged for missional purposes (Chapter 5, section 5.3).

6.7.7.2 Innovation in Poverty Alleviation

Further research could focus on innovative, technology-driven approaches to poverty alleviation that churches could adopt. This might include exploring the potential of fintech solutions in church-based economic empowerment initiatives and investigating data analytics to enhance the effectiveness of missional programmes (Chapter 5, section 5.2).

6.7.8 Ecumenical and Interfaith Dimensions

6.7.8.1 Ecumenical Collaboration

Research should examine the potential for enhanced ecumenical cooperation in missional approaches to poverty alleviation. This could involve investigating models of inter-denominational collaboration in addressing social issues and analysing the challenges and opportunities in developing shared missional strategies across denominations (Chapter 5, section 5.4).

6.7.8.2 Interfaith Dialogue and Collaboration

Finally, future research could explore the possibilities for interfaith cooperation in addressing poverty through missional approaches. This might involve examining how missional ecclesiology can inform and enhance interreligious dialogue on social issues and investigating potential models for collaboration between Christian churches and other faith communities in poverty alleviation efforts (Chapter 5, section 5.4).

6.7.9 Conclusion

In conclusion, these proposed research directions provide a comprehensive agenda for advancing understanding and practice in missional ecclesiology and poverty alleviation. By pursuing these avenues of inquiry, future research can build upon the foundations laid by this study, addressing its limitations and expanding its scope. Such research has the potential to significantly enhance the effectiveness of church-based poverty alleviation efforts and contribute to broader social transformation in South Africa and beyond.

6.8 Concluding Remarks

6.8.1 Synthesis of Key Insights

This study has highlighted the intricate relationship between the NHKA's (NHKA) historical legacy, theological foundations, and its current approach to poverty alleviation. As discussed throughout this thesis, the NHKA's journey has been shaped by its identity as a *volkskerk*, or people's church, which historically limited its engagement with broader societal issues, particularly during the apartheid era (Chapter 3, section 3.2.2). This inward focus, while understandable within its historical context, established patterns of diaconal practice that often prioritised the Afrikaner community's needs over those of the broader South African society (Chapter 3, section 3.3.2).

The transition towards a missional ecclesiology, explored extensively in Chapter 4, represents a significant shift in the church's self-understanding and its role in society. This shift aligns with the NHKA's need to respond more comprehensively to the socio-economic realities of poverty in South Africa, as outlined in Chapter 2 (section 2.3.3). Integrating missional principles can reframe the church's engagement with poverty from one that merely addresses immediate needs to a holistic approach that challenges systemic inequalities and supports sustainable development (Chapter 4, section 4.2.2).

6.8.2 Transformative Potential of Missional Ecclesiology

Adopting a missional ecclesiology offers a transformative opportunity for the NHKA to reimagine its role in South African society. As discussed in Chapter 4 (section 4.3.2), missional ecclesiology challenges the church to move beyond a maintenance-oriented model, which focuses primarily on self-preservation and doctrinal purity, to a more dynamic engagement with the world's brokenness. This paradigm shift involves embracing a Trinitarian foundation for mission, where the church sees itself as a participant in God's redemptive mission (*missio Dei*) (Chapter 4, section 4.2.1). The implications of this shift are profound, suggesting a move towards a more inclusive, justice-oriented ministry that directly addresses the root causes of poverty.

Chapter 5 has demonstrated that the NHKA's recent efforts in poverty alleviation, although commendable in their intentions, have often been fragmented and reactive rather than strategically aligned with a broader missional vision (Chapter 5, section 5.4.2). The shift towards a missional ecclesiology would necessitate a deeper theological reflection and practical reorientation of the church's diaconal activities, fostering a more proactive stance towards systemic poverty alleviation.

6.8.3 Challenges and Opportunities

While the potential for transformation through missional ecclesiology is clear, the NHKA faces several challenges. Chapter 3 (section 3.4.10) notes that the church's historical alignment with Afrikaner nationalism and its preservationist stance has created institutional inertia that may resist significant change. Furthermore, the centralised decision-making structures identified in Chapter 5 (section 5.4.3) could impede the flexibility required for a more localised, contextually responsive approach to mission.

Nevertheless, there are substantial opportunities for the NHKA to lead in poverty alleviation. Chapter 2 (section 2.8) emphasises the critical role that faith-based organisations can play in addressing South Africa's

socio-economic challenges. By adopting a missional approach, the NHKA can harness its existing resources, networks, and influence to foster community development and advocate for social justice more effectively.

6.8.4 Broader Ecclesiological Implications

The findings of this study have broader implications for ecclesiology beyond the NHKA. As discussed in Chapter 4 (section 4.5.1), a shift towards missional ecclesiology requires churches to re-evaluate their theological and institutional frameworks. This shift challenges traditional conceptions of the church's role in society, advocating for an ecclesiology that is both theologically grounded and socially engaged. The NHKA's experience could be a model for other churches grappling with similar challenges in post-colonial contexts.

6.8.5 Contribution to Academic Discourse

This thesis contributes to the academic discourse on missional ecclesiology by offering a detailed case study of its application within a specific denominational context. Chapter 1 established the research objectives, focusing on how missional ecclesiology could enhance the NHKA's engagement with poverty (Chapter 1, section 1.5). This study builds on these objectives by integrating historical, theological, and practical analyses, providing insights that extend the understanding of missional ecclesiology in practice.

Furthermore, the research underscores the importance of linking ecclesiology with practical socio-economic challenges. Chapter 2's contextual analysis of poverty and Chapter 3's historical exploration of the NHKA's diaconal efforts underscore that any meaningful ecclesiological shift must address the lived realities of poverty and inequality.

6.8.6 Policy and Practical Implications

The strategic recommendations in Chapter 6 (section 6.5) suggest practical steps for the NHKA to enhance its engagement with poverty by adopting missional ecclesiology. These include decentralising decision-making processes, fostering partnerships, and reorienting diaconal activities towards more sustainable and transformative goals. Implementing these recommendations would revitalise the NHKA's mission and position it as a leading voice in ecclesial responses to socio-economic challenges in South Africa.

6.8.7 Future Trajectories

As Chapter 6 (section 6.7) indicates, further research is needed to explore the long-term impacts of adopting a missional ecclesiology on church growth, community engagement, and social transformation. Comparative studies between different denominations and contexts would provide valuable insights into the broader applicability of these findings.

6.8.8 Final Reflections

In conclusion, this thesis argues that adopting a missional ecclesiology represents a crucial opportunity for the NHKA to redefine its identity and mission in post-apartheid South Africa. By embracing this paradigm, the NHKA can move beyond its historical limitations, positioning itself as a dynamic and responsive force for social transformation. This shift requires courage, creativity, and a willingness to embrace change but holds the promise of profound impact within the church and the wider society it seeks to serve.

Ultimately, the journey towards a missional ecclesiology is about more than theological realignment; it is about embodying a vision of the church that actively participates in God's work of justice, reconciliation, and transformation in the world (Chapter 4, section 4.2.1; Chapter 5, section 5.4.4). The NHKA's experience underscores the potential for faith

communities to play a pivotal role in addressing poverty and inequality, contributing to a more equitable and compassionate society.

References

- Adelzadeh, A., 1996. From the RDP to GEAR: The gradual embracing of neo-liberalism in economic policy. *Transformation*, 31, pp. 66-95.
- African National Congress (ANC), 1994. *The reconstruction and development programme: A policy framework*. Johannesburg: African National Congress by Umanyano Publications.
- Aguero, J.M., Carter, M.R. and Woolard, I., 2006. *The impact of unconditional cash transfers on nutrition: The South African Child Support Grant*. Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit Working Paper No. 06/08. Cape Town: SALDRU. University of Cape Town.
- Alden, C. and le Pere, G., 2004. *South Africa's post-apartheid foreign policy: From reconciliation to ambiguity? Review of African Political Economy*, 31(100), pp. 283-297. <https://doi.org/10.1080/0305624042000262293>.
- Aliber, M. and Cousins, B., 2013. Livelihoods after Land Reform in South Africa. *Journal of Agrarian Change*, 13(1), pp. 140-165. <http://doi.org/10.1111/joac.12012>.
- Aliber, M., 2003. Chronic poverty in South Africa: Incidence, causes and policies. *World Development*, 31(3), pp. 473-490. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0305-750X\(02\)00219-X](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0305-750X(02)00219-X).
- Alkire, S. and Foster, J., 2011. Counting and multidimensional poverty measurement. *Journal of Public Economics*, 95(7-8), pp. 476-487. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpubeco.2010.11.006>.
- Alkire, S., Foster, J., Seth, S., Santos, M., Roche, J. and Ballon, P., 2015. *Multidimensional poverty measurement and analysis*. Oxford: Oxford University Press. <https://doi.org/10.1093/acprof:oso/9780199689491.001.0001>.
- Alkire, S., Jindra, C., Robles Aguilar, G. and Vaz, A., 2017. Multidimensional poverty reduction among countries in sub-Saharan

- Africa. *Forum for Social Economics*, 46(2), pp. 178-191.
<https://doi.org/10.1080/07360932.2017.1310123>.
- Alkire, S., Roche, J.M. and Vaz, A., 2017. Changes over time in multidimensional poverty: Methodology and results for 34 countries. *World Development*, 94, pp. 232-249.
<https://doi.org/10.1016/j.worlddev.2017.01.011>.
- Amoateng, A.Y., Heaton, T.B. and Kalule-Sabiti, I., 2007. Living arrangements in South Africa. In: A.Y. Amoateng and T.B. Heaton, eds. *Families and households in post-apartheid South Africa: Socio-demographic perspectives*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, pp. 43-59.
- Anglican Church of Southern Africa, 2018. Growing the Church. [online] Available at: <https://anglicanchurchsa.org/growing-the-church/> [Accessed 15 August 2024].
- Armstrong, J.C. and Worden, N.A., 1989. The slaves, 1652 – 1834. In: R. Elphick and H. Giliomee, eds. *The shaping of South African society, 1652 – 1840*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Maskew Miller Longman, pp. 181-210.
- Arndt, C., Davies, R., Gabriel, S., Harris, L., Makrelov, K., Modise, B., Robinson, S., Simbanegavi, W., van Seventer, D. and Anderson, L., 2020a. Impact of Covid-19 on the South African economy: An initial analysis. SA-TIED Working Paper 111. Southern Africa–towards inclusive economic development (SA-TIED). Available at: <https://sa-tied.wider.unu.edu/sites/default/files/pdf/SA-TIED-WP-111.pdf> [Accessed 19 August 2024].
- Arndt, C., Davies, R., Gabriel, S., Harris, L., Makrelov, K., Robinson, S., Levy, S., Simbanegavi, W., van Seventer, D. and Anderson, L., 2020b. Covid-19 lockdowns, income distribution, and food security: An analysis for South Africa. *Global Food Security*, 26, p. 100410. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gfs.2020.100410> [Accessed 22 March 2023].
- Arvanitis, A., 2005. Foreign direct investment in South Africa: Why has it been so low? In: M. Nowak and L.A. Ricci, eds. *Post-apartheid South*

- Africa: The first ten years*. Washington, DC: International Monetary Fund, pp. 64-79.
- Ataguba, J.E. and McIntyre, D., 2012. Paying for and receiving benefits from health services in South Africa: Is the health system equitable? *Health Policy and Planning*, 27(Suppl 1), pp. i35-i45. <https://doi.org/10.1093/heapol/czs005>.
- Ataguba, J.E., Akazili, J. and McIntyre, D., 2011. Socioeconomic-related health inequality in South Africa: Evidence from General Household Surveys. *International Journal for Equity in Health*, 10(1), p. 48. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1475-9276-10-48>.
- Balcomb, A., 2014. *Journey into the African Sun: Soundings in Search of Another Way of Being in the World*. Pretoria: Research Institute for Theology and Religion.
- Banerjee, A., Galiani, S., Levinsohn, J., McLaren, Z. and Woolard, I., 2008. Why has unemployment risen in the New South Africa? 1. *Economics of Transition*, 16(4), pp. 715-740. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1468-0351.2008.00340.x>.
- Barnes, J. and Kaplinsky, R., 2000. Globalisation and the death of the local firm? The Automobile Components Sector in South Africa. *Regional Studies*, 34(9), pp. 797-812. <https://doi.org/10.1080/00343400020002949>.
- Baron, E. and Pali, K.J., 2021. The shaping and formation of a missional ecclesiology of township congregations in the Mangaung Metro Municipality during COVID-19. *HTS Teologiese Studies / Theological Studies*, 77(3), p.a6832. <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v77i3.6832> [Accessed 20 March 2023].
- Barth, K., 1956. *Church Dogmatics IV/1: The Doctrine of Reconciliation*. T&T Clark, Edinburgh.
- Barth, K., 1956. *Church Dogmatics IV/1: The Doctrine of Reconciliation*. T&T Clark, Edinburgh.

- Beinart, W. and Delius, P., 2014. The historical context and legacy of the natives land act of 1913. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 40(4), pp. 667-688. Available at: <http://www.jstor.org/stable/24566750> [Accessed 19 August 2024].
- Beinart, W. and Dubow, S. eds., 1995. *Segregation and Apartheid in Twentieth-century South Africa*. London: Routledge.
- Beinart, W., 1982. *The political economy of Pondoland 1860-1930*. (African Studies). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Beinart, W., 1994. *Twentieth-century South Africa*. 1st ed. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Beinart, W., 2001. *Twentieth-century South Africa*. 2nd ed. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Bekker, B., Eberhard, A., Gaunt, T. and Marquard, A., 2008. South Africa's rapid electrification programme: Policy, institutional, planning, financing and technical innovations. *Energy Policy*, 36(8), pp. 3125-3137. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.enpol.2008.04.014>.
- Belhar Confession, 2016. [online] Available at: <http://URCSA.net/wp-content/uploads/2016/02/belhar-belydenis-afrikaans.pdf> [Accessed 15 February 2023].
- Bell, T. and Madula, N., 2001. *Where has all the growth gone? South African manufacturing industry performance between 1970 and 2000*. Braamfontein: National Institute for Economic Policy, pp. 1-72, p. 12.
- Bengtsson, M., 2016. How to plan and perform a qualitative study using content analysis. *NursingPlus Open*, 2, pp. 8-14. Available at: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S2352900816000029> [Accessed 21 Aug. 2024].
- Berry, A., von Blottnitz, M., Cassim, R., Kesper, A., Rajaratnam, B. and van Seventer, D.E., 2002. *The Economics of SMMEs in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Trade and Industrial Policy Strategies.

- Bester, J., 2021. Begeleidingsproses vir gemeentes. *Die Hervormer*, August 2021, Jaargang 114, Nommer 5. Available at: <https://nhka.org/begeleidingsproses-vir-gemeentes/> [Accessed 23 August 2024].
- Beukes, J. and Plaatjies van Huffel, M-A., 2016. Towards a theology of development in the Uniting Reformed Church in Southern Africa (URCSA): Embodying Article 4 of the Belhar Confession. *Missionalia*, 44(2), pp.224-240. Available at: <http://dx.doi.org/10.7832/44-2-138> [Accessed 22 Aug. 2024].
- Bevans, S.B., 2002. *Models of contextual theology*. Maryknoll, NY: Orbis Books.
- Bhorat, H. and Hodge, J., 1999. Decomposing shifts in labour demand in South Africa. *South African Journal of Economics*, 67(3), pp. 155-168.
- Bhorat, H. and Kanbur, R., eds., 2006. *Poverty and policy in post-apartheid South Africa*. 1st ed. Cape Town: HSRC Press. Available at: <https://www.hsrcpress.ac.za/books/poverty-and-policy-in-post-apartheid-south-africa> [Accessed 30 August 2022].
- Bhorat, H. and Kimani, M.E., 2018. The South African labour market, 1995-2015. In: H. Bhorat, A. Hirsch, R. Kanbur and M. Ncube, eds. *The Oxford Companion to the Economics of South Africa*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 199-215.
- Bhorat, H. and Kimani, M.E., 2023. The future of vocational education and training in South Africa: Challenges and opportunities. *Journal of Vocational Education and Training*, 75(2), pp. 62-79.
- Bhorat, H. and Kohler, T., 2020. *Social assistance during South Africa's national lockdown: Examining the COVID-19 grant, changes to the Child Support Grant, and post-October policy options*. Development Policy Research Unit Working Paper 202009. DPRU. University of Cape Town.

- Bhorat, H. and Oosthuizen, M., 2006. Evolution of the labour market: 1995-2002. In: H. Bhorat and R. Kanbur, eds. *Poverty and Policy in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, pp. 143-200.
- Bhorat, H. and Rooney, C., 2017. State of manufacturing in South Africa. *Development Southern Africa*, 34(5), pp. 145-161.
- Bhorat, H. and Rooney, C., 2020. *The Fourth Industrial Revolution and the future of work in South Africa*. In: *Transforming research excellence: New ideas from the Global South*. Cape Town: African Minds, pp. 108-127.
- Bhorat, H., 2004. Labour market challenges in post-apartheid South Africa. *South African Journal of Economics*, 72(5), pp. 940-977.
- Bhorat, H., Cassim, A. and Hirsch, A., 2014. Policy co-ordination and growth traps in a middle-income country setting: The case of South Africa. WIDER Working Paper. <https://doi.org/10.35188/UNU-WIDER/2014/876-6> [Accessed 11 February 2024].
- Bhorat, H., Cassim, A. and Tseng, D., 2016. Higher education, employment and economic growth: Exploring the interactions. *Development Southern Africa*, 33(3), pp. 312-327.
- Bhorat, H., Hirsch, A., Kanbur, R. and Ncube, M., eds., 2014. *The Oxford Companion to the Economics of South Africa*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Bhorat, H., Kanbur, R. and Stanwix, B., 2020. Tackling poverty and inequality in South Africa: Four key policy areas. Development Policy Research Unit Working Paper 202009. Cape Town: DPRU. University of Cape Town.
- Bhorat, H., Lilenstein, K., Oosthuizen, M. and Thornton, A., 2016. Vulnerability in employment: Evidence from South Africa. Working Papers 201604. University of Cape Town, Development Policy Research Unit. Available at: <https://ideas.repec.org/p/ctw/wpaper/201604.html> [Accessed 8 November 2023].

- Bhorat, H., Lilenstein, K., Oosthuizen, M. and Thornton, A., 2020. Wage polarisation in a high-inequality emerging economy: The case of South Africa. *World Development*, 125, p. 104750.
- Bhorat, H., Lilenstein, K., Oosthuizen, M. and Thornton, A., 2023/3. Structural transformation, inequality, and inclusive growth in South Africa. WIDER Working Paper. Helsinki: UNU-WIDER.
- Bhorat, H., Oosthuizen, M. and Stanwix, B., 2021. Social assistance amidst the Covid-19 epidemic in South Africa: A policy assessment. *South African Journal of Economics*, 89(1), pp. 63-81. <https://doi.org/10.1111/saje.12277> [Accessed 16 April 2022].
- Blumenfeld, J., 1997. From icon to scapegoat, 15(1). Experience of South Africa's Reconstruction and Development Programme. *Development Policy Review*, pp. 65-91.
- Bond, P., 2000. *Elite Transition: From Apartheid to Neoliberalism in South Africa*. London: Pluto Press.
- Booyesen, D.J., 1993. *Die Diens van Barmhartigheid*. Pretoria: Kital.
- Bosch, D.J., 1991. *Transforming mission: Paradigm shifts in theology of mission*. Maryknoll, NY: Orbis Books.
- Botes, H.J., 1991. Kerk en volk in die bedeling na 1900. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 47(3), pp.800-809.
- Botha, A.J., 1986. *Die evolusie van 'n volksteologie*. Kaapstad: Place of publication? Universiteit van Wes-Kaapland.
- Botha, S.J., 1993. Kerklike barmhartigheid in die loop van die Kerkgeskiedenis. In: D.J. Booyesen, ed. *Die Diens van Barmhartigheid*. Pretoria: Kital, pp.40-49.
- Botha, S.J., ed., 1989. *Belydende Volkskerk*. Pretoria: Kital.
- Bottomley, E.J., 2012. *Poor white*. Cape Town: Tafelberg.

- Bouma-Prediger, S. and Walsh, B.J., 2008. *Beyond homelessness: Christian faith in a culture of displacement*. Grand Rapids, MI: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing.
- Bowen, G.A., 2009. Document analysis as a qualitative research method. *Qualitative Research Journal*, 9(2), pp.27-40. Available at: <https://doi.org/10.3316/QRJ0902027> [Accessed 21 Aug. 2024].
- Bowers du Toit, N.F. & Nkomo, G., 2014. The ongoing challenge of restorative justice in South Africa: How and why wealthy suburban congregations are responding to poverty and inequality. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 70(2), a2022. Available at: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4102/hts.v70i2.2022> [Accessed 22 Aug. 2024].
- Bowers du Toit, N.F., 2017. Meeting the challenge of poverty and inequality? 'Hindrances and helps' concerning congregational mobilisation in South Africa. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 73(2), a3836. Available at: <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v73i2.3836> [Accessed 22 Aug. 2024].
- Bozzoli, B., 1981. *The political nature of a ruling class: Capital and ideology in South Africa, 1890-1933*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul.
- Bozzoli, B., 1991. *Women of Phokeng: Consciousness, life strategy, and migrancy in South Africa, 1900-1983*. Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann.
- Bradford, H., 1987. *A taste of freedom: The ICU in rural South Africa, 1924-1930*. New Haven: Yale University Press.
- Braun, V. & Clarke, V., 2006. Using thematic analysis in psychology. *Qualitative Research in Psychology*, 3(2), pp. 77-101. Available at: <http://dx.doi.org/10.1191/1478088706qp0630a> [Accessed 21 Aug. 2024].

- Breckenridge, K., 2005. The Biometric State: The Promise and Peril of Digital Government in the New South Africa. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 31(2), 267-282
- Britz, D., 2017. 'Van buite bekyk: Die teologie van die *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika* tussen 1938 en 1950', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 73(1), a4605. [online] Available at: <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v73i1.4605> [Accessed 23 June 2024].
- Budden, C., 2009. *Following Jesus in invaded space: Doing theology on Aboriginal land*. Eugene, OR: Wipf and Stock Publishers.
- Buitendag, J. & Van Wyk, T., 2011. 'Die NHKA op reis na inklusiwiteit I: Die anatomie van 'n gefragmenteerde/eskatologiese ekklesiologie', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 67(3), Art. #1164.
- Buitendag, J., 2006. 'Nuwe wyn in nuwe sakke en die behoud van altwee': 'n Herbedinking van die Hervormde Kerk se identiteit aan die begin van die 21e eeu in Suid-Afrika. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 62(2), pp.343-362.
- Buitendag, J., 2008. Ecclesia reformata semper reformanda – die ongemaklike eis. *HTS Teologiese Studies*, 64(1), pp. 123-138.
- Bundy, C., 1979. *The rise and fall of the South African peasantry*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Burger, R., Christian, C., Maughan-Brown, B., Rensburg, R. and Rossouw, L., 2020. COVID-19 risk perception, knowledge and behaviour. *National Income Dynamics Study (NIDS) – Coronavirus Rapid Mobile Survey (CRAM) Wave, 1*.
- Burger, R., Steenekamp, C.L., van der Berg, S. and Zoch, A., 2015. The emergent middle class in contemporary South Africa: Examining and comparing rival approaches. Working Paper. Department of Economics, University of Stellenbosch. Available at: https://www.researchgate.net/publication/273959152_The_emergent_middle_class_in_contemporary_South_Africa_Examining_and_comparing_rival_approaches [Accessed 24 June 2023].

- Burn, A.E., 1909. *The Nicene Creed*. London: Rivingtons.
- Butler, J., Rotberg, R.I. and Adams, J., 1977. *The black homelands of South Africa: The political and economic development of Bophuthatswana and KwaZulu*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Buys, A.J. and Mbewana, P.N., 2007. Key success factors for business incubation in South Africa: The Godisa case study. *South African Journal of Science*, 103(9-10), pp.356-358. Available at: http://www.scielo.org.za/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0038-23532007000500001&lng=en.
- Buys, P.J. & Jansen, A., 2015. "Met hart en mond en hande": Die integrale bediening van Woord en daad volgens 'n missio Dei-perspektief. *In die Skriflig*, 49(1), Art. #1883.
- Calvin, J., Beveridge, H. and Pitcairn, R., 1845-1846. *Institutes of the Christian religion*. Edinburgh: Calvin Translation Society.
- Cantillon, B., Goedemé, T., and Hills, J., eds., 2023. *COVID-19 in the Global South: Impacts and Responses*. Bristol: Bristol University Press.
- Chabane, N., Goldstein, A. and Roberts, S., 2006. The changing face and strategies of big business in South Africa: More than a decade of political democracy. *Industrial and Corporate Change*, 15(3), pp. 549-577.
- Chambers, R., 1997. *Whose Reality Counts? Putting the First Last*. London: Intermediate Technology Publications.
- Chatterjee, A., Czajka, L. and Gethin, A., 2021. A wealth tax for South Africa. World Inequality Lab-working. Paper, 2.
- Chetty, K., Aneja, U., Mishra, V., Gcora, N. and Josie, J., 2021. Bridging the digital divide in the G20: Skills for the new age. *Economics – The Open-Access, Open-Assessment E-Journal*, 15 (2021-3), pp. 83-97.

- Chibba, M. and Luiz, J.M., 2011. Poverty, inequality and unemployment in South Africa: Context, issues and the way forward. *Economic Papers: A Journal of Applied Economics and Policy*, 30(3), pp. 307-315.
- Chikane, F., 2013. *The Things That Could Not Be Said: From A(IDS) to Z(imbabwe). Africa*. Johannesburg: Picador.
- Chisholm, L., 2005. The making of South Africa's National Curriculum Statement. *Journal of Curriculum Studies*, 37(2), pp. 193-208.
- Christian Reformed Church in North America (CRCNA), 2018. *What issues does the Office of Social Justice (OSJ) work on and why?* [online] Available at: <https://support.crcna.org/hc/en-us/articles/360005469393-What-issues-does-the-Office-of-Social-Justice-OSJ-work-on-and-why> [Accessed 22 Aug. 2024].
- Christian Reformed Church in North America (CRCNA), 2022. About Us. [online] Available at: <https://www.crcna.org/justice/about-us> [Accessed 22 Aug. 2024].
- Christian Reformed Church in North America, 2022. Office of Social Justice. [online] Available at: <https://www.crcna.org/justice> [Accessed 15 August 2024].
- Christie, P. and Collins, C., 1982. Bantu education: Apartheid ideology or labour reproduction? *Comparative Education*, 18(1), pp. 59-75.
- Christopher, A.J., 2001. Urban Segregation in Post-apartheid South Africa. *Urban Studies*, 38(3), pp. 449-466.
- Cilliers, J. and Aucoin, C., 2016. Economics, governance and instability in South Africa. *SSRN Electronic Journal*, 293, pp. 1-24.
- Cirolia, L.R., 2014. South Africa's Emergency Housing Programme: A prism of urban contest. *Development Southern Africa*, 31(3), pp. 397-411.
- Clark, N.L. and Worger, W.H., 2016. *South Africa: The rise and fall of apartheid*. 3rd ed. London: Routledge.

- Cleary, S., Erasmus, E., Gilson, L., Michel, J., Orgill, M. and Scott, V., 2023. Health policy analysis in South Africa: Critical reflections from the first decades of democracy. *Health Policy and Planning*, 38(1), pp. 108-121.
- Coetzee, M., 2013. Finding the Benefits: Estimating the Impact of The South African Child Support Grant. *South African Journal of Economics*, 81(3), pp. 427-450.
- Coovadia, H., Jewkes, R., Barron, P., Sanders, D. and McIntyre, D., 2009. The health and health system of South Africa: Historical roots of current public health challenges. *The Lancet*, 374(9692), pp.817-834. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736\(09\)60951-X](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(09)60951-X) [Accessed 10 April 2023].
- Cousins, B. and Scoones, I., 2010. Contested paradigms of 'viability' in redistributive land reform: Perspectives from southern Africa. *The Journal of Peasant Studies*, 37(1), pp. 31-66.
- Cousins, B., 2007. More than socially embedded: The distinctive character of 'communal tenure' regimes in South Africa and its implications for land policy. *Journal of Agrarian Change*, 7(3), pp. 281-315.
- Crankshaw, O., 1997. *Race, class and the changing division of labour under apartheid*. London: Routledge.
- Crawford, N.C. and Klotz, A. eds., 1999. *How sanctions work: Lessons from South Africa*. New York: St. Martin's Press.
- Cray, G., 2009. *Mission-shaped church: Church planting and fresh expressions of church in a changing context*. London: Church House Publishing.
- Cross, C., 2001. Why does South Africa need a spatial policy? Population migration, infrastructure and development. *Journal of Contemporary African Studies*, 19(1), pp. 111-127.

- Crush, J., 1994. Scripting the compound: Power and space in the South African mining industry. *Environment and Planning D: Society and Space*, 12(3), pp. 301-324.
- Crush, J., Jeeves, A. and Yudelman, D., 1991. *South Africa's labor empire: A history of black migrancy to the gold mines*. Boulder: Westview Press.
- Davenport, T.R.H. and Saunders, C., 2000. *South Africa: A modern history*. 5th ed. London: Macmillan Press.
- David, A., Guilbert, N., Hamaguchi, N., Higashi, Y., Hino, H., Leibbrandt, M. and Shifa, M., 2018. Spatial poverty and inequality in South Africa: A municipality level analysis. SALDRU Working Paper No. 221. Cape Town: SALDRU. University of Cape Town.
- Davies, R., 1979. *Capital, state and white labour in South Africa 1900-1960: An historical materialist analysis of class formation and class relations*. Brighton: Harvester Press.
- Delport, J.M., 1976. *Aanbevelings vir 'n doeltreffender funksionering van die kerklike barmhartigheidsdiens*. An unpublished independent study was submitted in partial fulfilment of the requirements for the Baccalaureus Divinitatis degree, Faculty of Theology (Section A), University of Pretoria.
- Department of Finance, 1996. *Growth, Employment and Redistribution: A Macroeconomic Strategy*. Pretoria: Government printer.
- Department of Public Works, 2019. *Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) Quarterly Report for the period 1 April - 31 March Financial Year 2018/19*. Pretoria: Department of Public Works.
- Department of Social Development, 2023. *Social grants statistical report*. Pretoria: Government printer.
- Desmond, C., 1971. *The discarded people: An account of African resettlement in South Africa*. Harmondsworth: Penguin.
- Devereux, S. and Waidler, J., 2017. Why does malnutrition persist in South Africa despite social grants? Food Security SA Working Paper

- Series No.001. DST-NRF Centre of Excellence in Food Security, South Africa.
- Devereux, S., 2011. Social protection in South Africa: Exceptional or exceptionalism? *Canadian Journal of Development Studies/Revue Canadienne d'Études du Développement*, 32(4), pp. 414-425.
- Dooling, W., 2007. *Slavery, emancipation and colonial rule in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- Dreyer, J., 1939, 'Gelykstelling', *Die Hervormer*, XXVIII(48), 1, 3. Argief van die *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika*, Pretoria.
- Dreyer, J., 1942, 'Eeufeesgedagtes', *Die Hervormer*, XXXIII(85), pp. 2-4. Argief van die *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika*, Pretoria.
- Dreyer, J., 1944, 'Volkskerk', *Die Hervormer*, XXXVI(1), p. 1. Argief van die *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika*, Pretoria.
- Dreyer, J.G.M., 1937, 'Doleansie vrugte', in Dreyer, Joh. (Red.), *Almanak van die Nederduits Hervormde Kerk van Afrika 1937*, Jaargang 31, pp. 140–152, Algemene Vergadering van die Nederduits Hervormde Kerk, Pretoria.
- Dreyer, T.F.J., 2009. 'n Kerk met karakter: Die perspektief van Gerben Heitink. *HTS Teologiese Studies*, 65(1), Art. #315.
- Dreyer, W., 2016a, 'Church, mission and ethics. Being a church with integrity', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies* 72(1), a3163. [online] Available at: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4102/hts.v72i1.3163> [Accessed 8 November 2022].
- Dreyer, W.A, 2016b. Church, mission and ethics: Being church with integrity. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 72(1), a3163. Available at: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4102/hts.v72i1.3163> [Accessed 22 August 2024].
- Dreyer, W.A. and Pillay, J., 2017. Historical theology: Content, methodology and relevance. *Verbum et Ecclesia*, 38(4), pp.117-131. <https://doi.org/10.4102/ve.v38i4.1680> [Accessed 27 June 2021].

- Dreyer, W.A., 2005. 'Church and government in Reformed perspective', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 61(3), pp.883-893. [online] Available at: <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v61i3.4626> [Accessed 19 July 2023].
- Dreyer, W.A., 2006. Die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika as volkskerk: Oorsig en herbesinning. *HTS Teologiese Studies / Theological Studies*, 62(4), pp.1337-1359. <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v62i4.415>.
- Dreyer, W.A., 2011a. Praktiese Ekklesiologie en Bedieningspraktyk. Met verwysing na die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis. University of Pretoria.
- Dreyer, W.A., 2011b. Journey from isolation. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 67(1), Art. #869, 9 pages. DOI: 10.4102/hts.v67i1.869.
- Dreyer, W.A., 2013. Die Hervormde Kerk en apartheid. *HTS Teologiese Studies / Theological Studies*, 69(1), Art. #1944, 7 pages. <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v69i1.1944> [Accessed 12 February 2022].
- Dreyer, W.A., 2015. 'The real crisis of the church', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 71(3), Art. #2822, pp.1-5. [online] Available at: <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v71i3.2822> [Accessed 26 August 2023].
- Dreyer, W.A., 2016. *Praktiese Ekklesiologie – Kerkwees in die 21ste Eeu*. Cape Town: AOSIS. <http://doi.org/10.4102/aosis.2016.pe06> [Accessed 15 January 2024].
- Dreyer, W.A., 2017. Teaching Historical Theology at the University of Pretoria – Some introductory remarks. *HTS Teologiese Studies / Theological Studies*, 73(4), p.a4596. <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v73i4.4596> [Accessed 22 September 2021].
- Dreyer, W.A., 2018. "Marginalia" by die teologie van Natie van Wyk. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 74(4), a5209. [online]

Available at: <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v74i4.5209> [Accessed 14 December 2023].

Dreyer, W.A., 2020a. 'The priesthood of believers: The forgotten legacy of the reformation', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 76(4), a6021. [online] Available at: <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v76i4.6021> [Accessed 11 January 2024].

Dreyer, W.A., 2020b. Missional ecclesiology in the Afrikaans reformed churches since 1990. *Stellenbosch Theological Journal*, 6(3), pp.249-276. <http://dx.doi.org/10.17570/stj.2020.v6n3.a8> [Accessed 18 November 2022].

Dreyer, W.A., 2024. *Geskiedenis van die Hervormde Kerk 1824–2024*. Pretoria: Hervormde Teologiese Kollege.

DSD, SASSA and UNICEF, 2012. The South African Child Support Grant Impact Assessment: Evidence from a survey of children, adolescents and their households. Pretoria: UNICEF South Africa.

DSD, SASSA and UNICEF, 2016. Removing barriers to accessing Child Support Grants: Progress in reducing exclusion from South Africa's flagship social protection programme. Pretoria: UNICEF South Africa. Available at: <https://www.unicef.org/southafrica/media/556/file/ZAF-Removing-barriers-to-child-support-grants-2016.pdf> [Accessed 20 Aug. 2024].

Du Plooy, A.Le R., 1982. *Kerkverband. 'n Gereformeerde-Kerkregtelike Studie*. Unpublished Th.D. thesis. Department of Practical Theology. Potchefstroom: PU vir CHO.

Dubow, S., 1992. Afrikaner nationalism, apartheid and the conceptualization of 'race'. *The Journal of African History*, 33(2), pp. 209-237.

Dubow, S., 2014. *Apartheid, 1948-1994*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Dulles, A. and Granfield, P., 1999. *The Theology of the Church: A Bibliography*. New York: Paulist Press.

- Dutney, A., 2011. A genuinely Australian church: Ecclesiology in the Uniting Church in Australia. *Uniting Church Studies*, 17(1), pp.81-98.
- Edwards, L. and Lawrence, R.Z., 2008. South African trade policy matters: Trade performance and trade policy. *Economics of Transition*, 16(4), pp.585-608.
- ELCA, 2020. *ELCA World Hunger*. [online] Available at: <https://www.elca.org/Our-Work/Relief-and-Development/ELCA-World-Hunger> [Accessed 15 Aug. 2024].
- Elphick, R. and Giliomee, H., 1989. *The Shaping of South African Society*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Maskew Miller Longman.
- Engelbrecht, B.J., 1957. Die Amp van die Diaken. Krugersdorp: NHW-PERS. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- Engelbrecht, E., 1971. 'Diakonein. Bybelse agtergrond van die barmhartigheidsdiens van die kerk en die amp van die diaken', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 27(1/2), pp.47-79.
- Engelbrecht, F., Adegoke, J., Bopape, M.J., Naidoo, M., Garland, R., Thatcher, M., McGregor, J., Katzfey, J., Werner, M., Ichoku, C. and Gatebe, C., 2020. Projections of rapidly rising surface temperatures over Africa under low mitigation. *Environmental Research Letters*, 15(8), p. 085004.
- Engelbrecht, S.P., 1941, 'Die Ned. Hervormde Kerk en die politiek', in Engelbrecht, S.P. (Red.), *Almanak van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika 1941*, Jaargang 35, pp. 103–109, Algemene Vergadering van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk, Pretoria.
- Evenett, S.J., 2002. The impact of economic sanctions on South African exports. *Scottish Journal of Political Economy*, 49(5), pp. 557-573.
- Fatoki, O., 2014. The role of small and medium enterprises in alleviating the development challenges facing South Africa. *Mediterranean Journal of Social Sciences*, 5(23), pp.270-277.

<https://doi.org/10.5901/mjss.2014.v5n23p270> [Accessed 2 February 2023].

Fedderke, J. and Vaze, P., 2001. The nature of South Africa's trade patterns by economic sector, and the extent of trade liberalization during the course of the 1990s. *South African Journal of Economics*, 69(3), pp. 436-478.

Feinstein, C.H., 2005. *An economic history of South Africa: Conquest, discrimination, and development*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Feit, E., 1975. *Workers without weapons: The South African Congress of Trade Unions and the organization of the African workers*. Hamden: Archon Books.

Fine, B. and Rustomjee, Z., 1996. *The political economy of South Africa: From minerals-energy complex to industrialisation*. London: Hurst & Company.

Finn, A. and Leibbrandt, M., 2017. *The dynamics of poverty in South Africa*. SALDRU Working Paper 174/NIDS Discussion Paper 2016/1. Cape Town: Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit (SALDRU), University of Cape Town.

Finn, A. and Leibbrandt, M., 2018. *The evolution and determination of earnings inequality in post-apartheid South Africa*. WIDER Working Paper 2018/83. Helsinki: UNU-WIDER. Available at: <https://doi.org/10.35188/UNU-WIDER/2018/525-1> [Accessed 20 August 2024].

Finn, A., Leibbrandt, M. and Levinsohn, J., 2012. *Income Mobility in South Africa: Evidence from the First Two Waves of the National Income Dynamics Study*. SALDRU Working Paper No. 82. Cape Town: Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit, University of Cape Town.

Finn, A., Leibbrandt, M. and Ranchhod, V., 2016. Patterns of persistence: Intergenerational mobility and education in South Africa. SALDRU

- Working Paper No. 175/NIDS Discussion Paper 2016/2. Cape Town: Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit, University of Cape Town.
- Finn, A., Leibbrandt, M. and Woolard, I., 2013. What happened to multidimensional poverty in South Africa between 1993 and 2010? SALDRU Working Paper No. 99. Cape Town: Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit, University of Cape Town.
- Fiske, E.B. and Ladd, H.F., 2004. *Elusive equity: Education reform in post-apartheid South Africa*. Washington, DC: Brookings Institution Press.
- Forster, D.A., 2015. What hope is there for South Africa? A public theological reflection on the role of the church as a bearer of hope for the future. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 71(3), a2814.
- Frame, E., De Lannoy, A. and Leibbrandt, M., 2016. Measuring multidimensional poverty among youth in South Africa at the sub-national level. Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit Working Paper No. 169. Cape Town: SALDRU. University of Cape Town.
- Francis, D. and Valodia, I., 2018. Minimum wage: A question of power. *New Agenda: South African Journal of Social and Economic Policy*, 71, pp. 34-39.
- Frankel, P., 1984. *Pretoria's praetorians: Civil-military relations in South Africa*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Friedman, S., 1987. *Building tomorrow today: African workers in trade unions, 1970-1984*. Johannesburg: Ravan Press.
- Frost, M. and Hirsch, A., 2003. *The shaping of things to come: Innovation and mission for the 21st-century church*. Peabody, MA: Hendrickson Publishers.
- Gasa, N. ed., 2007. *Women in South African history: They remove boulders and cross rivers*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

- Gelb, S. (ed.), 1991. *South Africa's economic crisis*. Cape Town: David Philip.
- Gelb, S. and Black, A., 2004. Foreign direct investment in South Africa. In: S. Estrin and K.E. Meyer, eds. *Investment Strategies in Emerging Markets*. Cheltenham: Edward Elgar, pp. 177-212.
- Gelb, S., 1991. *South Africa's economic crisis: An overview*. In: S. Gelb, ed. *South Africa's economic crisis*. Cape Town: David Philip, pp. 1-32.
- Gelb, S., 2003. *Inequality in South Africa: Nature, Causes and Responses*. Johannesburg: EDGE Institute.
- Geyser, A.S., 1960, 'Christelike godsdiens en eiesoortige ontwikkeling. 'n Beoordeling van die boek van Prof. Dr A.B. du Preez, Eiesoortige ontwikkeling tot volksdiens, H.A.U.M., Pretoria, 1959', *Hervormde Teologiese Studies*, 16(1), pp. 1–30.
- Giliomee, H. and Schlemmer, L., 1989. *From apartheid to nation-building: Contemporary South African debates*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Giliomee, H., 2003. *The Afrikaners: Biography of a People*. Cape Town: Tafelberg.
- Giliomee, H., 2004. *Die Afrikaners: 'n Biografie*. Kaapstad: Tafelberg Uitgewers.
- GKSA (Gereformeerde Kerke in Suid-Afrika), 2003. *Acta van die Nasionale Sinode*. Sl.
- GKSA (Gereformeerde Kerke in Suid-Afrika), 2012. *Agenda van die Algemene Sinode*. Sl.
- GKSA (Gereformeerde Kerke in Suid-Afrika), 2019. *GKSA Kerkorde*, GKSA KO Artikel 25. [online] Available at: <http://www.cjbf.co.za/kerkorde/kerkorde.html> [Accessed 18 September 2023].

- Goheen, M.W., 2018. *The Church and Its Vocation: Lesslie Newbigin's Missionary Ecclesiology*. Grand Rapids: Baker Academic.
- Goodhew, D., Roberts, A. and Volland, M., 2012. *Fresh!: An introduction to fresh expressions of church and pioneer ministry*. London: SCM Press.
- Gqubule, D., 2019. 'Job creation and inclusive growth in South Africa'. *Business Day* [online]. Available at: <https://www.businesslive.co.za> [Accessed 20 August 2024].
- Graham, L. and De Lannoy, A., 2016. Youth unemployment: What can we do in the short run? *Economía3x3*.
- Grundlingh, A., 1983. *Die Hendsoppers en Joiners: Die Rasionaal en Verskynsel van Verraad*. Pretoria: Human & Rousseau.
- Guder, D.L., 2000. *The continuing conversion of the church*. Grand Rapids, MI: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co.
- Guder, D.L., ed., 1998. *Missional Church: A Vision for the Sending of the Church in North America*. Grand Rapids, MI: William B Eerdmans Publishing Company.
- Gumede, V., 2018. Social policy for inclusive development in Africa. *Third World Quarterly*, 39(1), pp. 122-139.
- Habib, A. and Padayachee, V., 2000. Economic policy and power relations in South Africa's transition to democracy. *World Development*, 28(2), pp. 245-263.
- Habib, A., 2013. *South Africa's Suspended Revolution: Hopes and Prospects*. Athens, OH: Ohio University Press.
- Hall, K. and Sambu, W., 2016. Income poverty, unemployment and social grants. *South African Child Gauge*, 2016, pp. 107-113.
- Hall, R. and Kepe, T., 2022. Land reform and agrarian change in South Africa: 25 years after democracy. In: *Oxford Handbook of South African Politics*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 98-114.

- Hall, R., 2004. A political economy of land reform in South Africa. *Review of African Political Economy*, 31(100), pp. 213-227.
- Harris, B., Goudge, J., Ataguba, J.E., McIntyre, D., Nxumalo, N., Jikwana, S. and Chersich, M., 2011. Inequities in access to health care in South Africa. *Journal of Public Health Policy*, 32(1)(Suppl 1), pp. S102-S123.
- Heitink, G., 1999. *Practical Theology: History, Theory, Action Domains: Manual for Practical Theology*. Grand Rapids, MI: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing.
- Heitink, G., 2007. *Een Kerk Met Karakter. Tijd voor Heroriëntatie*. Kampen: Kok.
- Helland, R. and Hjalmarson, L., 2011. *Missional spirituality: Embodying God's love from the inside out*. Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity Press.
- Hemson, D., 2015. Mid-term review of the expanded public works programme: Component 3: Analysis and review. Pretoria: Human Sciences Research Council.
- Hendriks, H.J., 2007. Missional theology and social development. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 63(3), pp.999-1016.
- Hendriks, H.J., 2009. Trauma and conflict as prerequisites for identity transformation: Lessons from the South African Partnership for Missional Churches. *Nederduitse Gereformeerde Teologiese Tydskrif*, 50(1-2), pp.109-119.
- Herbst, A.B.v.N., 1975. *Die diakonale versorging van die ontwrigte kinders*. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 31(3/4), pp.188-194.
- Herbst, J. and Mills, G., 2015. *How South Africa Works: And Must Do Better*. Johannesburg: Pan Macmillan, pp.34-36.

- Hiebert, P.G., 1987. Critical contextualisation. *International Bulletin of Missionary Research*, 11(3), pp.104-112.
- Hirsch, A., 2005. *Season of Hope: Economic Reform under Mandela and Mbeki*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- Hirsch, A., 2006. *The Forgotten Ways: Reactivating the Missional Church*. Grand Rapids: Brazos Press.
- Hirson, B., 1979. *Year of fire, year of ash: The Soweto revolt: Roots of a revolution?* London: Zed Book Company.
- Hofmeyr, I., 1987. Building a nation from words: Afrikaans language, literature and ethnic identity, 1902-1924. In: S. Marks and S. Trapido, eds. *The politics of race, class and nationalism in twentieth-century South Africa*. London: Longman, pp. 95-123.
- Hogema, J., 2011. Social justice in the Christian Reformed Church: The Office of Social Justice. In: J.D. Payne and J.V. Liederbach, eds. *Everyday mission: How ordinary people can change the world*. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Books. pp.129-142.
- Hooker, P., 2008. What is Missional Ecclesiology? [online] Available at: <https://www.presbyterianmission.org/wp-content/uploads/missionalecclesiology.pdf> [Accessed 15 March 2024].
- Jack, V. and Harris, K., 2007. *Broad-Based BEE: The Complete Guide*. Cape Town: Frontrunner Publishing.
- Jain, H. and Subramanian, A., 2018. Demand for household sanitation: The case of India. *Economic and Political Weekly*, 53(23), p. 59.
- Jain, R., Budlender, J., Zizzamia, R. and Bassier, I., 2020. The labour market and poverty impacts of COVID-19 in South Africa. NIDS-CRAM Working Paper.

- Janse van Rensburg, J.J. and Ngandu, S., 2021. The promise of the digital economy to address poverty and inequality in South Africa. *Development Southern Africa*, 38(2), pp. 197-214.
- Jansen, J.D., 1998. Curriculum Reform in South Africa: A Critical Analysis of Outcomes-Based Education. *Cambridge Journal of Education*, 28(3), pp. 321-331.
- Jeeves, A. and Crush, J. eds., 1995. White farms, black labor: The state and agrarian change in southern Africa, 1910-50. Portsmouth, NH: Heinemann.
- Johnson, R.W., 2009. *South Africa's Brave New World: The Beloved Country Since the End of Apartheid*. London: Penguin Books.
- Johnstone, F.A., 1976. *Class, race and gold: A study of class relations and racial discrimination in South Africa*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul.
- Jones, S. and Müller, A., 1992. *The South African economy, 1910-90*. London: Macmillan.
- Jonsson, G. and Subramanian, A., 2001. Dynamic Gains from Trade: Evidence from South Africa. *IMF Staff Papers*, 48(1), pp. 197-224.
- Kallaway, P. ed., 1984. *Apartheid and education: The education of black South Africans*. Johannesburg: Ravan Press.
- Kane-Berman, J., 1978. *Soweto: Black revolt, white reaction*. Johannesburg: Ravan Press.
- Kaplinisky, R., 2013. *Globalization, poverty and inequality: Between a rock and a hard place*. Cambridge: Polity Press.
- Karar, E. ed., 2018. Water security, governance and economic growth in South Africa. Dordrecht: Springer.
- Kärkkäinen, V.M., 2002. *An Introduction to Ecclesiology: Ecumenical, Historical and Global Perspectives*. Downers Grove, IL: InterVarsity Press.

- Katts, D.J., 2015. The formation of a 'volkskerk' in South Africa: A critical church historical perspective. *Studia Historiae Ecclesiasticae*, 41(2), pp.69-81.
- Keegan, T., 1996. *Colonial South Africa and the origins of the racial order*. 1st ed. Charlottesville: University of Virginia Press.
- Kgatlhe, M.S., 2020. The relationship between the economic strand of contemporary Pentecostalism and neo-liberalism in post-1994 South Africa. *Religions*, 11(4), p.156. <https://doi.org/10.3390/rel11040156> [Accessed 29 December 2022].
- Kharas, H., 2010. The emerging middle class in developing countries. OECD Development Centre Working Paper No. 285. Paris: OECD Publishing.
- Kingdon, G.G. and Knight, J., 2004. Unemployment in South Africa: The nature of the beast. *World Development*, 32(3), pp. 391-408.
- Kingdon, G.G. and Knight, J., 2007. Unemployment in South Africa, 1995-2003: Causes, problems and policies. *Journal of African Economies*, 16(5), pp. 813-848.
- Kinghorn, J., 1990. The theology of separate equality: A critical outline of the DRC's position on apartheid. In: M. Prozesky, ed. *Christianity amidst apartheid*. London: Macmillan, pp. 57-80.
- Klasen, S. and Woolard, I., 2009. Surviving unemployment without state support: Unemployment and household formation in South Africa. *Journal of African Economies*, 18(1), pp. 1-51.
- Klasen, S., 2000. Measuring poverty and deprivation in South Africa. *Review of Income and Wealth*, 46(1), pp. 33-58.
- Knoetze, J.J., 2023. Enkele teologiese uitdagings rakende diakonia in van die Afrikaanse Suid-Afrikaanse kerke. *Verbum et Ecclesia*, 44(1), a2775.
- Knoetze, J.J., 2023. Enkele teologiese uitdagings rakende diakonia in van die Afrikaanse Suid-Afrikaanse kerke. *Verbum et Ecclesia*, 44(1),

- p.a2775. <https://doi.org/10.4102/ve.v44i1.2775> [Accessed 4 March 2024].
- Köhler, T. and Bhorat, H., 2021. COVID-19, social protection, and the labour market in South Africa: Are social grants being targeted at the most vulnerable? Development Policy Research Unit Working Paper 202108. Cape Town: DPRU. University of Cape Town.
- Kok, P., O'Donovan, M., Bouare, O. and Van Zyl, J., 2003. *Post-apartheid patterns of internal migration in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Koma, S.B., 2014. Conceptualisation and contextualisation of corporate governance in the South African public sector: Issues, trends and prospects. *Journal of Public Administration*, 49(4), pp. 1018-1033.
- Korten, D.C., 1990. *Getting to the 21st century: Voluntary action and the global agenda*. West Hartford, CT: Kumarian Press.
- Kotter, J.P., 1996. *Leading Change*. Boston: Harvard Business Review Press.
- Kraak, A., 2008. A critical review of the National Skills Development Strategy in South Africa. *Journal of Vocational Education and Training*, 60(1), pp. 1-18.
- Kraemer, H., 1960. *Het vergeten ambt in de kerk*. 's-Gravenhage: Boekencentrum, N.V.
- Krikler, J., 2005. *White rising: The 1922 insurrection and racial killing in South Africa*. Manchester: Manchester University Press.
- Krippendorff, K., 2019. *Content analysis*. SAGE Publications, Inc. Available at: <https://doi.org/10.4135/9781071878781> [Accessed 21 Aug. 2024].
- Kritzinger, J.J. and Saayman, W., 1994. *On Being Witnesses*. Halfway House: Orion Publishers.

- Kritzinger, J.N.J., 2013. Mission in prophetic dialogue. *Missiology: An International Review*, 41(1), pp.35-49.
- Küng, H., 1976. *The Church*. 6th ed. Garden City, NY: Image Books.
- Küng, H., 1978. *On Being a Christian*. Garden City, NY: Doubleday.
- Kuyper, A., 2013. *Rooted & Grounded: The Church as Organism and Institution*. Grand Rapids, MI: Christian's Library Press.
- Kuyper, A., 2015. *Our Program: A Christian Political Manifesto*. Bellingham, WA: Lexham Press.
- Kuperus, T., 2018. The political influence and activism of the Christian Reformed Church. In: D.R. Haight and M.F. Hager, eds. *Christianity and sociopolitical concerns in Kenya and beyond*. Nairobi: Twaweza Communications. pp.203-222.
- Lahiff, E., 2007. "Willing buyer, willing seller": South Africa's failed experiment in market-led agrarian reform. *Third World Quarterly*, 28(8), pp. 1577-1597.
- Lahiff, E., 2008. Land reform in South Africa: A status report 2008. Research Reports 38. Cape Town: Programme for Land and Agrarian Studies, place of publication? University of the Western Cape.
- Le Grange, L.I., 2000. Maintenance technology transfer in the South African aviation industry. Dissertation (M.Eng.). University of Pretoria.
- Leibbrandt, M. and Woolard, I., 2022. Social protection in a changing world of work: Insights from South Africa. *International Social Security Review*, 75(2), pp. 33-52.
- Leibbrandt, M., Finn, A. and Woolard, I., 2012. Describing and decomposing post-apartheid income inequality in South Africa. *Development Southern Africa*, 29(1), pp. 19-34.
- Leibbrandt, M., Finn, A. and Woolard, I., 2019. Inequality in South Africa. In: E. Aryeetey and R. Kanbur, eds. *The Oxford Handbook of the South African Economy*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 230-245.

- Leibbrandt, M., Woolard, I. and Ranchhod, V., 2021. Poverty and inequality in South Africa: A twenty-five year review. In: *Oxford Handbook of the South African Economy*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 71-89.
- Leibbrandt, M., Woolard, I., Finn, A. and Argent, J., 2010. Trends in South African income distribution and poverty since the fall of apartheid. OECD social, employment and migration Working Papers, No. 101. Paris: OECD Publishing.
- Levy, P.I., 1999. Sanctions on South Africa: What did they do? *American Economic Review*, 89(2), pp. 415-420.
- Link, C., 1999. Toward the future of Reformed Theology. In: D. Willis and M. Welker, eds. *Toward the Future of Reformed Theology: Tasks, Topics, Traditions*. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans, pp.45-60.
- Lipton, M., 1986. *Capitalism and apartheid: South Africa, 1910-1986*. Aldershot: Wildwood House.
- Lodge, T., 1983. *Black politics in South Africa since 1945*. London and New York: Longman.
- Lodge, T., 2011. *Sharpeville: An apartheid massacre and its consequences*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Louw, P.E., 2004. *The rise, fall, and legacy of apartheid*. Westport: Praeger.
- Lowenberg, A.D. and Kaempfer, W.H., 1998. *The origins and demise of South African apartheid: A public choice analysis*. Ann Arbor: University of Michigan Press.
- Lund, F., 2008. *Changing Policy: The Child Support Grant in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Maartens, T., 2023. Prinsipiële uitgangspunte ten opsigte van kindersorg in die Ned. Hervormde van Afrika. MDiv Dissertation, University of Pretoria.

- Mabena, N. and Marwala, T., 2021. Prospects and challenges of the Fourth Industrial Revolution for the South African economy. In: *The Oxford Handbook of the South African Economy*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 209-226.
- Mabin, A., 1990. Limits of urban transition models in understanding South African urbanisation. *Development Southern Africa*, 7(3), pp. 311-322.
- Mabin, A., 1992. Comprehensive segregation: The origins of the Group Areas Act and its planning apparatuses. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 18(2), pp. 405-429.
- Makhaya, G. and Roberts, S., 2013. Expectations and outcomes: Considering competition and corporate power in South Africa under democracy. *Review of African Political Economy*, 40(138), pp. 556-571.
- Mamdani, M., 1996. *Citizen and subject: Contemporary Africa and the legacy of late colonialism*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.
- Mamobolo, M. and Moyo, T., 2014. The National Development Plan (NDP): A comparative analysis with the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP), the Growth, Employment and Redistribution (GEAR) programme and the Accelerated and Shared-Growth Initiative (ASGISA). *Journal of Public Administration*, 49(3), pp. 946-959.
- Mangayi, L.C., 2019, 'The Baptist Union of South Africa's mission orientation needs transformation: A scrutiny by an insider', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 75(4), a5551. <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v75i4.5551>.
- Mannion, G. and Mudge, L.S., eds., 2010. *The Routledge Companion to the Christian Church*. New York: Routledge.
- Marais, H., 2011. *South Africa Pushed to the Limit: The Political Economy of Change*. Claremont: UCT Press.

- Marais, H., 2011. *South Africa pushed to the limit: The political economy of change*. London: Zed Books.
- Marks, S. and Trapido, S. eds., 1987. *The politics of race, class and nationalism in twentieth-century South Africa*. London: Longman.
- Matuku, S. and Kaseke, E., 2014. The role of stokvels in improving people's lives: The case in Orange Farm, Johannesburg, South Africa. *Social Work/Maatskaplike Werk*, 50(4). <https://doi.org/10.15270/50-4-388> [Accessed 10 February 2022].
- Mathole, E.M.K., 2005. *The Christian witness in the context of poverty: With special reference to the South African Charismatic Evangelicals*. PhD thesis. University of Pretoria.
- May, J. and Woolard, I., 2007. Poverty traps and structural poverty in South Africa: Reassessing the evidence from KwaZulu-Natal. Chronic Poverty Research Centre Working Paper No. 82. SSRN Electronic Journal.
- May, J. ed., 2000. *Poverty and inequality in South Africa: Meeting the challenge*. London: Zed Books.
- May, J., 2012. Smoke and mirrors? The science of poverty measurement and its application. *Development Southern Africa*, 29(1), pp. 63-75.
- May, J., Witten, C. and Lake, L. eds., 2020. *South African Child Gauge 2020*. Cape Town: Children's Institute, University of Cape Town.
- Maylam, P., 1995. Explaining the apartheid city: 20 years of South African urban historiography. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 21(1), pp. 19-38.
- Maylam, P., 2001. *South Africa's racial past: The history and historiography of racism, segregation, and apartheid*. Aldershot: Ashgate.
- McCord, A., 2003. An overview of the performance and potential of Public Works Programmes in South Africa. CSSR Working Paper No. 49. Cape Town: Centre for Social Science Research, University of Cape Town.

- McCord, A., 2004. Policy expectations and programme reality: The poverty reduction and labour market impact of two public works programmes in South Africa. ESAU Working Paper 8. London: Overseas Development Institute.
- McGrath, A.E., 2001. *Christian Theology: An Introduction*. 3rd ed. Oxford: Blackwell.
- McKnight, J. and Kretzmann, J., 1993. *Building Communities from the Inside Out: A Path Toward Finding and Mobilizing a Community's Assets*. Evanston, IL: Institute for Policy Research.
- Meredith, M., 2007. *Diamonds, gold, and war: The British, the Boers, and the making of South Africa*. New York: Public Affairs.
- Meth, C. and Dias, R., 2004. Increases in poverty in South Africa, 1999-2002. *Development Southern Africa*, 21(1), pp. 59-85.
- Meth, C., 2004. Ideology and Social Policy: 'Handouts' and the spectre of 'dependency'. *Transformation: Critical Perspectives on Southern Africa*, 56(1), pp. 1-30.
- Meth, C., 2011. Employer of last resort? South Africa's expanded public works programme (EPWP). Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit Working Paper No. 58. Cape Town: SALDRU. University of Cape Town.
- Michie, J. and Padayachee, V., 1998. Three years after apartheid: Growth, employment and redistribution? *Cambridge Journal of Economics*, 22(5), pp. 623-635.
- Mlatsheni, C. and Ranchhod, V., 2017. Youth labour market dynamics in South Africa: Evidence from NIDS 1-2-3. REDI3x3 Working Paper 39. Cape Town: SALDRU, University of Cape Town.
- Moltmann, J., 1977. *The Church in the Power of the Spirit*. London: SCM Press.
- Moodie, T.D., 1975. *The rise of Afrikanerdom: Power, apartheid, and the Afrikaner civil religion*. Berkeley: University of California Press.

- Moodie, T.D., 1994. *Going for gold: Men, mines, and migration*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Morrell, R. ed., 1992. *White but poor: Essays on the history of poor whites in Southern Africa 1880-1940*. Pretoria: University of South Africa.
- Mosoetsa, S., 2011. *Eating from one pot: The dynamics of survival in poor South African households*. Johannesburg. Wits University Press.
- Moynagh, M., 2012. *Church for every context: An introduction to theology and practice*. London: SCM Press.
- Müller, B.A., 2008. A Missional understanding of the church and its ministry, especially with regard to its Christ-centric liturgical reorientation. *NGTT*, 49(1&2), pp.53-65.
- Muller, M., Schreiner, B., Smith, L., van Koppen, B., Sally, H., Aliber, M., Cousins, B., Tapela, B., van der Merwe-Botha, M., Karar, E. and Pietersen, K., 2018. *Water security in South Africa*. In: E. Karar, ed. *Water security, governance and economic growth in South Africa*. Dordrecht: Springer, pp. 13-34.
- Murray, C., 1981. *Families divided: The impact of migrant labour in Lesotho*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Murray, C., 1987. Displaced urbanization: South Africa's rural slums. *African Affairs*, 86(344), pp. 311-329.
- Mwangi, W. and Marais, L., 2020. Digital technology and poverty alleviation in South Africa: A case study of ECD centres in the Free State Province. *Development Southern Africa*, 37(2), pp. 183-198.
- Myers, B.L., 2011. *Walking with the Poor: Principles and Practices of Transformational Development*. Maryknoll, NY: Orbis Books.
- Myers, J., Young, T., Galloway, M., Manyike, P. and Tucker, T., 2022. A public health approach to the impact of climate change on health in South Africa: Identifying priority modifiable risks. *South African Medical Journal*, 112(3), pp. 123-135.

- Naidoo, V. and Maré, A., 2015. Implementing the National Development Plan? Lessons from co-ordinating grand economic policies in South Africa. *Politikon*, 42(3), pp. 407-427.
- Nasson, B., 1999. *The South African War 1899-1902*. London: Arnold.
- National Planning Commission, 2012. National Development Plan 2030: Our future - make it work. Pretoria: The Presidency, pp. 24, 34, 119, 269, 330, 355-356, 24.
- National Treasury, 2020. *Budget review 2020*. Pretoria: National Treasury.
- Natrass, N. and Seekings, J., 2010. The economy and poverty in the twentieth century in South Africa. Centre for Social Science Research Working Paper No. 276. Cape Town: University of Cape Town.
- Natrass, N. and Seekings, J., 2011. The economy and poverty in the twentieth century. In: R. Ross, A.K. Mager and B. Nasson, eds. *The Cambridge History of South Africa*, Volume 2, 1885-1994. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, pp. 518-572.
- Natrass, N., 1994. Politics and economics in ANC economic policy. *African Affairs*, 93(372), pp. 343-359.
- Natrass, N., 1996. Gambling on Investment: Competing Economic Strategies in South Africa. *Transformation: Critical Perspectives on Southern Africa*, 31, pp. 25-42.
- Natrass, N., 2014. A South African Variety of Capitalism? *New Political Economy*, 19(1), pp. 56-78.
- Ndzi, L., 2024. Theology in the face of poverty and suffering: An examination of religious perspectives. *ShahidiHub International Journal of Theology & Religious Studies*, 4(3), pp.1–19.
- Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA), 1997. *Kerkorde van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika*. Pretoria: Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA), 1998. *Notule van die Eerste Algemene Diakensvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA), 2001. *Notule van die Tweede Algemene Diakensvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA), 2004. *Notule van die Derde Algemene Diakensvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA), 2007. *Besluitbundel van die 68ste Algemene Kerkvergadering van die NHKA*. Pretoria: Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA), 2007. *Notule van die Vierde Algemene Diakensvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA), 2010. *Notule van die Vyfde Algemene Diakensvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA), 2013. *Notule van die Sesde Algemene Diakensvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA), 2016. *Notule van die Sewende Algemene Diakensvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA), 2016. *Notule van die 71ste Algemene Kerkvergadering van die NHKA*. Pretoria: Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA), 2019. *Notule van die Agtste Algemene Diakensvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA), 2022. *Notule van die Negende Algemene Diakensvergadering*. Pretoria: Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA), 2022. *Notule van die Negende Algemene Diakensvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA)., 2022. *Agenda van die 73ste Algemene Kerkvergadering*. SGB Verslag, pp. 228-248. Pretoria: NHKA.

Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, 2022. *Kerkorde van die 73ste Algemene Kerkvergadering*. Pretoria: Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika.

Nel, M., 1994. *Gemeentebou*. Halfway House: Orion.

Nel, M., 2015. *Identity-Driven Churches: Who Are We and Where Are We Going?* Wellington: Bible Media.

Nell, I.A. and Grobler, R., 2014. An exploration of fresh expressions as a missional church: Some practical-theological perspectives. *NGTT Deel*, 55(3-4), pp.747-768.

Nell, I.A., 2015. Transforming congregational culture: Suburban leadership perspectives within a circuit of the DRC. *Scriptura*, 114(1), 1-18.

Nelstrop, L. and Percy, M. eds., 2008. *Evaluating fresh expressions: Explorations in emerging church*. Norwich: Canterbury Press.

- Neves, D. and du Toit, A., 2013. Rural livelihoods in South Africa: Complexity, vulnerability and differentiation. *Journal of Agrarian Change*, 13(1), pp. 93-115.
- Newbigin, L., 1989. The gospel in a pluralist society. Grand Rapids, MI: Wm. B. Eerdmans Publishing Co.
- Newton-King, S., 1999. *Masters and servants on the Cape eastern frontier, 1760-1803*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- NGK (Nederduitsch Gereformeerde Kerk), 2007. *Agenda van die Algemene Sinode*. Sl.
- NGK (Nederduitsch Gereformeerde Kerk), 2015. *Agenda van die Algemene Sinode*. Sl.
- NGK (Nederduitsch Gereformeerde Kerk), 2019. *Agenda van die Algemene Sinode*. Sl.
- Nhemachena, C., Matchaya, G., Nhemachena, C.R., Karuaihe, S., Muchara, B. and Nhlengethwa, S., 2021. Measuring baseline agriculture-related sustainable development goals index for southern Africa. *Sustainability*, 13(4), p. 1878.
- NHKA AKV, 2022. Notule van die 72ste Algemene Kerkvergadering. NHKA Argief, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 1888. *Algemene Kerkvergadering: Broederlijk Schrijven, Byvoegsel tot die Handeling van die AKV*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 1904. *Kerkwet en Bepalings van 1904*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 1951. *Kerkwet en Bepalings van 1951*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 1961. *Notule van Algemene Kerkvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.

- NHKA, 1973. *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika: Herderlike Skrywe aan die lidmate van die NHKA met betrekking tot volkere verhoudings in die RSA*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 1982. *Kommissie van die Algemene Kerkvergadering: Korrespondensie aan WARC 06/10/1982, Handeling van die Kommissie van die AKV (Okt – Des 1982), Volume 111, Bylae P*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 1997. *Kerkorde van 1997*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 1998. *Notule van Algemene Diakensvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 2001. *Notule van die Algemene Kerkvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 2004. *Agenda van die Algemene Kerkvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 2007a. *Besluitbundel van die Algemene Kerkvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 2007b. *Kerkorde van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 2009. *Notule van die Handeling van die Kommissie van die AKV 4–5 Junie 2009*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 2010. *Agenda van die 69ste Algemene Kerkvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 2010. Raad vir Apostolaat Report, 248-255. Pretoria: NHKA Church Archive.
- NHKA, 2013. *Notule van die 70ste Algemene Kerkvergadering*, 311-314. Pretoria: NHKA Church Archive.

- NHKA, 2016. *Raad vir Apostolaat Report*, 248-255. Pretoria: NHKA Church Archive.
- NHKA, 2016a. *Kerkorde van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA, 2016b. *Notule van Algemene Diakensvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- NHKA., 2013. *Notule van Algemene Diakensvergadering*. Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika, Pretoria.
- Niemandt, C.J.P. 2014. 'Trends in missional ecclesiology', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 70(1): 7 pages.
- Niemandt, C.J.P., 2007. *Nuwe Drome vir Nuwe Werklikhede: Geloofsgemeenskappe in Pas Met 'n Postmoderne Wêreld*. Wellington: Lux Verbi.
- Niemandt, C.J.P., 2010. Five years of missional church: Reflections on missional ecclesiology. *Missionalia: Southern African Journal of Mission Studies*, 38(3), pp.397-413.
- Niemandt, C.J.P., 2012. 'Trends in missional ecclesiology', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 68(1), Art. #1198, 9 pages. DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4102/hts.v68i1.1198>.
- Niemandt, C.J.P., 2012. Trends in missional ecclesiology. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 68(1), Art. #1198.
- Niemandt, C.J.P., 2014a. *Missionale Kerk en Missionale Eredienste: 'n Refleksie op Leonard Sweet se "Giving Blood: A Fresh Paradigm for Preaching."* GG Cillie gedenklesing, Durban: Universiteit van Pretoria.
- Niemandt, C.J.P., 2014a. *Missionale Kerk en Missionale Eredienste: 'n Refleksie op Leonard Sweet se "Giving Blood: A Fresh Paradigm for Preaching."* GG Cillie gedenklesing, Durban: Universiteit van Pretoria.

- Niemandt, C.J.P., 2014b. Trends in missional ecclesiology. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 70(1), Art. #2702, 7 pages. DOI: <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v70i1.2702>.
- Niemandt, C.J.P., 2015. Complex leadership as a way forward for transformational missional leadership in a denominational structure. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 71(3), pp.1-9.
- Niemandt, C.J.P., 2019. *Missional leadership*. Cape Town: AOSIS.
- Niemandt, C.J.P., 2019a. *Missional Leadership*. HTS Religion & Society Series Volume 7, Cape Town: AOSIS.
- Niemandt, C.J.P., Marais, J.F., Schoeman, W.J., Van der Walt, P. & Simpson, N., 2018. 'n Navorsingstrategie vir missionale transformasie. *Verbum et Ecclesia*, 39(1), a1893. Available at: <https://doi.org/10.4102/ve.v39i1.1893>.
- Niemandt, N., 2013a. *Nuwe Leiers vir Nuwe Werklikhede*. Wellington: Christelike Uitgewersmaatskappy.
- Niemandt, N., 2019. *Missional leadership*. In: *HTS Religion & Society Series: 7*. Cape Town: AOSIS, p.i-242.
- Noble, M., Zembe, W. and Wright, G., 2014. Poverty may have declined, but deprivation and poverty are still worst in the former homelands. *Economía3x3*. Southern African Social Policy Research Institute (SASPRI). Available at: <http://www.econ3x3.org> [Accessed 5 April 2022].
- Nolan, B. and Whelan, C.T., 2011. *Poverty and deprivation in Europe*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Nordstokke, K., 2009. *Liberating Diakonia*. Geneva: Lutheran University Press, p.14.
- Nowak, M. and Ricci, L.A., eds., 2005. *Post-Apartheid South Africa: The first ten years*. Washington, DC: International Monetary Fund.

- Nwosu, C.O. and Woolard, I., 2017. The impact of health on labour force participation in South Africa. *South African Journal of Economics*, 85(4), pp. 481-490.
- O'Meara, D., 1977. The Afrikaner Broederbond 1927-1948: Class vanguard of Afrikaner nationalism. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 3(2), pp. 156-186.
- O'Meara, D., 1983. *Volkskapitalisme: Class, capital and ideology in the development of Afrikaner nationalism, 1934-1948*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- O'Meara, D., 1996. *Forty lost years: The apartheid state and the politics of the National Party, 1948-1994*. Athens: Ohio University Press.
- Oosthuizen, A., 1949, 'Die Christelike Kerk en die naturel', *Die Hervormer*, XLI(9), pp. 1, 8. Argief van die *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika*, Pretoria.
- Oosthuizen, A.G.J., 1950a, 'Die Christelike kerk en die naturel', *Die Hervormer*, XLI(11), pp. 3, 8. Argief van die *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika*, Pretoria.
- Oosthuizen, A.G.J., 1950b, 'Die Christelike kerk en die naturel', *Die Hervormer*, XLII(1), pp. 1, 8. Argief van die *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika*, Pretoria.
- Oosthuizen, M. and Cassim, A., 2014. The state of youth unemployment in South Africa. *Africa in Focus*, 15. Available at: <http://www.brookings.edu> [Accessed 5 April 2022].
- Oosthuizen, M. and Thornton, A., 2019. South Africa's social assistance system: How well does it tackle poverty? Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit Working Paper Series No. 252. Cape Town: SALDRU. University of Cape Town.
- Oosthuizen, M., 2019. Counting women's work in South Africa: Incorporating unpaid work into estimates of the economic lifecycle. *Development Southern Africa*, 36(4), pp. 21-39.

- Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD), 2022. *OECD Economic Surveys: South Africa*. Paris: OECD Publishing, pp.45-47.
- Orlandi, N., 2020. Successful implementation of NDP hinges on administrative reforms. Stellenbosch University. Available at: <https://www.sun.ac.za/english/Lists/news/DispForm.aspx?ID=7496> [Accessed 19 August 2024].
- Orthofer, A., 2016. Wealth inequality in South Africa: Evidence from survey and tax data. REDl3x3 Working Paper 15. Cape Town: Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit, University of Cape Town.
- Osmer, R.R., 2008. *Practical Theology: An Introduction*. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans.
- Otto, F.J., 1954. *Die ontwikkeling van blanke armblanke-gemeenskappe in Suid-Afrika, 1880-1924*. Pretoria: Universiteit van Suid-Afrika.
- Oyedemi, T.D., 2020. Protest as communication for development and social change. In: J. Servaes, ed. *Handbook of Communication for Development and Social Change*. Singapore: Springer. <https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-2014-3> [Accessed 30 November 2023].
- Padayachee, V., 1991. The politics of South Africa's international financial relations, 1970-1990. In: S. Gelb, ed. *South Africa's economic crisis*. Cape Town: David Philip, pp. 88-109.
- Pakenham, T., 1979. *The Boer War*. London: Weidenfeld & Nicolson.
- Patel, L. and Ulriksen, M., 2017. *Development, social policy and community action: Lessons from below*. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Patel, L., 2012. Poverty, Gender and Social Protection: Child Support Grants in Soweto, South Africa. *Journal of Policy Practice*, 11(1-2), pp. 106-120.

- Patel, L., 2015. *Social welfare and social development in South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press.
- Pattel-Gray, A., 1991. *Through Aboriginal eyes: The cry from the wilderness*. Geneva: WCC Publications.
- Pauw, K. and Mncube, L., 2007. Expanding the social security net in South Africa: Opportunities, challenges and constraints. DPRU Working Paper No. 07/127. Cape Town: Development Policy Research Unit, University of Cape Town.
- PC(USA) (Presbyterian Church (USA)), 2019. *Educate a Child, Transform the World*. [online] Available at: <https://www.presbyterianmission.org/ministries/compassion-peace-justice/child/educate-a-child/> [Accessed 15 Aug. 2024].
- Peires, J.B., 1981. *The house of Phalo: A history of the Xhosa people in the days of their independence*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Peters, A., 2000. *Tot Uw Dienst: Een Diakonale Bijdrage Aan Gemeenteopbouw*. Zoetermeer: Uitgeverij Boekencentrum.
- Philip, K., 2013. The transformative potential of public employment programmes. Occasional Paper Series No. 1/2013. Graduate School of Development Policy and Practice, University of Cape Town. Available at: <https://unboundedorganization.org/wp-content/uploads/2013/12/Kate-Philip-Transformative-potential-of-PEPs.pdf> [Accessed 15 July 2023].
- Phillips, S., 2004. The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). Paper presented at the Conference on Overcoming Underdevelopment in South Africa's Second Economy, Pretoria, 29 October.
- Pieterse, E., 2009. *Post-apartheid Geographies in South Africa: Why Are Urban Divides so Persistent?* London: Routledge.

- Pillay, J., 2017. The church as a transformation and change agent. *HTS Theological Studies*, 73(3), pp.1–12. DOI: <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v73i3.4352>
- Plaatje, S.T., 1916. *Native life in South Africa: Before and since the European war and the Boer rebellion*. London: P. S. King & Son.
- Platzky, L. and Walker, C., 1985. *The surplus people: Forced removals in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Ravan Press.
- Pont, A.D. & Van Staden, G.C., 1998. 'Die Diakonaat in die nuwe struktuur van die kerklike lewensorde', in *Die notule van Algemene Diakensvergadering*, pp. 14–30. Pretoria: Argief van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika.
- Pont, A.D. & Van Staden, W., 1998. *Diakonale Werk in die NHKA: 'n Historiese Oorsig*. In Notule van die 1e ADV, pp. 14-30.
- Pont, A.D., 1995a. 'Die koers van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk, 1894-1924', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 51(4), pp.1169-1186.
- Pont, A.D., 1995b. Die reformatoriese kerkbegrip: Enkele groot lyne op grond van Calvyn se uiteensetting. *HTS Teologiese Studies / Theological Studies*, 51(3), pp.771-791. <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v51i3.1434>.
- Pont, A.D., 2007. *Die verhaal van ons Kerk. 'n Oorsig van die geskiedenis van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk 1900 tot 1919*. (Unpublished). Pretoria: NHKA Kerkargief.
- Posel, D. and Casale, D., 2003. What has been happening to internal labour migration in South Africa, 1993-1999? *South African Journal of Economics*, 71(3), pp. 455-479.
- Posel, D. and Rogan, M., 2012. Gendered trends in poverty in the post-apartheid period, 1997-2006. *Development Southern Africa*, 29(1), pp. 97-113.
- Posel, D., 1991. *The making of apartheid, 1948-1961: Conflict and compromise*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

- Posel, D., 2001. Race as common sense: Racial classification in twentieth-century South Africa. *African Studies Review*, 44(2), pp. 87-113.
- Posel, D., 2004. Have migration patterns in post-apartheid South Africa changed? *Journal of Interdisciplinary Economics*, 15(3-4), pp. 277-292.
- Price, R.M., 1991. *The apartheid state in crisis: Political transformation in South Africa, 1975-1990*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Public Protector South Africa, 2020. Annual Report, 2019/2020. Pretoria: Public Protector South Africa.
- Ramphela, M., 1993. *A bed called home: Life in the migrant labour hostels of Cape Town*. Cape Town: David Philip.
- Rangasamy, L. and Harmse, C., 2003. The Extent of Trade Liberalisation in the 1990s: Revisited. *South African Journal of Economics*, 71(4), pp. 705-728.
- Richter, L., 2021. The importance of early childhood development in South Africa's efforts to reduce poverty and inequality. In: *The Oxford Handbook of the South African Economy*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 12-28.
- Roberts, S., 2000. Understanding the Effects of Trade Policy Reform: The case of South Africa. *South African Journal of Economics*, 68(4), pp. 270-281.
- Robertson, O.P., 1980. *The Christ of the Covenants*. Phillipsburg, NJ: Presbyterian and Reformed Publishing Company.
- Rogan, M. and Reynolds, J., 2019. Trends in the working poverty rate (WPR) in post-apartheid South Africa, 1997-2012. *Development Southern Africa*, 36(5), pp. 699-715.
- Rogan, M., 2016. Gender and multidimensional poverty in South Africa: Applying the global multidimensional poverty index (MPI). *Social Indicators Research*, 126(3), pp. 987-1006.

- Rogerson, C.M., 2004. The impact of the South African government's SMME programmes: A ten-year review (1994-2003). *Development Southern Africa*, 21(5), pp. 765-784.
- Ross, R., 1993. *Beyond the pale: Essays on the history of colonial South Africa*. Hanover: Wesleyan University Press.
- Ross, R., 1999. *Status and respectability in the Cape Colony, 1750-1870: A tragedy of manners*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Ross, R., Mager, A.K. and Nasson, B. eds., 2011. *The Cambridge History of South Africa: Volume 2, 1885-1994*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, pp. 1-724.
- Rossouw, P.J., 1991. Die gemeente as diakonale gemeenskap in die jare '90. *NGTT (Nederduitse Gereformeerde Teologiese Tydskrif)*, 32(3), pp.485-495.
- Roxburgh, A.J. and Romanuk, F., 2006. *The Missional Leader: Equipping Your Church to Reach a Changing World*. San Francisco, CA: Jossey-Bass.
- Roxburgh, A.J., 2010. *Missional map-making: Skills for leading in times of transition*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Roxburgh, A.J., 2011, *Missional. Joining God in the neighbourhood*, BakerBooks, Grand Rapids, Michigan.
- Roxburgh, A.J., 2015. *Joining God, remaking church, changing the world: The new shape of the church in our time*. New York: Morehouse Publishing.
- Russell, M., 2003. Are urban black families nuclear? A comparative study of black and white South African family norms. *Social Dynamics*, 29(2), pp. 153-176.
- Swart, I., 2017. Social capital, religious social capital and the missing element of religious ritual. *Religion and Theology*, 24(3-4), pp. 221-

249. <https://doi.org/10.1163/15743012-02403008> [Accessed 27 May 2022].
- SASSA (South African Social Security Agency), 2021. Annual Report, 2021/2022. Pretoria: SASSA.
- SASSA (South African Social Security Agency), 2023. Annual Report, 2022/2023. Pretoria: SASSA.
- Satumba, T., Bayat, A. and Mohamed, S., 2017. The impact of social grants on poverty reduction in South Africa. *Journal of Economics*, 8(1), pp. 33-49.
- Schotte, S. and Zizzamia, R., 2021. The livelihood impacts of COVID-19 in urban South Africa: A view from below. *African Studies Review*, 64(4), pp. 1-30.
- Schotte, S., Zizzamia, R., and Leibbrandt, M., 2018. *A poverty dynamics approach to social stratification: The South African case*. *World Development*, 110, pp. 88-103.
- Schreiner, B., Mtsweni, S., Pegram, G., Nkhata, M., Mahlathi, N. and Mathetsa, S., 2023. Impacts of climate change on water resources in South Africa: Research gaps and opportunities. *Water S. Part A*, 49(1), pp. 86-101.
- Schutte, P.J.W., 2003. Missionêre diakonaat: 'n Uitdaging vir die kerk. *HTS Teologiese Studies / Theological Studies*, 59(1), pp.247-264. <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v59i1.644> [Accessed 17 July 2021].
- Scudieri, R.J., 2016. *The Apostolic Church: One, Holy, Catholic, and Missionary*. St. Louis: Mission Nation Publishing Co.
- Seekings, J. and Nattrass, N., 2001. "Two Nations"? Race and economic inequality in South Africa today. *Dædalus*, 130(1), pp. 45-70.
- Seekings, J. and Nattrass, N., 2005. *Class, Race, and Inequality in South Africa*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.

- Seekings, J. and Nattrass, N., 2015. *Policy, Politics and Poverty in South Africa: Why Has Poverty Persisted After Apartheid?* Johannesburg: Jacana Media.
- Seekings, J. and Nattrass, N., 2015. *Policy, politics and poverty in South Africa*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Seekings, J. and Nattrass, N., 2020. Covid-19 and the crisis of social protection in South Africa. *The Lancet*, 396(10256), pp. 867-868.
- Seekings, J., 1991. Township resistance in the 1980s. In: M. Swilling, R. Humphries and K. Shubane, eds. *Apartheid city in transition*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press, pp. 290-308.
- Seekings, J., 2002. The broader importance of welfare reform in South Africa. *Social Dynamics*, 28(2), pp. 1-38.
- Seekings, J., 2007. Poverty and inequality after apartheid. Centre for Social Science Research, University of Cape Town. <https://doi.org/10.1017/CHOL9780521869836.013> [Accessed 19 December 2022].
- Seekings, J., 2008. The Carnegie Commission and the backlash against welfare state-building in South Africa, 1931-1937. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 34(3), pp. 515-537.
- Seekings, J., 2020a. Failure to feed: State, civil society and feeding schemes in South Africa in the first three months of COVID-19 lockdown, March to June 2020. Centre for Social Science Research, University of Cape Town.
- Seekings, J., 2020b. Poverty and inequality in South Africa, 1994–2019. In: D. Everatt, ed., *Transformation in South Africa?* London: Routledge, pp. 84-108.
- Seekings, J., 2020c. *Poverty and inequality in South Africa: The effects of twenty-five years of democracy*. In: R. Ross, A.K. Mager and B. Nasson, eds. *The Cambridge History of South Africa, Volume 3: 1994 to the Present*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, pp. [specific page numbers].

- Sen, A., 1999. *Development as Freedom*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Servaes, J., ed., 2020. *Handbook of Communication for Development and Social Change*. Singapore: Springer. <https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-2014-3> [Accessed 8 August 2022].
- Shell, R.C.H., 1994. *Children of bondage: A social history of the slave society at the Cape of Good Hope, 1652-1838*. Hanover: Wesleyan University Press.
- Shisana, O., Rehle, T., Simbayi, L.C., Zuma, K., Jooste, S., Zungu, N., Labadarios, D. and Onoya, D., 2014. *South African National HIV Prevalence, Incidence and Behaviour Survey, 2012*. Cape Town: HSRC Press. Available at: <http://hdl.handle.net/20.500.11910/2490> [Accessed 22 May 2023].
- Simkins, C., 1981. Agricultural production in the African reserves of South Africa, 1918-1969. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 7(2), pp. 256-283.
- Smit, D.J., 2008. Mainline Protestantism in South Africa – and modernity? Tentative reflections for discussion. *Nederduitse Gereformeerde Teologiese Tydskrif*, 49(1-2), pp.92-105.
- Smit, D.J., 2008. Mainline Protestantism in South Africa – and modernity? Tentative reflections for discussion. *Nederduitse Gereformeerde Teologiese Tydskrif*, 49(1-2), pp.92-105.
- South African Reserve Bank, 2020. Quarterly. Bulletin, March 2020. Pretoria: South African Reserve Bank.
- Southall, R., 1982. *South Africa's Transkei: The political economy of an 'independent' bantustan*. London: Heinemann.
- Southall, R., 2014. *The African National Congress and the Regeneration of Political Power*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Southall, R., 2016. *The New Black Middle Class in South Africa*. Woodbridge: James Currey.

- Sparks, A., 1990. *The mind of South Africa*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf.
- Sparks, A., 1995. *Tomorrow is another country: The inside story of South Africa's road to change*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Spaull, N. and Hoadley, U., 2017. Getting reading right: Building firm foundations. In: L. Jamieson, L. Berry and L. Lake, eds. *South African Child Gauge 2017*. Cape Town: Children's Institute, University of Cape Town, pp. 77-83.
- Spaull, N. and Jansen, J., eds., 2019. *South African Schooling: The Enigma of Inequality*. Cham: Springer.
- Spaull, N. and Kotze, J., 2015. Starting behind and staying behind in South Africa. *International Journal of Educational Development*, 41, pp. 13-24.
- Spaull, N. and Pretorius, E., 2019. Still falling at the first hurdle: Examining early grade reading in South Africa. In: N. Spaull and J. Jansen, eds. *South African Schooling: The Enigma of Inequality*. Cham: Springer, pp. 147-168.
- Spaull, N. and Van der Berg, S., 2023. The impact of COVID-19 and school closures on education in South Africa. In: B. Cantillon, T. Goedemé, and J. Hills, eds. *COVID-19 in the Global South: Impacts and Responses*. Bristol: Bristol University Press, pp. 71-92.
- Spaull, N., 2013. Poverty & privilege: Primary school inequality in South Africa. *International Journal of Educational Development*, 33(5), pp. 436-447. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijedudev.2012.09.009> [Accessed 12 July 2023].
- Spaull, N., 2019. Priorities for education reform in South Africa. Input document for Treasury's Economic Colloquium. Stellenbosch: Stellenbosch University.
- Spaull, N., Ardington, C., Bassier, I., Bhorat, H., Bridgman, G., Brophy, T., Budlender, J., Burger, R., Carel, D., and Casale, D., 2020a. Overview and findings: NIDS-CRAM Synthesis Report Wave 1. NIDS-CRAM Working Paper.

- Spaull, N., Daniels, R.C., Ardington, C., Branson, N., Breet, E., Bridgman, G., Brophy, T., Burger, R., Carel, D., and Casale, D., 2020b. NIDS-CRAM Wave 2 Synthesis Report. Cape Town: NIDS-CRAM, pp. 1-94.
- Standing, G. and Samson, M., 2003. *A basic income grant for South Africa*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press.
- Statistics South Africa, 1995. *October Household Survey 1994*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.
- Statistics South Africa, 2012. *Census 2011: Census in brief*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.
- Statistics South Africa, 2014. *The South African MPI: Creating a multidimensional poverty index using census data*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.
- Statistics South Africa, 2016. *Community Survey 2016, Statistical release P0301*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.
- Statistics South Africa, 2017. *Poverty trends in South Africa: An examination of absolute poverty between 2006 and 2015*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.
- Statistics South Africa, 2019a. *Inequality Trends in South Africa: A multidimensional diagnostic of inequality*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.
- Statistics South Africa, 2019b. *Towards measuring the extent of food security in South Africa: An examination of hunger and food inadequacy*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.
- Statistics South Africa, 2019c. *National Poverty Lines 2019. Statistical Release P0310.1*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.
- Statistics South Africa, 2020. *National Poverty Lines: 2020* [online]. Available at: <https://www.statssa.gov.za/publications/P03101/P031012020.pdf> [Accessed 4 July 2023].

Statistics South Africa, 2020a. *General Household Survey 2019*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.

Statistics South Africa, 2020b. *Governance, Public Safety and Justice Survey 2019/20*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.

Statistics South Africa, 2021. *Quarterly Labour Force Survey: Q2* [online]. Available at: <https://www.statssa.gov.za/publications/P0211/P02112ndQuarter2021.pdf> [Accessed 14 November 2023].

Statistics South Africa, 2021a. *Poverty Trends in South Africa: An examination of absolute poverty between 2006 and 2021*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.

Statistics South Africa, 2021b. *Quarterly Labour Force Survey, Quarter 4: 2020. Statistical release P0211*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.

Statistics South Africa, 2023a. *General Household Survey 2022. Statistical Release P0318*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.

Statistics South Africa, 2023b. *Quarterly labour force survey, Q3, 2023*. Pretoria: Statistics South Africa.

Steenkamp, L.J.S., 1995. Die kerk onderweg na die een en twintigste eeu: 'n Kritiese besinning oor kerkwees in 'n veranderende konteks in Suid-Afrika. *HTS Teologiese Studies*, 51(3), pp. 604-622.

Steenkamp, L.J.S., 1995. Die kerk onderweg na die een en twintigste eeu: 'n Kritiese besinning oor kerkwees in 'n veranderende konteks in Suid-Afrika. *HTS Teologiese Studies*, 51(3), pp. 604-622.

Steinert, J.I., Cluver, L., Melendez-Torres, G.J. and Herrero Romero, R., 2017. Relationships between poverty and AIDS illness in South Africa: An investigation of urban and rural households in KwaZulu-Natal. *Global Public Health*, 12(9), pp. 1183-1199.

Stetzer, E., 2016. *Planting Missional Churches: Your Guide to Starting Churches That Multiply*. 2nd ed. Nashville, TN: B&H Academic.

- Stoltz, G., 2016. 'Die plek, rol en funksie van die diakonaat in die *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika*', in *Tydskrif vir Hervormde Teologie*, Nommer 2, Jaargang 4, Van Wyk, N. (Red.), *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika*, pp. 44–51.
- Sulla, V. and Zikhali, P., 2018. *Overcoming Poverty and Inequality in South Africa: An Assessment of Drivers, Constraints and Opportunities*. Washington, DC: World Bank Group. Available at: <https://hdl.handle.net/10986/29614> [Accessed 19 September 2021].
- Sulla, V. and Zikhali, P., 2018. *Overcoming poverty and inequality in South Africa: An assessment of drivers, constraints and opportunities*. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- Sundback, S., 2008. Membership of Nordic 'National' Churches as a 'Civil Religious' Phenomenon. *Implicit Religion*, 10(3), pp.262-280.
- Surender, R., Noble, M., Wright, G., and Ntshongwana, P., 2010. Social assistance and dependency in South Africa: An analysis of attitudes to paid work and social grants. *Journal of Social Policy*, 39(2), pp. 203-221. <https://doi.org/10.1017/S0047279409990638>.
- Surplus People Project, 1985. *Forced removals in South Africa: The SPP reports*. Cape Town: Surplus People Project.
- Swart, I., 2006. *The Churches and the Development Debate: Perspectives on a Fourth Generation Approach*. Stellenbosch: SUN PReSS.
- Swart, I., 2013. South Africa's service-delivery crisis: From contextual understanding to diaconal response. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 69(2), Art. #1996.
- Swartz, S., Harding, J.H. and De Lannoy, A., 2012. Ikasi style and the quiet violence of dreams: A critique of youth belonging in post-apartheid South Africa. *Comparative Education*, 48(1), pp. 27-40.

- Tait, L., 2017. Towards a multidimensional framework for measuring household energy access: Application to South Africa. *Energy for Sustainable Development*, 38, pp. 1-9.
- Tangri, R. and Southall, R., 2008. The politics of Black Economic Empowerment in South Africa. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 34(3), pp.699-716. <https://doi.org/10.1080/03057070802295856> [Accessed 13 March 2022].
- Tangri, R. and Southall, R., 2008. The politics of black economic empowerment in South Africa. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 34(3), pp. 699-716.
- Taylor, S., 2011. Uncovering indicators of effective school management in South Africa using the National School Effectiveness Study. Stellenbosch Economic Working Papers No. 10/11. Stellenbosch: University of Stellenbosch.
- Terreblanche, S., 2002. *A History of Inequality in South Africa, 1652-2002*. Pietermaritzburg: University of Natal Press.
- Theron, J., 2014. Decent work and the crisis of labour law in South Africa. *International Journal of Comparative Labour Law and Industrial Relations*, 30(2), pp. 141-165.
- Thomas, L. and Leape, J., 2005. *Foreign direct investment in South Africa: The initial impact of the trade, development and cooperation agreement between South Africa and the European Union*. London: CREFSA. London School of Economics.
- Thompson, L., 2001. *A History of South Africa*. 3rd ed. New Haven: Yale University Press.
- Thompson, L., 2014. *A history of South Africa*. 4th ed. New Haven: Yale University Press.
- Tidd, J., Bessant, J. and Pavitt, K., 2005. *Managing Innovation: Integrating Technological, Market and Organizational Change*. 3rd ed. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.

- Tissington, K., 2011. *Basic sanitation in South Africa: A guide to legislation, policy and practice*. Socio-Economic Rights Institute of South Africa (SERI).
- Todes, A., Kok, P., Wentzel, M., Van Zyl, J. and Cross, C., 2010. Contemporary South African urbanisation dynamics. *Urban Forum*, 21(3), pp. 331-348.
- Transparency International, 2021. *Corruption Perceptions Index 2021* [online]. Available at: <https://www.transparency.org/en/cpi/2021/index/nzl> [Accessed 4 January 2024].
- Trapido, S., 1971. South Africa in a comparative study of industrialization. *The Journal of Development Studies*, 7(3), pp. 309-320.
- Trapido, S., 1980. "The friends of the natives": Merchants, peasants and the political and ideological structure of liberalism in the Cape, 1854-1910. In: S. Marks and A. Atmore, eds. *Economy and society in pre-industrial South Africa*. London: Longman, pp. 52-61, 311-341.
- Turok, I. and Borel-Saladin, J., 2016. Backyard shacks, informality and the urban housing crisis in South Africa: Stopgap or prototype solution? *Housing Studies*, 31(4), pp. 384-409.
- Turok, I. and Borel-Saladin, J., 2021. Sustainable urbanisation in South Africa: Challenges and prospects. In: I. Turok, ed., *The Oxford Handbook of the South African Economy*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 49-67.
- Turok, I., 2012. *Urbanisation and development in South Africa: Economic imperatives, spatial distortions and strategic responses*. London: International Institute for Environment and Development.
- UN (United Nations), 2021. *The Sustainable Development Goals Report 2021*. New York: United Nations. Available at: <https://unstats.un.org/sdgs/report/2021/> [Accessed 4 July 2022].
- UNAIDS, 2020. *Seizing the Moment - Tackling Entrenched Inequalities to End Epidemics: Global AIDS Updates*. Geneva: UNAIDS. Available

at: <https://www.unaids.org/en/resources/documents/2020/global-aids-report> [Accessed 10 November 2023].

UNDP, 2020. *The 2020 Global Multidimensional Poverty Index (MPI)*. New York: United Nations Development Programme.

Ungerer, M., Herholdt, J. & le Roux, J., 2013. *Leadership for All: Virtue Practices to Flourish*. Randburg: Knowres Publishing.

Uniting Church in Australia, 2021. About Congress. [online] Available at: <https://uniting.church/about-congress/> [Accessed 15 August 2024].

University of Cape Town, Unilever Institute of Strategic Marketing, 2013. *4 Million and Rising: Black Middle Class Expanding*. Cape Town: UCT Unilever Institute of Strategic Marketing.

Unterhalter, E., 1987. *Forced removal: The division, segregation and control of the people of South Africa*. London: IDAF.

Valodia, I. and Francis, D., 2018. One hundred years of the University of the Witwatersrand: Good for the university, good for the country. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 44(1), pp. 163-182.

Van Aarde, A.G., 1992. A S Geyser, *teologiese dosent 1946-1961*. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 48(1&2), pp.159-182.

Van Bart, M., 2014. 'Die Rebelle, De Burger en die Helpmekaar', in Langner, D.J., & Raath, A.W.G. (reds.), *Die Afrikanerrebellie 1914-1915*, bl. 179-192, Kraal Uitgewers, Pretoria.

Van der Berg, S. and Spaull, N., 2020. *Counting the cost: COVID-19 school closures in South Africa and its impact on children. Research on Socioeconomic Policy (RESEP)*. Stellenbosch: Stellenbosch University.

Van der Berg, S. and Spaull, N., 2023. Addressing educational inequality in South Africa: Progress and challenges. In: *The Oxford Handbook of Education and Inequality*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 76-94.

- Van der Berg, S., 2007. Apartheid's enduring legacy: Inequalities in education. *Journal of African Economies*, 16(5), pp. 849-880.
- Van der Berg, S., 2008. How effective are poor schools? Poverty and educational outcomes in South Africa. *Studies in Educational Evaluation*, 34(3), pp. 145-154.
- Van der Berg, S., 2011. Current poverty and income distribution in the context of South African history. *Economic History of Developing Regions*, 26(1), pp. 120-140.
- Van der Berg, S., Burger, C., Burger, R., de Vos, M., du Rand, G., Gustafsson, M., Moses, E., Shepherd, D., Spaull, N., Taylor, S. and van Broekhuizen, H., 2011. *Low quality education as a poverty trap*. Stellenbosch: Stellenbosch University.
- Van der Berg, S., Gustafsson, M. and Malindi, K., 2022. Education and skills for the economy and links to labour markets in South Africa. WIDER Working Paper 2022/35. Helsinki: UNU-WIDER.
- Van der Berg, S., Patel, L. and Bridgman, G., 2021. Food insecurity in South Africa: Evidence from NIDS-CRAM Wave 5. NIDS-CRAM Working Paper. Cape Town: SALDRU, University of Cape Town.
- Van der Berg, S., Siebrits, F.K. and Lekezwa, B., 2010. Efficiency and equity effects of social grants in South Africa. Stellenbosch Economic Working Papers, 15/10. *SSRN Electronic Journal*. Stellenbosch: University of Stellenbosch.
- Van der Horst, S.T., 1942. *Native labour in South Africa*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Van der Merwe, J.C., 2011. Missionale gemeentes in die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika – Teologies verantwoord. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 67(3), Art. #1094, 9 pages. [online] Available at: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4102/hts.v67i3.1094> [Accessed 11 January 2024].
- Van der Merwe, J.C., 2013. Lense op spiritualiteit en kerkwees: Die pad vorentoe vir die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika (NHKA).

- HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 69(1), Art. #1988, 16 pages. [online] Available at: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4102/hts.v69i1.1988> [Accessed 11 June 2023].
- Van der Merwe, J.C., 2014. 'n Narratief vir kerk-wees vandag. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 70(1), pp.1-13.
- Van der Merwe, J.M., 2020. 'Armoede: 'n Uitdaging aan die Afrikaanse Gereformeerde kerke (1994-2019)', *Stellenbosch Theological Journal*, 6(3), pp.301-324.
- Van Engen, C., 1991. *God's Missionary People: Rethinking the Purpose of the Local Church*. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Book House.
- Van Gelder, C. and Zscheile, D.J., 2011. *The missional church in perspective: Mapping trends and shaping the conversation*. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Academic.
- Van Gelder, C., 2000. *The Essence of the Church: A Community Created by the Spirit*. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Books.
- Van Gelder, C., 2007. *The Ministry of the Missional Church: A Community Led by the Spirit*. Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Books.
- Van Heyningen, E., 2013. *The Concentration Camps of the Anglo-Boer War: A Social History*. Johannesburg: Jacana.
- Van Rensburg, H.C.J., 2014. South Africa's protracted struggle for equal distribution and equitable access – Still not there. *Human Resources for Health*, 12(1), p.26. Available at: <https://human-resources-health.biomedcentral.com/articles/10.1186/1478-4491-12-26> [Accessed 14 February 2022].
- Van Rensburg, M.J., 2023, 'Die diakonale reis van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk', *Verbum et Ecclesia* 44(1), a2814. <https://doi.org/10.4102/ve.v44i1.2814>
- Van Ruler, A.A., 1952. *Bijzonder en Algemeen Ambt*. Nijkerk: G.F. Callenbach.

- Van Wyk, B.J., 1992. Die kerkregtelike posisie van die ouderling en diaken in die *Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika* in die lig van die vraag na nuwe bedieningstrukture. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 48(3-4), pp.1013-1032.
- Van Wyk, B.J., 2017, 'Die verband tussen ekklesiologie en kerkreg: 'n Hervormde perspektief', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 73(1), a4608. [online] Available at: <https://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v73i1.4608> [Accessed 15 August 2023].
- Van Wyk, D.J.C. (ed.), 1978. *Stemme uit die verlede, Vol. 1: Volkereverhoudings in Suid-Afrika*. Pretoria: HAUM.
- Van Wyk, D.J.C., 1992. *Die NHKA: Uitdagings vir die toekoms*. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 48(1&2), pp.1013-1023.
- Van Wyk, I.W.C., 2013. 'Die Hervormde Kerk: Soekend na 'n Weg tussen Ekklesiologiese Verstarring en Innovasie sonder Tradisie', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 69(1), Art. #1999, 11 pages.
- Van Wyk, I.W.C., 2013. 'Die Hervormde Kerk: Soekend na 'n weg tussen ekklesiologiese verstarring en innovasie sonder tradisie', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 69(1), Art. #1999, 11 pages. [online] Available at: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4102/hts.v69i1.1999> [Accessed 19 April 2024].
- Van Wyk, I.W.C., 2013. Die Hervormde Kerk: Soekend na 'n weg tussen ekklesiologiese verstarring en innovasie sonder tradisie. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 69(1), Art. #1999.
- Van Wyk, T. and Buitendag, J. 2008. 'Die dimensies van eenheid en katolesiteit in die ekklesiologie van die NHKA sedert Ottawa 1982', *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 64(3): 1461-1474.
- Velthuysen, G.C., 1988. Die wese van die kerk: 'n Teologiese antwoord op 'n filosofiese vraag. *HTS Teologiese Studies*, 44(2), pp. 489-513.
- Venter, P.M., 1999. 'n Kerklik-akademiese portret van B.J. van der Merwe (1926-1968): Deel Twee – Predikant en dosent. *HTS Teologiese*

- Studies / Theological Studies*, 55(4), pp.1039-1076.
<http://doi.org/10.4102/hts.v55i4.1666> [Accessed 28 October 2021].
- Verhoef, G., 2008. Nationalism, social capital and economic empowerment: SANLAM and the economic upliftment of the Afrikaner people, 1918-1960. *Business History*, 50(6), pp. 695-713.
- URCSA (Verenigende Gereformeerde Kerke in Suid-Afrika), 2005. *Handelinge van die Algemene Sinode*. Sl.
- Visagie, J. and Posel, D., 2013. A reconsideration of what and who is middle class in South Africa. *Development Southern Africa*, 30(2), pp. 149-167.
- Visagie, J. and Turok, I., 2021. Rural–urban inequalities amplified by COVID-19: Evidence from South Africa. *Area Development and Policy*, 6(1), pp. 50-62. DOI: <https://doi.org/10.1080/23792949.2020.1851143> [Accessed 29 August 2023].
- Visser, W., 2004. "Shifting RDP into GEAR": The ANC government's dilemma in providing an equitable system of social security for the "new" South Africa. Paper presented at the 40th ITH Linzer Konferenz, 17 September 2004.
- Von Fintel, D.P., 2018. Long-run spatial inequality in South Africa: Early settlement patterns and separate development. *Studies in Economics and Econometrics*, 42(2), pp. 81-102.
<https://doi.org/10.1080/10800379.2018.12097335> [Accessed 29 August 2023].
- Von Holdt, K. and Webster, E., 2005. *Beyond the apartheid workplace: Studies in transition*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press.
- Vorster, J.M., 2011. An ethics of hope for moral renewal in South Africa. *Journal of Theology for Southern Africa*, 140, pp.4-19.

- Vos, C.J.A., 2001. God's household and the poor in contextual ecclesiology. *HTS Teologiese Studies/Theological Studies*, 57(1 & 2), 49-69.
- Walker, C., 1990. *Women and gender in Southern Africa to 1945*. Cape Town: David Philip.
- Walker, C., 1991. *Women and resistance in South Africa*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: David Philip.
- Walker, C., 2005. The limits to land reform: Rethinking 'the land question'. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 31(4), pp. 805-824.
- Walker, C., 2008. *Landmarked: Land claims and land restitution in South Africa*. Athens, OH: Ohio University Press.
- Walshe, P., 1987. *The rise of African nationalism in South Africa: The African National Congress, 1912-1952*. 2nd ed. Craighall: Ad. Donker.
- Walters, G.B., 2022. Legacies of transformational leadership: A critical analysis of the Anglican Church of Southern Africa's social agency role in a time of new Kairos challenges. Master's thesis. University of the Western Cape.
- Warwick, P., 1983. *Black people and the South African War 1899-1902*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Webb, A.C.M., 1981. Mining in South Africa. In: L.M. Thompson and M. Wilson, eds. *The Oxford History of South Africa*, Volume II: South Africa 1870–1966. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 15-35.
- Weeks, J., 1999. Commentary: Stuck in low GEAR? Macroeconomic policy in South Africa, 1996-98. *Cambridge Journal of Economics*, 23(6), pp. 795-811.
- Wentzel, J.P., Yadavalli, V.S.S. and Sundar, D.K., 2022. Digital financial services adoption in emerging economies: A South African perspective. *Journal of Financial Services Marketing*, 27(2), pp. 83-98.

- Western, J., 1981. *Outcast Cape Town*. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.
- Willis, D. and Welker, M., eds., 1999. *Toward the Future of Reformed Theology: Tasks, Topics, Traditions*. Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans.
- Willoughby-Herard, T., 2007. 'South Africa's Poor Whites and Whiteness Studies: Afrikaner Ethnicity, Scientific Racism, and White Misery'. *New Political Science*, 29(4), pp.479-500.
- Wilson, F. and Ramphela, M., 1989. *Uprooting poverty: The South African challenge*. New York: W. W. Norton.
- Wilson, F., 1972. *Labour in the South African gold mines 1911-1969*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Wolff, E., 2006. Anatomie van 'n teologiese ideologie: Die Hervormde Kerk se steun aan die Apartheid ideologie. *Historia*, 51(1), pp.141-162. Available at: <https://upjournals.up.ac.za/index.php/historia/article/view/1408> [Accessed 15 May 2023].
- Wolmarans, H.P., 1953, 'Die Christelike plig van die blankes teenoor die nie-blankes in Suid-Afrika', in Erasmus, D.F. (Red.), *Almanak van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk van Afrika 1937, Jaargang 47*, pp. 100–112, Algemene Vergadering van die Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk, Pretoria.
- Wolpe, H., 1972. Capitalism and cheap labour-power in South Africa: From segregation to apartheid 1. *Economy and Society*, 1(4), pp. 425-456.
- Wood, J.H., 2013. *Going Dutch in the Modern Age: Abraham Kuyper's Struggle for a Free Church in the Nineteenth-Century Netherlands*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Woolard, I. and Leibbrandt, M., 2013. The evolution and impact of unconditional cash transfers in South Africa. *Development Southern Africa*, 30(1), pp. 39-53.

- Woolard, I., Leibbrandt, M. and Klasen, S., 2023. Social protection in South Africa: Progress and challenges. In: *The Oxford Handbook of the South African Economy*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 35-52.
- Worden, N., 1985. *Slavery in Dutch South Africa*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Worden, N., 1994. *The making of modern South Africa: Conquest, apartheid, democracy*. 1st ed. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Worden, N., 2011. *The making of modern South Africa: Conquest, apartheid, democracy*. 5th ed. Malden: Wiley-Blackwell.
- Worger, W.H., 1987. *South Africa's city of diamonds: Mine workers and monopoly capitalism in Kimberley, 1867-1895*. New Haven: Yale University Press.
- World Alliance of Reformed Churches (WARC), 1982. *Resolution on racism and South Africa*. Statement adopted by the General Council, August 25, 1982.
- World Bank, 2018. *Overcoming poverty and inequality in South Africa: An assessment of drivers, constraints and opportunities*. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- World Bank, 2021. *Gini Index (World Bank Estimate)* [online]. Available at: <https://data.worldbank.org/indicator/SI.POV.GINI> [Accessed 14 June 2023].
- World Bank, 2022. *Poverty and Equity Brief: South Africa* [online]. Available at: https://databankfiles.worldbank.org/public/ddpext_download/poverty/33EF03BB-9722-4AE2-ABC7-AA2972D68AFE/Global_POVEQ_ZAF.pdf [Accessed 14 September 2023].
- World Bank, 2022. World Development Indicators. [online] Available at: <https://data.worldbank.org/indicator> [Accessed 15 August 2024].

World Bank, 2023. *South Africa Economic Update, 15th Edition: Building back better from COVID-19, with a special focus on jobs*. Washington, DC: World Bank.

World Bank, 2024. *South Africa Overview: Development News, Research, Data* [online]. Available at: <https://www.worldbank.org/en/country/southafrica/overview> [Accessed 20 August 2024].

World Council of Churches, 2017. *Called to Transformation: Ecumenical Diakonia Working Document*. Geneva: World Council of Churches, p.25.

Wright, C.J.H., 2006. *The mission of God: Unlocking the Bible's grand narrative*. Downers Grove, IL: IVP Academic.

Wright, C.J.H., 2010. *The mission of God's people: A biblical theology of the church's mission*. Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan.

Yudelman, D., 1983. *The emergence of modern South Africa: State, capital, and the incorporation of organized labor on the South African gold fields, 1902-1939*. Westport: Greenwood Press.

Ziervogel, G., 2019. Building transformative capacity for adaptation planning and implementation that works for the urban poor: Insights from South Africa. *Ambio*, 48(5), pp. 494-506.

Ziervogel, G., New, M., Archer van Garderen, E., Midgley, G., Taylor, A., Hamann, R., Stuart-Hill, S., Myers, J., and Warburton, M., 2014. Climate change impacts and adaptation in South Africa. *WIREs Climate Change*, 5(5), pp. 605-620.